

VISIT...

LANZAROTE
Caliente.COM



LINGUAPHONE

КУРС РУССКОГО ЯЗЫКА
HANDBOOK





КУРС РУССКОГО ЯЗЫКА

Handbook

Notes
Vocabularies



BY APPOINTMENT TO
H.R.H. THE DUKE OF EDINBURGH
PUBLISHERS OF RECORDED LANGUAGE COURSES
LINGUAPHONE INSTITUTE LTD LONDON

LINGUAPHONE

КУРС РУССКОГО ЯЗЫКА

Handbook

Notes
Vocabularies

Linguaphone Institute Limited
St Giles House
50 Poland Street
London W1V 4AX



© MCMLXXI Linguaphone Institute Limited, London

All rights reserved. No part of this publication, or related recorded material, may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior permission of Linguaphone Institute Limited.

This impression 1989

LSN GRUENH10

Printed and bound in Great Britain by
Biddles Ltd, Guildford and King's Lynn

Course validated by:

The Russian Language Methodology Centre,
Moscow State University.

Written by:

I. G. Miloslavsky,
Senior lecturer, Moscow State University.

Recorded at:

the studios of the **Committee for Radio Broadcasting and Television** under the USSR Council of Ministers, Moscow (Radio Moscow).

Recorded by the following speakers:

V. B. Gersik	E. G. Kulik
B. K. Gulayev	V. V. Lebedeva
E. I. Korneyeva	E. V. Minayeva
B. Ya Korsunsky	A. N. Khlebnikov

Under the supervision of:

I. I. Zimina **V. A. Kritilin**

Note:

The prices and situations in this course, current at the time of writing, may not necessarily reflect present-day values and conditions.

The Linguaphone Academic Advisory Committee

Chairman:

Professor Sir Randolph Quirk, CBE, DLitt, FBA, President of the British Academy; sometime Vice-Chancellor, University of London; formerly Quain Professor of English, University College London; Hon. Fil. Dr (Lund, Uppsala); Hon. Doct. d'Univ. (Paris, Liège, Nijmegen); Hon. LLD (Reading); Hon. DLitt (Leicester, Salford, Newcastle, Durham, Glasgow, Bar Llan, Southern California, Brunel); Hon. DU(Bath, Essex, Open); Fellow of the Royal Belgian Academy of Sciences, of the Royal Swedish Academy, and of the Academia Europaea.

Members:

Dr Clare Burstall, BA, PhD, DSc, FBPsS, FCP, Director, National Foundation for Educational Research in England and Wales.

James Pailing, MA (Oxon), FBIM, Secretary to the Delegates, University of Oxford Delegacy of Local Examinations, Fellow of Keble College, Oxford.

Professor Nigel B R Reeves, OBE, MA, DPhil, FIL, FRSA, CIEx, Goethe Medaille of the Goethe Institute, Dean, Faculty of Human Studies, Head of Department of Linguistic and International Studies, University of Surrey, Member of Council, Institute of Linguists, President, National Association of Language Advisers, and of the Association of Teachers of German, and Chairman of the National Congress on Languages in Education.

Professor J M Sinclair, MA, Professor of Modern English Language, University of Birmingham.

Professor Albert Sonnenfeld, AM, PhD (Princeton), Officer, Ordre des Palmes Académiques, Professor of French and Comparative Literature, Chairman, Department of French and Italian, University of Southern California; formerly Professor of French and Chairman, Department of Romance Languages and Literatures, Princeton University.

Professor J C Wells, MA(Cantab), PhD (London), Professor of Phonetics in the University of London.

Contents

Notes on the alphabet	1
Russian words	2
Notes on handwriting	2
Introduction	3
Using the lesson notes	5
Notes to lessons 1-30	6
Glossary of grammatical terms	208
Appendices	212
Russian-English vocabulary	255
English-Russian vocabulary	275

Notes on the alphabet

- 1 There are two more letters in the Russian alphabet, which were not recorded as they have no sound of their own. They are
 - the hard sign, used in a few words after a consonant to separate it from a vowel;
 - and • the soft sign, commonly used after a consonant to soften it (often it has an effect similar to that of putting an English *y* after it).

These letters are never found at the beginning of a word so you need only learn to write the small form of the letter: *ъ* and *ь*. Practise writing them when you write the rest of the alphabet.

- 2 In most Russian books *e* and *ё* are not differentiated, both being printed as *e*. In dictionaries too, you may find *ё* integrated with *e*. Throughout this course they are differentiated.
- 3 Note that *д* is an alternative form of the small letter *д*, used in italic type.

Russian words

printed	handwritten	translation
стол	<i>стал</i>	table
сыр	<i>сыр</i>	cheese
ключ	<i>ключ</i>	key
костюм	<i>костюм</i>	suit
телевизор	<i>телевизор</i>	television
хлеб	<i>хлеб</i>	bread
книга	<i>книга</i>	book
пластинка	<i>пластинка</i>	record
рубашка	<i>рубашка</i>	shirt
ручка	<i>ручка</i>	pen
рыба	<i>рыба</i>	fish
фабрика	<i>фабрика</i>	factory
кафе	<i>кафе</i>	café
мороженое	<i>мороженое</i>	ice-cream
окно	<i>окно</i>	window
радио	<i>радио</i>	radio
такси	<i>такси</i>	taxi
яблоко	<i>яблоко</i>	apple
ботинки	<i>ботинки</i>	shoes
груши	<i>груши</i>	pears
книги	<i>книги</i>	books
конфеты	<i>конфеты</i>	sweets
пластинки	<i>пластинки</i>	records
окна	<i>окна</i>	windows

Notes on handwriting

Russian handwriting has a flowing appearance as most letters join on to one another.

- 1 Л, м and я, however, must always begin with a small hook, and this should be retained when they are joined to a preceding letter. They should never be joined to a preceding о: *стал*, *костюм*.
- 2 In quick writing there is a possibility of т and ш being confused. Russians often put a line over the т and under the ш: *ботинки*, *рубашка*.

Introduction

Part 1

Hello!

My name's Volodya.

I'm Russian.

I speak Russian.

You don't speak Russian yet.

But you want to learn Russian?

That's fine!

I'll help you.

Let's begin.

This is a book.

This is a record.

This is a tape.

Part 2

Volodya Hello!

You Hello, Volodya!

Volodya How are you?

You Very well, thank you. And you?

Volodya I'm well, too. Thank you.

Are you Russian?

You No.

Volodya You're learning Russian?

You Yes.

Volodya Have you got a book?

You Yes, I have got a book.

Volodya Where is your book?

You The book's over there.

Volodya And where's that?

You The book's on the table.

Volodya Good.

Part 3

- Volodya* Allow me to introduce you to my family.
This is my mother, Yelena Vasilievna.
- Yelena V.* Hello! I'm called Yelena Vasilievna Ivanova.
I'm Volodya's mother. This is my husband, Nikolai
Ivanovich.
- Nikolai I.* Hello! My name's Nikolai Ivanovich Ivanov.
I'm Volodya's father. Allow me to introduce you to my
father, Ivan Ilych.
- Ivan Ilych* How do you do! I'm called Ivan Ilych Ivanov.
I'm Volodya's grandfather.
- Volodya* That's all our family. Allow me to introduce one more
person. This is my friend Vika.
- Vika* Hello! Volodya and I were students together.
I'm very pleased to meet you.
- Volodya* We have some other friends too. You'll meet them later.
'Bye.

Using the lesson notes

1 Use of brackets, () and []

Whenever part of the Russian text is quoted in the lesson notes an English translation is given beside it. In our attempt to translate everyday, colloquial Russian into the equivalent English, we have sometimes had to give a free translation.

a When you see a translation in brackets, (), beside the first one, this is a more literal translation, closer in meaning and word order to the original.

b When you see words in our translation in square brackets, [], this indicates that it has been necessary for the sense of the translation to add these words in English although they do not appear in the original Russian.

2 Grammatical terms

Any grammatical terms with which you are not familiar will be found in the Glossary of grammatical terms at the end of the notes to Lesson 30.

3 Abbreviations used in the lesson notes and word lists

adj.	adjective
conj.	conjugation
cont.	continued
f.	feminine
imp.	imperfective
indec.	indeclinable
L	Lesson
m.	masculine
n.	neuter
N	Note
p.	perfective
pers.	person
pl.	plural
s.	singular
T	Table

Note on the use of abbreviations in cross-references: L8, N34 means Lesson 8, Note 34. Where the number of the lesson is not indicated, the reference is to a note or table in the lesson in which the reference is found. Thus, if you are working on Lesson 6 and you find a reference 'See N27', turn to Note 27 of Lesson 6.

Аэропорт The airport

What happens

In Parts 1 and 2 the scene is Sheremetievo airport, outside Moscow. Volodya, whose full name is Vladimir Nikolayevich Ivanov, is a young engineer, and is returning home after working abroad. Victoria Andreyevna Fedorenko, or Vika, has come to meet him. He passes through the usual passport and customs formalities, and then finds Vika waiting for him. They look for a free taxi and set off for Moscow.

In Part 3 there are two short dialogues, using the vocabulary you have met in Parts 1 and 2. In the first, Alla is asking Ivan where they are; in the second, Aleksei is asking an immigration officer where he can find the customs, a taxi, etc.

Words in this lesson

а and, but
автобусная остановка bus stop
аэропорт airport
багаж luggage
большой big
был, было, была was
валюта foreign currency
ваш, ваше, ваша your, yours
весь all
водитель такси (m.) taxi driver
возьмите take
вон там over there
вот here is
встреча meeting
вы you
где where
да yes
декларация customs declaration form
должен must, has to
дома at home
до свидания goodbye
ехать to go
за границей abroad
занято occupied
заполнить fill in, complete
здесь here

здоровье health
здравствуй hello (s. and familiar form)
здравствуйте hello (pl. and polite form)
и and
инженер engineer
как how
какой, -ое, -ая which?, what a...!
Комсомольская площадь Komsomol Square
Красная площадь Red Square
Кремль (m.) the Kremlin
кто who
куда where to, whither
Ленинградский проспект Leningrad Prospect
Ленинский проспект Lenin Prospect
место place
мой, моё, моя my
молодой young
Москва Moscow
московский Moscow (adj.)
начинайте begin
носилищик porter
ну well
обменять to change
один one

Октябрьская площадь October Square
он he, it
она she, it
оно it
очень very
паспорт passport
паспортный контроль passport control
первый first
площадь (f.) square
пограничник immigration officer
поездка trip
пожалуйста please
потом then, next
предъявить show, present
примеры examples
приятный pleasant
проспект prospect
проходите pass through
рад, рада pleased
садитесь sit down
свободно free
сертификат certificate
скоро soon
спасибо thank you

стоянка такси taxi rank
студентка student
так so
такси taxi
там there
таможенник customs officer
таможня customs
твой, твоё, твоя your, yours
теперь now
тоже also
ты you
упражнение exercise
урок lesson
хорошо fine, all right
часть (f.) part
часть первая first part
часть вторая second part
часть третья third part
чей, чьё, чья whose
что what
это this
я I

всё в порядке everything's in order
простите excuse me

Notes

PART 1

1 Часть первая First part (part first)

а первая This is the second time you have met the Russian word for *first*: **первый (урок)** above, and **первая (часть)**.

The ending **-ый** is masculine to agree with the masculine word **урок**; **-ая** is feminine to agree with the feminine word **часть**.

б Note that *first* can come before or after the noun it describes. Adjectives in Russian are found in either position.

2 **Аэропорт** *The airport* There is no article in Russian, therefore the one word **аэропорт** can mean *the airport*, *an airport*, or just *airport*.

3 **Что это?** *What is this?*

а **что (?)** *what (?)*

б **Это (?)** can mean *this is*, or, when in a question, *is this?*

4 **Это аэропорт Шереметьево.** *This is Sheremetievo airport.* Note the word order in Russian—*airport Sheremetievo*.

5 **Шереметьево—большой московский аэропорт.** *Sheremetievo [is a] big Moscow airport.*

- 1 a **Шереметьево** Sheremetievo is one of the three airports serving Moscow. It handles most of the international traffic.
 b In Russian there is no present tense of the verb *to be*, and a dash (—) is often used for *is, am, are*.
 c **большой** *big, large*
 d **московский** *Moscow* (adjective)

6 **Кто это?** *Who is this?*
кто (?) who (?)

7 **Это Владимир Николаевич Иванов.** *This is Vladimir Nikolayevich Ivanov.* Vladimir Nikolayevich Ivanov is the full name of the hero of our story. Russians always have three names: Christian name, patronymic and surname. The patronymic is formed from the father's Christian name. Vladimir's father is called Nikolai, so his patronymic is **Николаевич**.

If you listen carefully to the recording, you will notice that patronymics are not always pronounced exactly as they are written. For instance, **Николаевич** is pronounced **Никола'ич**. In speech there is a shortening of some long patronymics, by the dropping of the penultimate syllable. Listen again to the Introduction as there are some examples of this there:

Васильевна is pronounced **Василь'на**;
Иванович is pronounced **Иван'ич**.

8 **Он молодой инженер.** *He [is a] young engineer.* In a short, simple sentence such as this, *is* is understood.

- a **он** *he*
 b **молодой** *young*
 c **инженер** *engineer*

9 **Он был за границей, а теперь он дома.** *He was abroad, but now he's home.*

- a **был** *was*
 b **за границей** *abroad (beyond the frontier)*
 c **а** *but, and*
 d **теперь** *now*
 e **дома** *home, at home*

10 **Вот пограничник.** *Here is [an] immigration officer.*

- a **вот** *here is*
 b **пограничник** *immigration officer*

11 **Это паспортный контроль.** *This is [the] passport control.*

- a **паспортный** *passport* (adjective)
 b **контроль** *control*

12 **Иванов должен предъявить паспорт.** *Ivanov must show [his] passport.*

- a **должен** *must, has to*
 b **предъявить** *show, present*
 c **паспорт** *passport*. *His* is understood.

13 **Потом Иванов должен заполнить декларацию и предъявить багаж.** *Next Ivanov must fill in [a] customs declaration form and show [his] luggage.*

- a **потом** *then, next*
 b **заполнить** *fill in, complete*
 c **декларацию** *customs declaration form*
 d **и** *and*
 e **багаж** *luggage*

14 **Вот багаж и валюта.** *Here is [the] luggage and [some] foreign currency.*

- a **багаж** See N2. As there is no article in Russian, *the* or *some* may have to be inserted in English translation.
 b **валюта** is a collective word covering all currencies apart from the rouble.

15 **А кто это?** *And who[']s this?*

16 **Это Виктория Андреевна Федоренко.** *This is Victoria Andreyevna Fedorenko.* Victoria is the heroine of our story and a friend of Vladimir's. Her father's name is Andrei, thus her patronymic is **Андреевна**, which has a feminine ending.

17 **Она студентка.** *She [is a] student.*

- a **она** *she*
 b **студентка** *student*. *Is* understood again.

18 **Какая приятная встреча!** *What a pleasant meeting!*

- a **какая** ... ! *what a ... !*
 b **приятная** *pleasant*. See N1. This is the feminine form of the adjective **приятный**.
 c **встреча** *meeting*

19 **А где носильщик?** *But where [is there a] porter?*

- a **где (?)** *where, where is (?)*
 b **носильщик** *porter*

20 **Вот он.** *There's one. (There he.)*

21 **Автобусная остановка здесь, а стоянка такси там.** *The bus stop[']s here and the taxi rank[']s there.*

- 1 a автобусная остановка *bus stop*
 b здесь *here*. This is not to be confused with **вот** which means *here is*.
Здесь describes the location of something, i.e. is an adverb of place.
 c стоянка такси *taxi rank (rank of taxis)*
 d там *there*
- 22 Это такси было занято, а это такси—свободно. *That taxi was occupied, but this taxi['s] free.*
 a Это can sometimes mean *that*, as well as *this*.
 b такси *taxi*
 c было *was*. This has the common neuter ending -о. You have already met **был** meaning *was* in the phrase **Он был за границей**. This was referring to Vladimir, so it was in the masculine form. **Такси** is a neuter noun, and **было** is the neuter form of *was* to agree with it.
 d занято *occupied, engaged*
 e свободно *free*
- 23 Скоро Москва, Красная площадь, Кремль. *Soon [we shall see] Moscow, Red Square, the Kremlin.*
 a скоро *soon*
 b Москва *Moscow*
 c Красная площадь *Red Square*
 d Кремль *The Kremlin*

PART 2

- 24 Часть вторая *Second part (part second)*
- 25 Володя *Volodya* is the familiar form of Vladimir. Most Russian Christian names have a standard familiar form (as John—Jack, Henry—Harry, etc., in English) which is always used by relatives and friends. A list of the most common names, with their familiar and diminutive forms, will be found in Appendix 2.
- 26 Здравствуйте! *Hello!* This is a polite greeting which can be used on meeting one or more persons at any time of the day.
- 27 Ваш паспорт, пожалуйста! *Your passport, please!*
 a ваш *your*
 b пожалуйста *please*
- 28 Пожалуйста, вот мой паспорт. *Certainly, here's my passport.*
 a Here the meaning of **пожалуйста** is closer to *certainly*, or *please take it*, when handing something over.
 b мой *my*

- 29 Вы Владимир Николаевич Иванов? *Are you Vladimir Nikolayevich Ivanov?*
 вы (?) *you, or, in a question, are you?*
- 30 Да, я Владимир Николаевич Иванов. *Yes, I['m] Vladimir Nikolayevich Ivanov.*
 a да *yes*
 b я *I or I am—am being understood.*
- 31 Всё в порядке. *Everything's in order.* This is a common expression for you to learn.
- 32 Возьмите ваш паспорт, пожалуйста. *Take your passport, please.*
 возьмите *take*
- 33 Проходите. *You may go. (Pass through.)*
- 34 Спасибо. До свидания. *Thank you. Goodbye.*
 a спасибо *thanks, thank you*
 b до свидания *goodbye* This corresponds to the French 'au revoir'—until we meet again.
- 35 Таможенник *Customs officer*
- 36 Где ваша декларация? *Where['s] your customs declaration form?*
 a ваша *your*. This is the feminine form, whereas **ваш** (N27a) is the masculine. It must be used here to agree with the feminine noun **декларация**. See Table 2 at the end of notes to Lesson 1.
 b декларация Don't worry about this word having a different ending here from the one you saw in N13c. This will be explained later.
- 37 Вот моя декларация. *Here's my customs declaration form.*
 моя *my (f.)* See Table 3.
- 38 А где ваш багаж? *And where['s] your luggage?*
- 39 Вот мой багаж. *Here['s] my luggage.*
- 40 Это весь ваш багаж? *Is this all your luggage?*
 весь *all*
- 41 Да, весь. *Yes, that's all. (Yes, all.)* From this short reply you see that in Russian, as in English, *all* can stand in combination with a noun, e.g. **весь багаж**: *all the luggage*, or on its own, as here.
- 42 Чья это валюта? *Whose foreign currency is this?*
 чья . . . ? *whose . . . ?* This is the feminine form, to agree with **валюта**. See Table 5.
- 43 Моя. *Mine.* You will see that the same word can mean *mine*, as

- 1 here, or *my*, as in **моя декларация** (N37). Like *all* (See N41) it can either stand with a noun, in which case it will mean *my*, or on its own, in which case it will mean *mine*. The same applies to all possessive adjectives, i.e. the words in Tables 2–4.
- 44 **Вот ваш сертификат. Всё в порядке.** *Here's your certificate. Everything's in order.*
сертификат *certificate* On entering the USSR, a traveller has to complete a customs declaration, stating the amount of foreign currency he has with him. He is then issued with a certificate confirming this.
- 45 **Простите, а где я должен обменять валюту?** *Excuse [me], but where do I change [my] foreign currency?*
 а **простите** *excuse*. *Me* is understood.
 б **обменять** *change, exchange*
 в **валюту** This word has a different ending from **валюта** above (N42). This is because it is the object of a verb, and feminine nouns ending in **-а** take the ending **-у** when they are the object. This is known as the ACCUSATIVE CASE—see Table 6.
- 46 **Вон там.** *Over there.* This is a colloquial phrase for you to learn.
- 47 **Здравствуй Вика!** *Hello Vika!*
Здравствуй is a shorter form of **здравствуйте**, which you've already met. This is the more familiar form and is used to address one person who is a good friend or relative of the speaker.
- 48 **Я так рад.** *I'm so pleased.* In Russian this short phrase is enough to express *I'm so pleased to see you* or *I'm so pleased to meet you*.
 а **так** *so*
 б **рад** *pleased, glad*
- 49 **Я тоже очень рада.** *I'm very pleased, too. (I'm also very pleased.)*
 а **тоже** *also, too* Note where this word is in the sentence.
 б **очень** *very*
 в **рада** *pleased, glad* (f.) See Table 7.
- 50 **Ну, как ты?** *Well, how are you?*
 а **ну** This little word is often found at the beginning of sentences in colloquial Russian speech. It corresponds to *well* or *so* in English.
 б **как . . . ?** *how . . . ?*
 в **ты** *you*, or, in a question, *are you?* This is the familiar *you*, used to address one person who is a relative, a friend or a child. **Вы** is used to address one or more persons. When used to address one person it is more formal than **ты**. You will see that the immigration and customs officers address Volodya as **вы**, whereas Vika calls him **ты**.

- 1 **Как твоя поездка?** *How [was] your trip?* There is no Russian word for *was* in this sentence. It is sometimes omitted in colloquial speech.
- а **твоя** *your* (f.) See Table 4. This is the familiar *your* or *yours*, and is used in the same situations as **ты**.
 б **поездка** *trip*
- 52 **Всё в порядке.** Here the meaning is extended from the rather formal *everything's in order* to *fine, all right*.
- 53 **А как твоё здоровье?** *And how's your health?*
 а **твоё** *your* (n.) See Table 4.
 б **здоровье** *health*
- 54 **Чьё здоровье? Моё. Хорошо!** *Whose health? Mine? Fine!*
 а **чьё?** *whose . . . ?* (n.) See Table 5.
 б **моё** *mine* (n.) See Table 3.
 в **хорошо** *fine, all right*
- 55 **А чей это багаж? Твой?** *But whose is this luggage? Yours?*
 а **чей . . . ?** *whose . . . ?* (m.) See Table 5.
 б **твой?** *your, yours* (m.) See Table 4.
- 56 **Да, мой.** *Yes, mine.*
мой *my, mine* (m.) See Table 3.
- 57 **Вы носильщик?** *Are you a porter?*
- 58 **Да, я носильщик.** *Yes, I am a porter.*
- 59 **Возьмите, пожалуйста, мой багаж.** *Please take my luggage. (Take, please, my luggage.)* Note the position of **пожалуйста**, i.e. after the command.
- 60 **А где здесь стоянка такси?** *But where's the taxi rank here? (But where here rank of taxis?)*
где здесь? You have already met **где?** meaning *where?* and **здесь** meaning *here*. When combined they become a phrase meaning *where around here?* This sentence could also be translated as *Where is there a taxi rank around here?*
- 61 **Ваше такси занято?** *Is your taxi occupied?*
- 62 **Водитель такси** *Taxi driver (driver of taxi)*
- 63 **Да, занято.** *Yes, it is. (Yes, occupied.)* In a short reply such as this in English, we say *Yes, it is*, without repeating the word *occupied*. In Russian a short reply usually repeats the word, or words, we omit.

- 1 64** А какое такси свободно? *And which taxi's free?*
какое ... ? *which ... ?* (n.) See Table 9.
- 65** Вот это такси свободно. *That taxi over there's free.*
Вот это You have already seen (N60) that words in combination sometimes become small phrases with a slightly different meaning. Here is another one: **вот это** means *that one over there*, or, sometimes, *this one here*.
- 66** Простите, ваше такси свободно? *Excuse me, is your taxi free?*
ваше *your, yours* (n.) See Table 2.
- 67** Да, свободно. *Yes, it is. (Yes, free.)* See N63.
- 68** Садитесь, пожалуйста. *Get in, please. (Sit down, please.)*
This is the usual polite way of offering someone a seat. It is also used by a taxi driver agreeing to take a passenger, in the same way as a London taxi driver might say *Jump in!*
- 69** Куда ехать? *Where to? (Where to go?)*
а **куда?** You have already met **где?** which means *where?* **Куда?** also means *where?* or, more accurately, *where to?*, as it is always used when movement towards a place is implied. It corresponds to the old English *whither?* **Где ... ?** refers to the location of something. e.g. *Where is the taxi?* **Где ... ?**
Where is the taxi going? **Куда ... ?**
b **ехать** *go or to go*
- 70** Ленинский проспект. *Lenin Prospect.* This is where Volodya wants to go. It is a well-known street in Moscow, named after Lenin.
а **Ленинский** The addition of the ending **-ский** on to the word **Ленин** has made an adjective from *Lenin*. **-ский** is a common adjectival suffix. You have already met it in **московский**, the adjective formed from the Russian word for *Moscow*: **Москва**.
b **проспект** A *prospect* is usually a wide, main street in a city centre.
- 71** А какое место? *And where exactly? (And what place?)*
а **Какое** (n.) can mean *which?* or *what?*
b **место** *place*
- 72** Октябрьская площадь. *October Square.*
а **Октябрьская** This is another adjective formed from a noun (**октябрь**), like **ленинский** or **московский**, but here it is in the feminine form and has the ending **-ская** instead of the masculine ending **-ский**. See Table 8.
b **площадь** *square* This is a feminine noun.

- 73** Часть третья *Third part (part third)*
GENERAL NOTE All personal names in Part 3 of any lesson will be found in Appendix 2.
- 74** Простите, какой это проспект? *Excuse me, what prospect is this? (... which is this prospect?)* Note order.
какой ... ? *which?, what?* (m.) See Table 9.
- 75** Это Ленинградский проспект. *It's Leningrad Prospect.*
Ленинградский Another adjective formed from a name by adding **-ский**. See Table 8.
- 76** Какой? *Which?* Compare with N74. *Which?* in Russian can stand on its own, as here, or with a noun, e.g. **какой проспект?** *which prospect?*
- 77** Ленинградский. *Leningrad Prospect.* In Russian there is no need to repeat the word **проспект**.
- 78** А какая там площадь? *And what square is that? (And what there square?)* Note order.
а **какая ... ?** *what?, which?* (f.) See Table 9.
b **там** On its own **какая площадь?** would mean *what square?* The insertion of **там** between these words adds to the meaning: *What square is that one there?*
- 79** Там Комсомольская площадь. *That's Komsomol Square. (There is Komsomol Square.)* See N78b.
Комсомольская This is another adjective in the feminine form. See Table 8. The *Komsomol*, from which it is derived, is the Communist Youth League.
- 80** Простите, где таможня? *Excuse me, where's the customs?*
таможня *the customs, or the customs area* (i.e. the part of the airport where customs inspections are made).
- 81** Она здесь. *It's here.*
она You have already met **она** meaning *she*. **Она** also means *it*, when replacing a feminine noun (here **таможня**). See Table 10.
- 82** А где я должен заполнить декларацию? *And where must I fill in a customs declaration form?* (Note order: *where I must ...*)
а **I must** is not reversed to make a question, as it is in English. The interrogative word *where?*, stressed by a rise in the speaker's voice, is enough to indicate that it is a question. Listen carefully to the rise and fall of the speaker's voice in this and the next question.

1 b декларацию Here this word has the ending **-ю**, whereas in Part 2 you saw the nominative **декларация**. Here **декларацию** is the object of the verb **заполнить**, and is in the accusative case. See also N45c. Feminine words ending in **-я** change to **-ю** in the accusative. See Table 6.

83 Там. There. The immigration officer is pointing to the place where Aleksei should fill in his customs declaration form.

84 Простите, а где такси? *Excuse [me], and where [can I get a] taxi?*

85 Оно там. There's one there. (It['s] there.)

a оно It, when replacing a neuter noun. See Table 10.

The language you've learnt

Table 1

Gender of nouns

This table is to help you recognise the gender of nouns. In the list of new words in each lesson, the gender of a noun will only be given where it is difficult to guess. For instance, nouns ending in **-ь** can be masculine or feminine, so the gender will be indicated thus: **площадь (f.)** If you are not sure of a gender, refer back to this table and look for a noun of the same type.

Explanation	Examples in this lesson*
MASCULINE (a) All nouns ending in a consonant. (b) All nouns ending in -й . (c) Some nouns ending in -ь , including all those ending in -тель . (d) Some nouns ending in -а and -я denoting animate beings. Many diminutives of male Christian names end like this.	урок, багаж, паспорт водитель, Кремль Володя
FEMININE (a) Most nouns ending in -а and -я . (b) All nouns ending in -ия . (c) Some nouns ending in -ь , including all those ending in -сть (with the exception of гость: guest).	Вика, валюта, Москва декларация площадь часть
NEUTER (a) All nouns ending in -о and -е . (b) All nouns ending in -ие, -ье or -ё . (c) All nouns ending in -мя . (d) Most foreign words.	место здоровье такси

*You have not yet met examples of every type of noun, and we are giving examples only from words you know. This accounts for the blank spaces.

1 Table 2
Your . . . , yours (polite and plural form)

masculine	neuter	feminine
багаж ваш сертификат паспорт	такси ваше здоровье место	валюта ваша декларация поездка

Table 3
My . . . , mine

мой багаж	моё такси	моя валюта
-----------	-----------	------------

Table 4
Your . . . , yours (familiar single form)

твой паспорт	твоё здоровье	твоя поездка
--------------	---------------	--------------

Table 5
Whose . . . is this?, Whose . . . ?

чей это багаж?	чьё здоровье?	чья это валюта?
----------------	---------------	-----------------

Table 6
Accusative case of feminine nouns*

Nom.	вот моя валюта	вот моя декларация
Acc.	я должен обменять валюту	я должен заполнить декларацию

*Feminine nouns ending in -ь (e.g. **площадь**) do not change in the accusative.

Table 7
рад, рада

masculine	feminine
Володя рад	Вика рада

Table 8
Masculine and feminine of adjectives

октябрьский ленинский московский ленинградский комсомольский	проспект	октябрьская ленинская московская ленинградская комсомольская	площадь
--	----------	--	---------

Table 9
Which . . . ?, what . . . ?

masculine	neuter	feminine
какой проспект?	какое место?	какая валюта?

Table 10
He, it, she

Володя таможенник паспорт багаж	он	такси здоровье место	оно	Вика студентка декларация таможня	она
--	----	----------------------------	-----	--	-----

О Володе и о Вике About Volodya and Vika

What happens

In Part 1 of this lesson we learn a little more about our two main characters, Volodya and Vika: where they were born, where they studied, and so on. Volodya is a Muscovite, but Vika was born in a small village in the Ukraine.

In Part 2 we hear Volodya and Vika chatting inside the taxi on their way into Moscow. Vika is asking Volodya about his trip abroad, where he worked and how he got on. The taxi driver joins in the conversation.

In Part 3 there are three short dialogues: in the first, Igor and Tanya discover that they were both born in Odessa, studied in Leningrad, and afterwards worked in the Ukraine; in the second, Kolya asks Alyosha where he lived when he was in Leningrad; and in the third, Sasha asks Misha if he's ever been to Kiev.

New words in this lesson

в in, at
всё everything
второй second
говорить to talk
город town
два two
девушка girl
делать to do
деревня village
дом block of flats
Донская улица Don Street
жизнь life
жить to live
завод big factory, plant
институт institute
квартира flat
Киев Kiev
лаборатория laboratory
Ленинград Leningrad
Ломоносовский проспект Lomonosov
Prospect
маленький small

машина car
москвич Muscovite (m.)
москвичка Muscovite (f.)
на in, at
начать to start
наш, наше, наша our, ours
Невский проспект Nevsky Prospect
нет no
но but
новый new
о, обо about
общежитие hostel
Одесса Odessa
потом after that, afterwards
работа work
работать to work
рассказать to tell
родиться to be born
сначала at first
спросить to ask
уже already
Украина the Ukraine

улица street
университет university
учиться to study
фабрика factory
факультет faculty
физический physics (adj.)
химический chemistry (adj.)

в душе at heart
в самом деле? really?
дело в том, что the fact is that
в чём дело? what's the matter?
а что? but why?, so what?,
what about it?
значит that means

Notes

PART 1

1 **О Володе и о Вике.** *About Volodya and Vika. (. . . and about Vika.)*
а о about

б **Володе, Вике** Both of these words end here with the letter -е, instead of -я and -а. This is because the preposition о is always followed by the LOCATIVE CASE. In this case most nouns, including names and proper nouns, end in -е.

2 **Володя родился в Москве.** *Volodya was born in Moscow.*

а родился was born

б в in This is another preposition which is followed by the locative case.

с в Москве in Moscow After в, Москва changes to its locative form: Москве. The locative case is so-called because it often indicates the location of something or someone.

3 **А Вика родилась в маленькой деревне на Украине.** *And Vika was born in a small village in the Ukraine.*

а родилась was born (f.)

б в маленькой деревне in a small village After в meaning in a place, the noun and any adjective qualifying that noun must all go into the locative case. Here маленькой is in the locative feminine to agree with деревне, which is the locative of the feminine noun деревня. -ой is the usual feminine locative ending for adjectives.

с на in or at This is another preposition which requires the locative case when indicating location. As both в and на mean in or at, and they are not interchangeable, you need to learn when to use в, and when to use на. Learn them together with the word or group of words following them.

д на Украине in the Ukraine The Ukraine is one of the fifteen republics of the Soviet Union, and lies to the south-west of Moscow. In Russian it is called Украина. Here it is in the locative case after на.

4 **Володя учился в физическом институте.** *Volodya studied at a physics institute.*

- 2 а** *учился studied*
б *в физическом институте at a physics institute* This is the same principle as that explained in N3b, only here the noun is masculine and the adjective therefore has the locative masculine ending **-ом**. See Table 3.

The locative of the noun here has been formed by adding **-е** to its nominative form, **институт**. Most masculine nouns end in a consonant, and the most common way of forming the locative of a masculine noun is by simply adding **-е** at the end. See Table 1.

- 5 Сначала он работал на большой фабрике.** *At first he worked at a big factory.*

а *сначала at first, to start with*

б *работал worked*

с *на большой фабрике at a big factory*

ADJECTIVES ENDING IN **-ой**

Фабрике is the locative of the feminine noun **фабрика**, thus **большой** is also in the locative feminine. However, it looks the same as the nominative masculine which you learnt in Lesson 1. There are a few adjectives with a nominative masculine ending of **-ой**.

Большой belongs to this group, as does **молодой**. In **-ой** adjectives the endings are always stressed, which is why, for the moment, we are putting a stress mark (') on them. It is only to help you with pronunciation and should not be put on these words when you write them. See Tables 2 and 3.

- 6 Потом Володя начал работать за границей.** *Then Volodya started to work abroad.*

а *сначала . . . потом* You met **потом** in Lesson 1. Here you see it used in conjunction with **сначала**. These two words are often found near each other to express two things happening in succession, e.g. *First he worked in a factory, then he went abroad.*

б *начал started*

с *работать to work*

- 7 Он работал на новом заводе в лаборатории.** *He worked at a new factory, in the laboratory.*

а *на новом заводе.* **Новом** is the locative masculine of the adjective **новый**, to agree with **заводе**, which is the locative of **завод**. This is the second word you've met meaning factory. **Завод** means a large industrial complex, bigger than **фабрика**, and can sometimes be translated as *plant* or *works*.

б *в лаборатории* The word for *laboratory* is **лаборатория** and here

it is in the locative. All feminine nouns ending in **-ия** change to **-ии** in the locative.

- 8 А что делала Вика?** *But what was Vika doing?*

а Note the reverse order of subject and verb. This often happens in a question.

б *делала was doing* The **-а** on the end of this word is the feminine ending because the subject is Vika. If the subject were Volodya, or any masculine noun, the verb would be **делал**. Thus **Володя делал**: *Volodya was doing*.

THE PAST TENSE

This is the most common way of forming the past tense and is very simple:

remove the letters **-ть** from the infinitive and add **-л** to form the masculine, thus **делать** – **делал**. To this add **-о** to form the neuter, and **-а** (sometimes stressed) for the feminine, thus **делало**, **делала**.

- 9 Она училась в Московском университете на химическом факультете.** *She was studying at Moscow University, in the Chemistry Faculty.*

а *училась was studying (f.)*

THE PAST TENSE OF REFLEXIVE VERBS

Compare **учился**, **училась** with **делал**, **делала**. This is another form of the past tense. It is not as difficult as it looks, because if you remove the suffixes **-ся** and **-сь** you are left with the same endings as on the verbs discussed in N8b. The infinitive is **учиться**, and the past tense is **учился**, **училось**, **-ась**. The suffixes are there because this is a reflexive verb. The **-сь** suffix is a variant of **-ся**, and is always found instead of **-ся** when the word ends in a vowel (**учила -сь**). Reflexive verbs always have this suffix but behave in the same way as other verbs. In other words, their endings change in the same way as in other verbs, and then the suffix is replaced.

б *в Московском университете.* **Московском** is the locative masculine from **московский**, the adjective for *Moscow* which you met in Lesson 1. Here it has a capital letter because it is in the name of an institution. Note, however, that the following word, which is also part of the name, does not have a capital letter. It is usual in Russian for only the first word of a name or title to have a capital letter. **Университете** is the locative of **университет**.

с **Химическом** is an adjective in the locative masculine, to agree with the locative of **факультет**.

- 10 Володя жил в новой квартире.** *Volodya was living in a new flat.*

а *жил was living, lived*

THE PAST TENSE (CONT.)

You will see that **жил** can be translated as *was living* or *lived*, similarly **учился** can mean *was studying* or *studied*, and so on. The English language is very rich in tenses and you will find that this one Russian past tense can be translated by various tenses in English, depending on the meaning. When translating, the best guide is to follow what sounds best to you in English.

- b** в новой квартире. Новой is the locative feminine to agree with the locative of **квартира**: a flat or an apartment.
- 11** Вика жила в общежитии на Ломоносовском проспекте. *Vika was living in a hostel on Lomonosov Prospect.*
- a** в общежитии in a hostel, here probably a student hostel. This is the locative of the neuter word **общежитие**. Like feminine nouns ending in **-ия**, neuter nouns ending in **-ие** also change to **-ии** in the locative.
- b** на Ломоносовском проспекте. Ломоносовском is the locative masculine of the adjective **Ломоносовский**. This is another adjective like those you met in Lesson 1. Like **Ленинский** it is formed from a man's name: Lomonosov was a remarkable scientist and poet (1711–65).

PART 2

- 12** Теперь ты должен рассказать о твоей поездке. *Now you must tell me about your trip.*
- a** рассказать tell No word for *me* is necessary here.
- b** Твоей is the locative of **твоя** which you met in Lesson 1. After the preposition **о** the possessive adjectives *my, your* and *our* must go into the locative. The locative of these words is similar to that of adjectives, except that whereas the usual adjective endings are **-ой** and **-ом**, the possessive adjectives take **-ей** and **-ём** or **-ем**. See Tables 5 and 6.
- 13** О моей поездке? *About my trip?*
Моей is the locative of **моя**. See N12b and Table 5.
- 14** Всё в порядке. *Everything was fine.* You will see that **всё в порядке** can be translated in different ways, depending on the context. We know that Volodya's trip is now over, so it seems necessary in English to refer to it in the past.
- 15** Нет, ты должен рассказать о твоём заводе, о работе, обо всём. *No, you must tell me about your factory, about the work, about everything.*

- a** Твоём is the locative of **твой**. See Table 5.
- b** Работе is the locative of the feminine noun **работа**: work.
- c** обо about This is basically the same word as **о**, but is a special form used before some words beginning with **вс-**, **мн-** or **чт-**, for ease in pronunciation.
- d** всём is the locative of **всё**: all, everything.
- 16** О моём заводе? Хорошо . . . *About my factory? All right . . .*
- a** моём Locative of **мой**. See Table 5.
- b** Хорошо This is a word with many different meanings. In Lesson 1 we translated it as *fine*, here *all right*.
- 17** Простите, на каком заводе вы работали? *Excuse me, in what kind of factory did you work?* (Note order: . . . you worked?)
- a** каком In Lesson 1 you met the words **какой**, **-ое**, **-ая** with the meanings *which . . . ?*, *what . . . ?* (in a question) and *what a . . . !* (in an exclamation). Here you meet yet another meaning of these words: *what kind of . . . ?* This is the locative form from **какой**. See Table 4.
- b** работали You have already met the masculine, feminine and neuter forms of the past tense (N8b). Here you see the plural form, which ends in **-и**. This form is used after **вы** because it is the plural *you*. As you know, **вы** is used when addressing someone politely or formally, and here the taxi driver uses the polite, plural form even though he is addressing only one person, Volodya.
- 18** Я работал на химическом заводе, в физической лаборатории. *I worked in a chemical factory, in the physics laboratory.*
Физической is locative feminine of the adjective **физический** to agree with the locative of **лаборатория**.
- 19** В какой лаборатории? *In which laboratory?*
какой is the locative from **какая**. See Table 4.
- 20** В физической. *In the physics [laboratory].* This is a short answer and there is no need to repeat **лаборатории**.
- 21** Вы работали за границей? *Were you working abroad?*
- 22** В самом деле? *Really?, Is that so?* This is another colloquial phrase for you to learn.
- 23** Значит, вы инженер? *Then, you're an engineer? (That means, you engineer?)*
значит *that means* or *it means*, used in colloquial speech for *then, so*.
- 24** Да, я учился в Московском физическом институте. *Yes, I studied at the Moscow Physics Institute.* See N9b.

- 2 25** А родились вы в Москве? *And were you born in Moscow?*
родились This is the plural form of reflexive verbs. It is formed in the same way as for other verbs, i.e. by adding **-и** to the masculine form, but then the reflexive suffix is replaced: **родил -и -сь**.
- 26** В Москве. *Yes, I was. (In Moscow.)* See L1, N63. Here again the Russian repeats the words we would usually omit in a short answer.
- 27** Значит, вы тоже москвич? *So you're a Muscovite, too?* Note order.
москвич *Muscovite* (m.) Note that in Russian this doesn't have a capital letter.
- 28** А вы тоже родились в нашем городе? *Why, were you born in our town, too?* Note order.
a **нашем** This is the locative from the word **наш** meaning *our*.
Наш has exactly the same endings as **ваш** (*your*) which you met in Lesson 1. See Table 6.
b **городе** locative of the masculine noun **город**.
- 29** А вы, девушка, москвичка? *And are you a Muscovite, Miss? (And you, girl, a Muscovite?)*
a **девушка** This is the Russian word for *girl*. It would sound rude in English to address someone as 'girl', but in Russian it is quite normal.
b **москвичка** *Muscovite* (f.) See N27.
- 30** Нет, я родилась на Украине. *No, I was born in the Ukraine.*
- 31** Но в душе я тоже москвичка. *But at heart I'm a Muscovite, too.*
a **но** This is a stronger *but* than **a**.
b **в душе** *at heart (in my soul)*
- 32** Но вы родились на Украине! *But you were born in the Ukraine!*
- 33** Да, но дело в том, что я жила и училась в Москве. *Yes, but the thing is, I've lived and studied in Moscow.*
дело в том, что A colloquial expression meaning *the thing is or the fact of the matter is that*.
- 34** Вы тоже инженер? *Are you an engineer, too?*
- 35** Нет, я студентка. *No, I'm a student.*
- 36** О чём ты говорил? *What were you talking about? (About what you were talking?)*
a **о чём** *about what?* In Lesson 1 you met the word **что?** meaning *what?* Here you see its locative form after **о**.
b **ты говорил** This is the past tense after the singular form of *you*: **ты**. You will see that it is exactly the same as after **он**. If the person referred to is male, this form is used.

- 37** Ты спросила о моей работе. *You were asking about my work.*
ты спросила *asked, were asking* This is the past tense after **ты**, when the person referred to is female. It is the same as after **она**. Compare with N36b.
- 38** Но я уже всё рассказал. *But I've already told [you] everything.*
 Note order.
a **уже** *already*
b **всё** *everything*
- 39** Теперь я должен спросить о твоей жизни. *Now I must ask [you] about yourself. (Now I must ask about your life.)*
a **спросить** This is the infinitive of the verb *ask*, from which the past tense that you met in N37 was formed.
b **жизни** locative from the feminine noun **жизнь**: *life*. All feminine nouns ending in **-ь** change to **-и** in the locative.
- 40** О моей жизни? *About myself? (About my life?)*
- 41** В университете всё в порядке. *At the university everything's going well.*
 Here you see yet another translation of **всё в порядке**.
- 42** Простите! *Excuse me!*
- 43** Да? А в чём дело? *Yes? What's the matter?*
в чём дело? *What's the matter?, What's up?* Another phrase for you to learn.
- 44** Машина уже на вашей площади. *We're already in your square. (The car already in your square.)*
a **машина** *car* A taxi is sometimes referred to as a car in Russian.
b **вашей** locative from **ваша**. See Table 6.
c **площади** See N39b.
- 45** Куда теперь ехать? *Where to now? (Where now to go?)*
- 46** Мой дом на Донской улице. *My flat is on Don Street. (My block of flats is on Don Street.)*
a **дом** The word **дом** in modern Russian often means a large block of flats, or a large building.
b **на Донской улице**. **Донской** is the locative feminine of the adjective **Донской** from the river *Don*. Here it is in the locative feminine, to agree with the locative of **улица**.
- PART 3
- 47** Я родилась в Одессе. *I was born in Odessa.*
Одессе This is the locative of **Одесса**.

- 2 48 Я учился в химическом институте в Ленинграде. *I studied at a chemistry institute in Leningrad.*

Ленинграде locative of Ленинград.

- 49 А где вы потом работали? *And where did you work after that?*
Потом You have met **потом** meaning, *then, next*. Here it translates better as *after that*. And note its position in the sentence.
- 50 Я работал на маленьком заводе на Украине. А что? *I worked at a small factory in the Ukraine. But why?*
а маленьком locative masculine of adjective маленький. See Table 3.
б А что? *But why? So what? What about it?*
- 51 В общежитии на Невском проспекте. *In the hostel on Nevsky Prospect.* Nevsky Prospect is a famous old street in Leningrad.
- 52 Ты был в Киеве? *Have you [ever] been to Kiev? (You were in Kiev?)*
In Lesson 1 (N9a) you met **был** which means *was* or *were*.
In a question such as this, it must be translated into English as *Have you ever been . . . ?* No word for *ever* is needed in Russian.
- 53 А что ты там делал? *And what did you do there?* Note order.

The language you've learnt

Table 1

Locative of nouns

	masculine		neuter	
Nom.	город	Володя*	место	общежитие
Loc.	городе	Володе	месте	общежитии

	feminine			
Nom.	Вика	деревня	лаборатория	жизнь
Loc.	Вике	деревне	лаборатории	жизни

*Володя, with the ending -я, looks feminine, but is in fact masculine from its meaning. The familiar forms of many male Christian names look feminine from their endings.

Table 2

Nominative of adjectives

masculine	neuter	feminine
маленький физический химический московский ленинградский	маленькое физическое химическое московское ленинградское	маленькая физическая химическая московская ленинградская
первый новый красный	первое новое красное	первая новая красная
большой второй молодой	большое второе молодое	большая вторая молодая

Table 3

Locative of adjectives

masculine (and neuter*)	feminine
в маленьком городе в физическом институте на химическом факультете в московском университете на новом заводе в первом уроке в большом городе о втором уроке о молодом инженере	в маленькой деревне в физической лаборатории на химической фабрике на московской улице в новой квартире в первой части в большой деревне о второй части о молодой студентке

*The neuter locative is exactly the same as the masculine, e.g. **на новом заводе** (m.), **в новом месте** (n.).

Table 4

Locative of какой?, какое?, какая?

masculine	neuter	feminine
в каком доме?	в каком общежитии?	в какой квартире?

2 Table 5
Locative of мой and твой

	masculine	neuter	feminine
Nom.	мой } дом твой }	моё } общежитие твоё }	моя } поездка твоя }
Loc.	в моём } доме твоём }	в моём } общежитии твоём }	о моей } поездке твоей }

Table 6
Locative of наш and ваш

	masculine	neuter	feminine
Nom.	наш } город ваш }	наше } общежитие ваше }	наша } улица ваша }
Loc.	в нашем } городе вашем }	в нашем } общежитии вашем }	на нашей } улице вашей }

Table 7
Locative of что? and всё

Nom.	что?	всё
Loc.	о чём?	обо всём

Table 8
Infinitive and past tense of verbs

	past tense			
	masculine	neuter	feminine	plural
	(я, он, ты)	(оно)	(я, она, ты)	(мы, вы, они)
работать	работал	работало	работала	работали
делать	делал	делало	делала	делали
начать	начал	начало	начала	начали
рассказать	рассказал	—	рассказала	рассказали
жить	жил	—	жила	жили
говорить	говорил	—	говорила	говорили
спросить	спросил	—	спросила	спросили
быть	был	было	была	были

Table 9
Reflexive verbs

	masculine	neuter	feminine	plural
родиться	родился	—	родилась	родились
учиться	учился	—	училась	учились

Table 10
в and на

в	на
в университете	на факультете
в институте	на фабрике
в лаборатории	на заводе
в квартире	на улице
в общежитии	на площади
в деревне	на проспекте
в городе	на Украине
в Киеве	

NOTE: **в** is usually used with names of towns.

Володя приезжает домой Volodya arrives home

What happens

In this lesson we meet Volodya's parents: his father, Nikolai Ivanovich Ivanov, and his mother, Yelena Vasilievna Ivanova. Volodya arrives home and they have plenty to chat about: Volodya asks his parents how they are; they ask him about his trip abroad. Eventually Volodya announces that he intends to get married. His mother strongly disapproves of the idea. His father takes a more reasonable attitude. He warns Volodya to think seriously before taking such a step, but says that Volodya is old enough to decide for himself.

In Part 3 there are two short dialogues: the first is a telephone conversation; the second shows you how a person introduces himself to another in Russian.

New words in this lesson

больница hospital
вдруг suddenly
вечер evening
вечером in the evening
взрослый grown-up, adult
врач doctor
говорить to say, speak
дело business, matter
дом home
домой home, homewards (motion)
думать (imp.) to think
ещё still
жениться to get married
здоров, -а well, healthy
знать to know
или or
кто who
мало little, a little
мама Mum
много a lot, much
мы we
начинать to start
не not

об about
обычно usually
обычный usual
папа Dad
подумать (p.) to think
прав, -а right
приезжать (imp.) to arrive (by transport)
приехать (p.) to arrive (by transport)
радио radio
решить to decide
родители parents
сам himself, myself
сегодня today
серьёзный serious
слушать to listen (to)
смотреть to watch
собираться to intend
согласен, согласна in agreement
спрашивать to ask
телевизор television
только only
третий, -ье, -ья third

три three
человек person
читать to read
что that

чувствовать себя to feel
как ты живёшь? how are you?
как вы живёте? how are you?
я слушаю hello? (I'm listening)

Notes

PART 1

GENERAL NOTE

From now on we are not going to comment on every word, only on those which require explanation because of a grammatical point. If you need to find the meaning of a word, or its nominative form, look in the list of new words in that lesson. Whole sentences which require no comment will not be translated.

- 1 **Володя приезжает домой.** *Volodya arrives home.*
 - a **приезжает arrives, comes** In this lesson you are going to learn the present tense of verbs. The infinitive of this verb is **приезжать**. Most verbs ending in **-ать** belong to the 1st conjugation, and their ending changes to **-ает** after **он, оно, она**, or a person's name, in the present tense.
 - b **домой home, homewards** This form is only used when motion towards the home is implied, i.e. when someone is going or coming home. If someone is already *at home*, a different word is used—**дома**, e.g. **Володя дома** means *Volodya is at home*. This is similar to the use of the two words for *where?* explained in L1, N69a.
- 2 **Ивановы живут в новом доме.** *The Ivanovs live in a new block of flats.* Do not confuse the word **дом** (L2, N46) with **дома** and **домой** (N1b) above.
 - a **Ивановы The Ivanovs** The ending **-ы** is the most common plural ending for nouns.
 - b **живут live** This is part of the verb **жить**: *to live*. This form is used after **они**: *they*. See Table 4.
- 3 **Вот папа, Николай Иванович Иванов.** *This is Dad, Nikolai Ivanovich Ivanov.*
- 4 **Он работает в больнице.** *He works in a hospital.*
работает works (N1a).
- 5 **Вот мама, Елена Васильевна Иванова.** *This is Mum, Yelena Vasilievna Ivanova.* Note that Russian surnames usually take **-а** in the feminine. Vika's surname—*Fedorenko*—is an exception. Surnames ending with **-enko** are typically Ukrainian, and do not change.

- 3 6** Она не работает. *She doesn't work.*
Она работает would mean *she works*. The insertion of **не** between subject and verb makes the sentence negative.
- 7** Обычно вечером папа читает. *In the evening Dad usually reads.*
(Note order: *Usually in the evening Dad reads.*)
читает *reads* (N1a).
- 8** А мама слушает радио или смотрит телевизор. *And Mum listens [to the] radio or watches television.*
- a** слушает *listens to* (N1a). This verb takes an object in the accusative, and no word for *to* is needed.
- b** смотрит *watches* This is part of the verb **смотреть**, which belongs to a different group of verbs from those ending in **-ать**. Verbs ending in **-еть** usually belong to the 2nd conjugation. See Table 5.
- 9** Но сегодня не обычный вечер. *But this evening is no usual evening.*
(*But today not a usual evening.*)
сегодня Listen carefully to the pronunciation of this word: the letter *r* is pronounced **в**.
- 10** Сегодня приехал Володя. *Volodya came back today.* Note order.
приехал is part of **приехать**: *to come, arrive*. It also means *to come back, or arrive home after being away*.
- 11** Папа и мама спрашивают о поездке. *Mum and Dad ask [him] about [his] trip.* (Note the reverse order in Russian—*Dad and Mum . . .*)
- a** It is not necessary to put *him* or *his* in Russian in a sentence such as this where it is obvious to whom it refers.
- b** спрашивают *ask* This is part of the verb **спрашивать**. Here you see the ending of 1st conj. **-ать** verbs after *they*. See Table 1.
- 12** «Всё в порядке»,—говорит Володя. *'Everything was all right', says Volodya.*
говорит *says* This is part of the verb **говорить**. It has similar endings to the verb **смотреть**, except that with **говорить** the endings are stressed. See Table 5. Most verbs ending in **-ить** are 2nd conjugation.
- 13** «Я знаю, что ты мало говоришь о работе»,—говорит папа. *'I know that you don't say much about work', says Dad.*
(*I know that you little say . . .*)
- a** Я знаю *I know* This is part of the verb **знать**. It changes to **знаю** after **я**. See Table 1.

- b** A clause introduced by **что**, *that* is always separated from the previous clause by a comma (,).
- c** ты говоришь *you say* See Table 5.
- 14** Они говорят о доме, о здоровье, о работе. *They talk about home, [their] health and work. (. . . about health, about work.)*
- a** они говорят *they talk* See Table 5.
- b** о доме In Lesson 2 you learnt that **дом** nowadays usually refers to a large block of flats. However, in a context such as this, it can also mean *the home*. Volodya and his parents are discussing family matters.
- 15** Вдруг Володя говорит, что он собирается жениться. *Suddenly Volodya says that he is planning to get married.*
- a** он собирается *he is planning, he intends* This is part of the reflexive verb **собираться**. The endings are exactly the same as on an ordinary **-ать** verb, except that it has the suffix **-ся** after a consonant, and **-сь** after a vowel. See Table 2.
- b** жениться *to get married*, but only for a man, as the word means *to take a wife*. Жена is Russian for *wife*.
- 16** Но мама не согласна. *But Mum doesn't agree [to it].*
(*But Mum not in agreement.*)
согласна This is the feminine of a short adjective meaning *in agreement*. The masculine form is **согласен**, and the letter **-е** is dropped before the feminine ending **-а** is added.

SHORT AND LONG ADJECTIVES

We refer to **согласен** as a 'short' adjective because there are two kinds of adjectives in Russian. The 'short' adjectives have shorter endings than normal or 'long' adjectives (L2, T2). Рад, рада (L1) is also a short adjective. At present it is enough that you know that two types of adjectives exist, and that you recognise them from their endings. A full explanation will be given later.

- 17** Она говорит, что Володя должен ещё подумать об этом. *She says that Volodya must think more about it. (She says that Volodya must still think about it.)*
- a** подумать
- IMPERFECTIVE AND PERFECTIVE ASPECTS OF VERBS
You have already met **думать** meaning *to think*.
In Russian there are usually two verbs for every one verb in English: one in the IMPERFECTIVE ASPECT; the other in the PERFECTIVE ASPECT. **Думать** is the imperfective verb *to think*, and means *to be thinking* or *to think* in a general sense. **Подумать** is the perfective form and has the additional meaning of *thinking*

about something in particular and coming to a conclusion about it. From this you see that the perfective aspect is so-called because it often implies the completing, or perfecting, of an action. The difference between these aspects will become clearer to you as you meet more examples, so don't worry about it too much. It is enough for the moment that you should understand why the perfective form—**подумать**—is used here. Volodya's mother is suggesting that he should have another serious think about his plan to get married, weighing up all the pros and cons, before finally making up his mind about it. It can sometimes be translated as *to think it over*.

- b** **об этом** *about it, about that* You have already met the preposition **о** and the variant **обо** (L2, N15c). This is merely another variant, always used before a word beginning with **а, э, и, о** or **у**.
- 18** **Потом начинает говорить папа.** *Then Dad starts to speak.* (Note order: *Then starts to speak Dad*. It is not unusual in Russian for the subject of the sentence to be at the end.) **начинает** *starts, begins* From **начинать**. See Table 1.
- 19** **Он говорит, что мама не права.** *He says that Mum isn't right.* **права** This is the feminine of the short adjective meaning *right*. The masculine is **прав**.
- 20** **Он думает, что Володя—взрослый человек и сам должен всё решить.** *He thinks that Volodya [is] an adult and must decide [for] himself.* (. . . *Volodya [is] a grown-up person and himself must everything decide.*)
- a** **взрослый** *grown-up, adult (adj.)*
- b** **человек** *person*. Thus **взрослый человек** together is the usual way of saying *an adult*.
- c** **сам** *himself* Note its position in the sentence: **сам** often comes before the verb in Russian.

PART 2

- 21** **Володенька** *Volodenka* This is an affectionate diminutive of *Volodya*.
- 22** **Ну, как вы здесь живёте?** *Well, how are you getting on here?* (*how are you here living?*)
- 23** **Мы хорошо живём. А ты как?** *We're fine. How about you?* (*We're living well. And how [are] you?*)
- 24** **А ты, мама, здорова?** *And how are you, Mum?* (*And you, Mum, well?*)
здорова Feminine of the short adjective meaning *well, healthy*, from the noun **здоровье**.

- 25** **Спасибо, я хорошо себя чувствую.** *I'm feeling well, thank you.* Note order: *thank you* usually comes first in Russian, and *well* between the subject and the verb.
я себя чувствую *I feel, I am feeling* This is part of the verb **чувствовать**, which conjugates in a different way from other **-ать** verbs, as you can see in Table 3. **Себя** is always found with **чувствовать** and means *self*; here it means *myself*, but it can also mean *yourself, himself, ourselves*, etc. What Volodya's mother actually says here is comparable to the English *I feel well in myself*.
- 26** **А ты, папа, как себя чувствуешь?** *And how are you feeling, Dad?*
- 27** **Ну, как ты живёшь?** *Well, how's life treating you?* (*Well, how are you living?*)
- 28** **Работаю много.** *I'm working hard. (Working a lot.)*
работаю Sometimes in colloquial speech **я** is omitted. This is short for **я работаю**. See Table 1.
- 29** **Всё хорошо.** *Everything went well.* Again it seems necessary to put this in the past in English although there is no verb in Russian. See also L2, N14.
- 30** **Ты знаешь, что я обычно мало говорю о работе.** *You know that I don't usually say much about work.* (. . . *that I usually little say about work.*)
- a** **ты знаешь** *you know* See Table 1.
- b** **я говорю** *I say* See Table 5.
- 31** **Знаю.** [*Yes, I*] *know*. See Table 1.
- 32** **Что вы обычно делаете вечером?** *What do you usually do in the evening?*
вы делаете *you do* Part of **делать**. See Table 1.
- 33** **Что мы делаем?** *What do we do?*
- 34** **Читаем, слушаем радио, смотрим телевизор.** *We read, listen to the radio, watch television.*
Читаем, слушаем, смотрим all have the ending they take after **мы**, although here **мы** is omitted, as was **я** in N28. See Tables 1 and 5.
- 35** **Телевизор смотрите?** *Watch television?* Note reverse order—it gives greater emphasis.
- 36** **А папа говорит, что вы только работаете.** *But Dad says that you just work.* (. . . *that you only work.*)

- 3 37** Нет, я так не говорю. *No, I wouldn't say that. (No, I so do not say.)*
Так can mean *so* or *that*.
- 38** Володя, о чём ты думаешь? *Volodya, what are you thinking about?*
(... of what are you thinking?)
ты думаешь *you think, are thinking* Part of думать. See Table 1.
- 39** Знаешь, мама, я решил жениться. *You know, Mum, I've decided to get married.*
а знаешь This is a very colloquial use of **знать**: *to know*. The same thing is found in colloquial English speech.
b решил Past of решить.
- 40** Жениться? Нет, я не согласна. *To get married? No, I don't agree [to it].*
- 41** Ты не согласна? Но это моё дело. *You don't agree [to it]? But it's my business!*
моё дело. Дело is a word with many different meanings. You've already met it in the phrases **в чём дело?**, **дело в том, что** and **в самом деле**. Here **моё дело** is best translated as *my own business*.
- 42** Не твоё дело, а наше дело! Коля! *Not your business, but our business! Kolya!*
Коля *Kolya* is the usual familiar form of *Nikolai*.
- 43** Володя собирается жениться, а мы не знаем, кто она. *Volodya intends to get married, and we don't know who she is.*
кто она *who she is* Here you see **кто**, which you've met in questions, used as relative pronoun in a clause. Like **что**, it is preceded by a comma when introducing a relative clause.
- 44** Нет, Лена, я думаю, что ты не права... *No, Lena, I don't think you're right... (... I think that you not right...)*
Лена is the familiar form of *Елена*.
- 45** Я не права? Нет, это ты не прав. *I'm not right? No, it's you [who's] not right.*
- 46** Это серьёзное дело, Володя. *This is a serious matter, Volodya.*
- 47** Ты должен хорошо подумать. *You must think it over well.* Note order. Look back at N17a for note on **подумать**.
- 48** Я согласен, но я хорошо подумал. *I agree, but I have thought it over well.*
- 49** Да, я взрослый человек и должен решить сам. *Yes, I'm grown-up and must decide [for] myself.*

сам In N20c you met **сам** meaning *himself*. Here it means *myself*. **Сам** can in fact mean *myself, yourself* or *himself* to correspond with **я, ты, он**, or a person's name, as long as the one person referred to is male. If the person is female use **самá**, and for the plural use **са́ми**.

PART 3

- 50** Я слушаю. *Hello! (I'm listening.)* This is what Russians usually say when answering the telephone.
- 51** Здравствуй, Вася! Ты уже дома? *Hello, Vasya! Are you at home already? (You already at home?)* For note on **дома** and **домой** see N1b.
- 52** Сам не знаю... *I don't know, myself...* Note order.

3 The language you've learnt

Table 1

Present tense of 1st conjugation verbs ending in -ать

работать	
я работаю	мы работаем
ты работаешь	вы работаете
он работает	они работают
она	

In this lesson you have also met the verbs:

делать	начинать	спрашивать
думать	приезжать	читать
знать	слушать	

They all conjugate like **работать**: simply remove the infinitive ending -ть and add those you see in bold type above.

Table 2

Present tense of 1st conjugation reflexive verbs ending in -аться

собираться	
я собираюсь	мы собираемся
ты собираешься	вы собираетесь
он собирается	они собираются
она	

Table 3

Present tense of чувствовать (себя) (1st. conj.)

чувствовать	
я чувствую	мы чувствуем
ты чувствуешь	вы чувствуете
он чувствует	они чувствуют
она	

The endings here are in fact the same as those in Table 1, except that the letter -y has been inserted before them. Note also that the whole infinitive ending -овать is removed. Most verbs with infinitives ending in -овать conjugate in this way.

Table 4

Present tense of жить (1st conj.)

жить	
я живу	мы живём
ты живёшь	вы живёте
он живёт	они живут
она	

Table 5

Present tense of 2nd conjugation verbs смотреть and говорить

смотреть		говорить	
я смотрю	мы смотрим	я говорю	мы говорим
ты смотришь	вы смотрите	ты говоришь	вы говорите
он смотрит	они смотрят	он говорит	они говорят
она		она	

We have put stress marks on the two verbs to show you that this is the difference in the way they conjugate.

Note on 1st and 2nd conjugations

The most significant difference between the two conjugations is the ending after **они**. The 2nd conjugation ends in -ят, or sometimes -ат, whereas the 1st conjugation ending is -ют or -ут.

Утро в квартире Володи Morning at Volodya's flat

What happens

In this lesson Volodya is having breakfast on the morning after his arrival home. First we learn a little more about the Ivanovs' flat, then we hear what is on the breakfast table.

Volodya eats a good breakfast but his mother still complains that he hasn't any appetite! The telephone rings. It's Vika, who was unable to meet him the previous evening because she had a meeting at the university. They decide to meet today, but when and where? They arrange to meet on the corner of Lenin Prospect and Molodyozhnaya Street at two o'clock.

In Part 3 there are three short dialogues: in the first, Sergei asks Irina what there is for breakfast, but he only feels like coffee; in the second, Andrei asks Pyotr if he worked the previous evening; and in the third, Taya asks Misha if he's busy as she'd like him to tell her about his new work, but he's hurrying to a meeting.

New words in this lesson

аппетит appetite
белый white
вилка fork
время (н.) time
встретиться (р.) to meet
(each other)
вчера yesterday
далеко far away, a long way away
два (f. две) two
другой another, the other
есть is, there is
завтрак breakfast
завтракать (imp.) to have breakfast
звонить (imp.) to ring
каша kasha (porridge)
когда when
кого whom (gen. of кто)
колбаса sausage
комната room
кофе (м.) coffee
кусоч piece
меня me (gen. of я)

метро The Underground, the tube
Молодёжная улица Molodyozhnaya
Street
на on, for
нас us (gen. of мы)
настроение mood
нет no, there isn't any
нож knife
один, одно, одна one
окно window
плохой bad
площадь Маяковского Mayakovsky
Square
поздно late
проспект Маркса Marx Prospect
разговор conversation, discussion
решать (imp.) to decide
ровно precisely
рыба fish
рядом beside, nearby
свободен, свободно, свободна
free (short form)

свободный free (long form)
сейчас now
станция station
стол table
столовая dining-room
сыр cheese
тарелка plate
тебя you (gen. of ты)
телефон telephone
тогда in that case, then
у меня, у тебя, у Володи I have,
you have, Volodya has
угол corner
утро morning
хлеб bread
хороший, -ее, -ая good

чай tea
час hour
чашка tea-cup
чёрный black
четвёртый fourth
четыре four

большое спасибо thank you very much
всего хорошего all the best
доброе утро good morning
на здоровье your health, bless you
в два часа at two o'clock
часа в три at about three o'clock
у меня совсем нет времени I have no
time at all

Notes

PART 1

- 1 **Утро в квартире Володи.** *Morning at Volodya's flat.*
в квартире Володи Here **Володя** has the ending **-и** because it is in the GENITIVE CASE. Genitive is the name of the case which usually denotes POSSESSION. **Володи** really means *of Volodya*, and **квартира Володи**: *the flat of Volodya*, hence *Volodya's flat*.
- 2 **Это—столовая, там комната папы и мамы, а там комната Володи.** *This is the dining-room, there's Mum and Dad's room, and there's Volodya's room.*
комната папы и мамы *the room of Mum and Dad*. Words ending in **-а** take **-ы** in the genitive, whereas words ending in **-я (Володя)** take **-и**. See Table 2.
- 3 **В квартире—три комнаты.** *The flat has three rooms. (In the flat three rooms.)*
три комнаты The genitive case is also used after numbers: **комнаты** is in the genitive *singular* even though it is after **три**. It is an oddity of Russian that after **два, три** and **четыре** nouns go into the genitive singular.
- 4 **В комнате Володи—одно окно, в столовой—два окна.** *In Volodya's room [there's] one window, in the dining-room [there are] two windows.*
а одно окно *One* in Russian declines like an adjective and always agrees with the noun following it. **Один, одно, одна** are the three nominative forms to agree with the three genders, e.g. **один стол, одно окно, одна комната**.

- 4** **в столовой** *in the dining-room* The word **столовая** is really an adjective which has come to be used as a noun. It therefore declines like an adjective and here has the usual locative feminine ending.
- с два окна** *two windows* (N3). **Окна** is the genitive of the neuter noun **окно**. Most neuter and masculine nouns end in **-а** in the genitive. (Nouns like **Володя** and **папа** are exceptions because, although they are masculine because of their meaning, they have feminine-type endings, and therefore decline like feminine nouns.)
- 5 На столе—одна тарелка, рядом—два ножа и две вилки.** *On the table there's one plate, [and] next to it, two knives and two forks.*
- а на столе** Here **на** means *on*.
- б одна тарелка** (N4a).
- с рядом** *nearby, next [to it], beside [it]*—no words for *it* or *to it* are required in Russian.
- д два ножа** (N4c).
- е две вилки.** **Два** changes to **две** before a feminine noun. **Вилки** is the genitive of **вилка**.
- 6 Вот один кусок чёрного хлеба.** *Here's one piece of black bread.*
- а один кусок** (N4a).
- б кусок чёрного хлеба** As in English we say a piece of something, so in Russian the noun following **кусок** must go into the genitive.
- с чёрного хлеба.** **Чёрного** is the genitive of the adjective **чёрный** to agree with **хлеба**, genitive of the masculine noun **хлеб**. The ending **-ого** is the most common genitive ending of an adjective with a masculine or neuter noun. See Table 3. Note that here, and in all similar genitive endings of adjectives and pronouns, the letter **р** is pronounced **в**.
- 7 Рядом—белый хлеб.** *Nearby [there's some] white bread.*
- 8 А вот—четыре куска колбасы.** *And here [are] four pieces of sausage.*
- четыре куска** After **четыре** the word **кусок** must go into the genitive: **куска**. When the **-а** is added, the **-о** is dropped, for ease in pronunciation. It is not uncommon for the letters **-о**, **-е** and **-и** to be dropped before an ending is added. You have already met this in the short adjective **согласен, согласна**, and in **один, одно**.
- 9 Сегодня на завтрак каша, колбаса, сыр и кофе.** *For breakfast today [there's] kasha, sausage, cheese and coffee.* Note order.
- а на завтрак** *for breakfast* **На** means *for* in certain phrases. Make a special effort to learn them.
- б каша** *kasha* is similar to porridge, but can be made from many different types of cereal.

- 10 А чая сегодня нет.** *But there isn't any tea today.* Note order.
- а нет** You've met **нет** meaning *no*. Here it means *there is no* or, more common in English, *there isn't any*. Whatever there is none of goes into the genitive.
- б Чая** is the genitive of the masculine noun **чай**.
- 11 Володя начинает завтракать.** *Volodya starts his breakfast.* (*... to have breakfast.*)
- завтракать** The addition of the infinitive ending **-ать** to the word for *breakfast*, **завтрак**, has made a verb: *to have breakfast*. It is a 1st conjugation **-ать** verb.
- 12 Звонит телефон.** *The telephone rings.*
Note reverse order.
- 13 Это Вика. Сегодня она свободна.** *It's Vika. She's free today.*
Note order.
- свободна** You met **свободно** in Lesson 1. It was in the neuter because it was referring to **такси**. The masculine is **свободен**, so it is like **согласен, согласна**, which you already know.
- 14 У Володи тоже есть свободное время.** *Volodya also has some free time.*
- а У Володи есть ...** *Volodya has ...* The normal way in Russian of saying that someone *has* something is to use the preposition **у** and the person's name, or a personal pronoun, in the genitive, followed by the word **есть**: *there is*.
- б свободное время** *free time* In N13 you met the short forms of the adjective *free*. **Свободное** is the neuter form of the full adjective, **свободный**, to agree with **время**, which is neuter although it looks feminine.
- SHORT AND LONG ADJECTIVES (CONT.)
- Many adjectives in Russian have, in addition to their full or 'long' form, an abbreviated or 'short' form. The short adjectives you have met so far are summarized in Table 5.
- The short form of adjectives is only found in the nominative, whereas the long form declines so as to agree with nouns in all the different cases. The short form is used in simple sentences such as **Володя свободен**, which, in English, are composed of subject + verb *to be* + adjective (*Volodya is free*). Compare this with the sentence **У Володи есть свободное время**, where **свободное** is in the long form because it is together with a noun. As you work through the lessons look carefully at each adjective to see whether it is long or short, and why. In this way you will learn which form is used where.

- 4** 15 Они решают встретиться. *They decide to meet.*
Они решают *They decide* Part of **решать** (L3, T1).
- 16 Но когда и где? *But when and where?*
- 17 В два часа на Ленинском проспекте. *At two o'clock, on Lenin Prospect.*
В два часа *At two o'clock (At two hours)* **Час** means *hour*, and here it is in the genitive after **два**.
- 18 На углу Ленинского проспекта и Молодёжной улицы. *At the corner of Lenin Prospect and Molodyozhnaya Street.*
- a На углу A few masculine nouns add **-у** in the locative instead of **-е**. **Угол** also drops the **-о** as it adds **-у**.
- b Молодёжной улицы means *Youth Street*, from the word for *youth*: **молодёжь** (f.). Here you see the genitive feminine ending of adjectives, **-ой**. It is the same as the locative feminine. See Table 3.

PART 2

- 19 Доброе утро, мама! *Good morning, Mum!*
- 20 А что у тебя сегодня на завтрак? *And what have you got for breakfast today?* Note order.
у тебя *you have* (N14a). Тебя is the genitive of **ты**. Note that **есть** is sometimes omitted.
- 21 А рыба у тебя есть? *And have you got any fish?*
у тебя **есть** . . . ? *have you any* . . . ? **Есть** is always retained in the type of question asking *is there, are there, have* . . . *any?*
- 22 Нет, рыбы у меня нет. *No, I haven't got any fish.*
- a у меня нет *I haven't any* Меня is the genitive of **я**. У меня нет is the negative of у меня **есть**.
- b рыбы After **нет** whatever there is none of goes into the genitive, thus **нет рыбы**: *there is no fish*. Compare the positive and negative statements:
У меня **есть** рыба. *I have some fish.*
У меня **нет** рыбы. *I haven't any fish.*
- 23 Хорошо. Значит, каша, колбаса и сыр. [*That's*] *all right. Then [I'll have] kasha, sausage and cheese.*
- 24 А чай у тебя есть? *Have you any tea?*
- 25 Нет, чая у меня сегодня нет. *No, I haven't any tea today.*
Note order.
- 26 Володя, у тебя нет аппетита! *Volodya, you haven't any appetite!*

- 27 У кого нет аппетита? У меня? *Who's got no appetite? Me?*
У кого? *who has?* In the same way as **Володя, мы** and **ты** go into the genitive after **у**, so too does **кто**. See Table 6. Note again the pronunciation of **г** as **в**.
- 28 Одна тарелка каши, четыре куска колбасы, два куска сыра, две чашки кофе. *One plate of kasha, four pieces of sausage, two pieces of cheese, two cups of coffee.*
- a N4a, N3 and Tables 1, 2, and 4.
- b Кофе, like **такси**, does not decline. There are a few more words in Russian that do not decline. They are words from other languages. Most of them, including **такси**, are neuter. **Кофе**, however, is masculine.
- 29 И ты говоришь, что у меня плохой аппетит! *And you say that I've got a bad appetite!*
плохой *bad* **Плохой** is another adjective like **большой** and **молодой**, with a nominative masculine ending of **-ой**, and stressed endings.
- 30 А как твоё настроение? *And what's your mood like? (And how's your mood?)*
- 31 Завтрак был очень хороший. *Breakfast was very good.*
Хороший is the full adjective for *good*. Learn carefully its nominative endings: **хороший, -ее, -ая**.
- 32 Большое спасибо. *Thank you very much. (A big thank you.)*
- 33 На здоровье. *You're welcome. (To [your] health.)*
- 34 Где ты была вчера вечером? *Where were you yesterday evening?*
- 35 Вчера у меня совсем не было свободного времени. *Yesterday I didn't have any free time at all.*
- a У меня **не** было means *I had no*, and is the past tense of у меня **нет**: *I have no*. Note that the stress is on **не** in this phrase.
- b **совсем** The insertion of **совсем** in the middle of this phrase makes it more emphatic: *I had absolutely no (time), I had no (time) at all, I really didn't have any (time).*
- c **свободного времени** This is in the genitive as it is a negative statement. **Не было** demands the genitive in the same way as **нет**. (N10a)
- d **свободного** For note on genitive of masculine and neuter adjectives see N6c.
- e **времени** This is the genitive of the neuter noun **время**. It does not take the same endings as other neuter nouns, so make a special effort to remember it.

- 4 36** У меня была встреча в университете. *I had a meeting at the university.*
- 37** У меня был серьёзный разговор дома. *I had a serious discussion at home.* Note that here, and in **у меня была встреча** (N36), was in the gender of the noun following it, which, in Russian, is really the subject of this construction.
- 38** А о чём? *Oh, what about?*
А can be an exclamation of surprise or interest, as well as *and* or *but*.
- 39** Ну, это потом . . . *Well, I'll tell you later . . . (Well, that later . . .)*
Note this colloquial use of **потом**.
- 40** Я свободна. *I'm free.*
- 41** И я тоже свободен. *And I'm free, too.* Note this and the previous clear example of the use of the short adjective.
- 42** Значит, у нас только одно дело—встретиться. *That means there's only one thing for us [to do]—to meet.*
a у нас *we have* **Нас** is the genitive of **мы**.
b одно дело *one thing [to do]* Here is yet another meaning of **дело**.
- 43** Ты прав. Другого дела у нас сегодня нет. *You're right. There's nothing else for us [to do] today. (We don't have another thing [to do] today.)* Note order.
a у нас нет *we have no, we don't have*
b другого дела *another thing, anything else* This is in the genitive after **нет**. **Другого** is the masculine and neuter genitive of the adjective **другой**: *other, another*.
- 44** На станции метро «Проспект Маркса». *At Marx Prospect tube station.* Note reverse order.
a метро Russian has taken the French word *metro* for its Underground system. This is another of the foreign words which do not decline.
b «Проспект Маркса» This is the name of a tube station in the centre of Moscow.
- 45** Нет, это далеко. *No, that's a long way away.*
- 46** Тогда, на Ленинском проспекте. *In that case, on Lenin Prospect.*
- 47** Хорошо, но где на Ленинском? *All right, but where on Lenin Prospect?* (There is no need to repeat *Prospect* in Russian.)

- 48** Часа в три, в четыре? *At about three, or four?* In Russian, *at three o'clock* is expressed by **в три часа** (N17). When the order is inverted, as here, **часа в три**, the meaning is altered slightly and the statement becomes less definite and more vague: *at about three o'clock*.
- 49** Нет, это поздно. *No, that's [too] late.*
No word for *too* is needed here.
- 50** Очень хорошо. Значит, ровно в два часа. *Very good. At two o'clock sharp, then. (That means, precisely at two o'clock.)*
- 51** Всего хорошего. *All the best* is the nearest English equivalent to this Russian expression. It is a friendly way of saying goodbye, which can also be used at the end of a letter. Here are two more clear examples of the letter **г** pronounced **в** in the genitive.
- PART 3
- 52** А кофе есть? *And is there any coffee?*
Есть. *Yes, there is.* Note that the one word **есть** is the normal short positive reply to a question such as this.
- 53** У меня совсем нет аппетита. *I've got no appetite at all.*
- 54** Нет, не работал. У меня было плохое настроение. *No, I didn't work. I was in a bad mood. (I had a bad mood.)*
- 55** Миша, ты занят? *Misha, are you busy?*
Занят is the masculine of the short adjective meaning *busy* or *occupied*. You've already met the neuter form **занято** referring to **такси**.
- 56** У меня в четыре часа встреча. *I've got a meeting at four o'clock.*
Note order.
- 57** На площади Маяковского. *In Mayakovsky Square.*
In the centre of this square there is a statue of Mayakovsky—the revolutionary poet and playwright (1893–1930).
- 58** Ну, это не далеко. *Well, that's not far away.*
- 59** Сейчас три часа. *It's three o'clock now. (Now three o'clock.)*
a сейчас Another word for *now*.
b три часа *three o'clock* **В** is only needed when in English it would be *at three o'clock*.
- 60** У тебя есть ещё час. *You've still got an hour.* Note where **ещё** comes in this sentence.

4 The language you've learnt

Table 1

Genitive of masculine and neuter nouns

	masculine			neuter		
Nom.	час	кусóк	чай	окно́	настро́ение	вре́мя
Gen.	часá	кускá	ча́я	окна́	настро́ения	вре́мени

Table 2

Genitive of feminine nouns*

Nom.	мама	вилка	лаборатория	площадь
Gen.	мамы	вилки	лаборатории	площади

*And nouns which are masculine but look feminine, e.g. **Володя, папа**

Table 3

Genitive of adjectives

	masculine	neuter	feminine
Nom.	чёрный хлеб большой кусок	чёрное такси другое дело	Молодёжная улица большая тарелка
Gen.	чёрного хлеба большого куска	чёрного такси другого дела	Молодёжной улицы большой тарелки

Table 4

Numerals 1-4

	masculine	neuter	feminine
1	один стол	одно окно	одна рыба
2	два стола	два окна	две рыбы
3, 4	три четыре стола	три четыре окна	три четыре рыбы

Table 5

Short adjectives

masculine	neuter	feminine
рад прав свободен согласен занят	— — свободно согласно занято	рада права свободна согласна занята

Table 6

У кого есть . . . ? (Who has . . . ?)

Nominative	Genitive
кто?	у кого есть?
я	у меня есть
ты	у тебя есть
мы	у нас есть
вы	у вас есть
мама	у мамы есть
Володя	у Володи есть
Вика	у Вики есть

День в городе A day in town

What happens

This lesson begins with Volodya waiting on the corner of Lenin Prospect and Molodyozhnaya Street. Vika comes, and they walk towards the University. Volodya likes it there because Moscow University is situated on a hill and from there one has a good view of the city.

Volodya wants to buy a newspaper, and goes to a kiosk where he buys a newspaper and some magazines.

A foreign tourist comes up to Volodya and Vika to ask them the way to Gagarin Square. They don't know the way but suggest that he ask a policeman.

In Part 3 there are two dialogues: in the first, someone stops to ask the way and unfortunately picks a foreigner; in the second, Victor asks Sasha what he's doing in the park.

New words in this lesson

в to
видеть (imp.) to see
высотное здание tall building,
skyscraper
газета newspaper
день (m.) day
ждать (imp.) to wait, wait for
журнал magazine
забыть (p.) to forget
здание building
идти (imp.) to go (on foot)
иностранец foreigner
киоск kiosk
конечно of course
копейка kopek
культура culture
купить (p.) to buy
любить (imp.) to love, to like
милиционер policeman
может быть perhaps
мочь (imp.) to be able
на to

Новый Арбат the New Arbat
отдых rest, recreation
отсюда from here
оттуда from there
парк park
плохо badly
площадь Восстания Vosstaniya
Square (Uprising Square)
площадь Гагарина Gagarin Square
пойти (p.) to go (on foot)
покупать (imp.) to buy
по-русски in Russian
посмотреть (p.) to look
предлагать (imp.) to offer
продавец seller, kiosk attendant
пройти (p.) to get to (on foot)
пятый fifth
пять five
сегодняшний, -ее, -я today's (adj.)
стадион имени Ленина the Lenin
Stadium
сторона side, direction

стоять (imp.) to stand
туда there, to there
турист tourist
улица Горького Gorky Street
у него he has

Иностранная литература Foreign
Literature
Комсомольская правда Komsomol-
skaya Pravda
Новое время New Time
Новый мир New World

Правда Pravda
Советская Россия Soviet Russia
Советский спорт Soviet Sport

Вот и она. Here she is!
одну минуту just a minute, wait a
minute
идти в сторону университета to go in
the direction of the university
пожалуйста not at all, don't
mention it
прекрасно! lovely!

Notes

PART 1

- 1 День в городе. A day in town.
- 2 Володя стоит на углу Ленинского проспекта и Молодёжной улицы и ждёт Вика. Volodya is standing on the corner of Lenin Prospect and Molodyozhnaya Street, waiting for Vika. (. . . and waits for Vika.)
 - a стоит stands, is standing From стоять which conjugates like говорить (L3, T5).
 - b ждёт awaits, waits for From ждать, which takes an object in the accusative. Although its infinitive ends in -ать, it has an irregular conjugation. See Table 1.
 - c Вика (L1, N45c) Вика changes to Вика here because it is the object, and is in the accusative.
- 3 Вот и она. And here she is.
- 4 Вика и Володя идут в сторону университета. Vika and Volodya walk in the direction of the University.
идут go, walk You met a verb to go in Lesson 1, in connection with going somewhere in a taxi. That was ехать, which is used for going in some kind of vehicle. Идут is part of the verb идти, used for going on foot. In the present tense it conjugates in a similar way to the verb ждать. See Table 1.
- 5 Володя любит это место. Volodya loves it there. (. . . loves that place.)
любит loves, likes From любить. See Table 3.

- 5** 6 Оттуда они могут видеть весь город: Кремль, стадион имени Ленина, парк культуры и отдыха, высотное здание на площади Восстания. *From there they can see the whole town: the Kremlin, the Lenin Stadium, the recreation park, the tall building on Vosstaniya Square.*
- a они могут *they can* Part of **мочь**: *to be able*. See Table 2.
 - b весь You've met **весь** meaning *all*; here it means *the whole*.
 - c стадион имени Ленина. This means literally *the stadium in the name of Lenin*. It is a common practice in the Soviet Union to dedicate public buildings to famous leaders. The neuter word **имя** means *name* and declines like **время**, thus **имени** is the genitive and here means *in the name of*. The person's name also goes into the genitive.
 - d парк культуры и отдыха This means literally *the park of culture and rest*.
 - e высотное здание. **Здание** means *building*, and **высотное**: *high, tall*. This is a Russian expression for a *very tall building*, or *skyscraper*.
 - f на площади Восстания The name of this square comes from **восстание**: *uprising*, so literally this phrase means *in the Square of the Uprising*.
- 7 Володя должен купить газету. *Volodya has to buy a newspaper.*
- 8 Володя покупает «Комсомольскую правду» и «Советский спорт». *Volodya buys 'Komsomolskaya Pravda' and 'Soviet Sport'.*
- a покупает *buys* Part of the imperfective verb **покупать**. Don't worry that this is the different aspect of *to buy* from **купить**—the perfective infinitive—in the sentence above. The PRESENT TENSE is always expressed by the IMPERFECTIVE ASPECT of the verb.
 - b «Комсомольскую правду» This is the accusative of «Комсомольская правда», a special edition of the newspaper *Pravda* intended for younger readers and Komsomol members. It is in the accusative because it is the object. **-ую** is the usual feminine accusative ending for adjectives.
 - c «Советский спорт» Masculine and neuter nouns and adjectives do not change in the accusative.
- 9 Продавец предлагает купить журнал. *The kiosk attendant suggests that he buy a magazine. (. . . suggests to buy . . .)*
- a продавец This word means a *seller* of anything, and is also used for a shop assistant.
 - b предлагает *suggests* Part of **предлагать**, which is followed by the infinitive.

- 5** 10 У него есть «Иностранная литература», «Новый мир» и «Новое время». *He's got 'Foreign Literature', 'New World' and 'New Time'.*
у него есть *he has* Него is genitive of он when following a preposition.
- 11 Володя видит иностранного туриста. *Volodya sees a foreign tourist.*
- a видит *sees* Part of **видеть**. See Table 4.
 - b иностранного туриста You already know that the object of a verb goes into the accusative case, and that feminine nouns usually change their endings to **-y** or **-ю** (N1c). You've also learnt that masculine and neuter nouns don't change in the accusative (N8c). There is an exception to this rule, however. The accusative of MASCULINE ANIMATE NOUNS is the same as the genitive. This is why **иностранного туриста** has genitive endings.
- 12 Иностранец плохо говорит по-русски. *The foreigner speaks Russian badly. (The foreigner badly speaks in Russian.)*
- a плохо *badly* This adverb is formed from the adjective **плохой**. Adverbs are usually formed from adjectives by removing the ending **-ой**, **-ый** or **-ий**, and adding **-о**. You also know **хорошо** from **хороший**. The adverb is often the same as the neuter short form of the adjective.
 - b говорит по-русски *To speak Russian* is **говорить по-русски**. **По-русски** means *Russian*, or *in Russian*, and only refers to the language.
- 13 Он спрашивает Володю, как пройти на площадь Гагарина. *He asks Volodya how to get to Gagarin Square.*
- a Володю is in the accusative as it is the object of **спрашивает**. It ends in **-ю** because it declines like a feminine noun.
 - b пройти This is a variant of the verb **идти**, and means *to get to* a place.
 - c на *to* So far **на** has always meant *in, at* or *on*, and has been followed by the locative case. When movement *to* a place is implied, it is followed by the accusative (here the same as the nominative, as **площадь** doesn't change in the accusative).
 - d площадь Гагарина This square is named after Yury Gagarin, the Soviet cosmonaut who was the first man in space.
- 14 Он предлагает спросить милиционера. *He suggests he ask a policeman. (. . . to ask . . .)*
- a Спросить is the perfective infinitive of **ask**. **Спрашивать** is the imperfective.
 - b Милиционера is another masculine animate noun, with a genitive ending here, as it is the object. (N11b)

- 15 Ну, куда мы можем теперь пойти? *Well, where can we go now?*
Note order.
пойти *go* Perfective of идти.
- 16 Может быть, в парк культуры? *Maybe to the recreation park?*
а может быть Literally *may be*, or *perhaps*.
б в *to* See N13c—the same applies to в.
- 17 Или на Новый Арбат? *Or to the New Arbat?* In Moscow there is the famous old Arbat Street, near to which has recently been developed a wide street with modern shopping precincts and tall buildings. Muscovites refer to this as the 'New Arbat'.
- 18 Знаешь, мы можем пойти в сторону университета и оттуда посмотреть на Кремль, Новый Арбат, парк культуры, улицу Горького . . . *You know what, we could go in the direction of the University and from there have a look at the Kremlin, the New Arbat, the recreation park, Gorky Street . . .*
а посмотреть This is the perfective aspect of the verb смотреть: *to watch, look at*.
The perfective form of many verbs has the additional meaning of doing the action for a short while, then ceasing. Thus посмотреть can be translated as *to have a look at*.
б улицу Горького Accusative of улица Горького. Gorky Street, one of Moscow's main streets, is named after Maxim Gorky, one of the first Soviet writers.
- 19 Прекрасно. А ты знаешь, как туда пройти? *Marvellous. But do you know how to get there?*
- 20 Конечно, знаю. Ты забыла, что я родился в Москве. *Of course, I know. You've forgotten that I was born in Moscow.*
забыла Past tense (f.) of забыть: *to forget*.
- 21 Прости, я в самом деле забыла. *Sorry, I really had forgotten.*
а прости You already know простите as *excuse me*. It also means *I'm sorry* or *forgive me*. Like здравствуйте and the more familiar form здравствуй, there are two forms: простите and прости, which is the familiar form.
б в самом деле was in Lesson 2. Note where it comes in this sentence.
- 22 Где купить газету? *Where can I buy a newspaper?* (*Where to buy a newspaper?*) Note this use of the infinitive in colloquial speech.
- 23 Ты ещё не читал сегодняшнюю газету? *Haven't you read today's paper yet?* (*You still haven't read today's paper?*)

сегодняшнюю *today's* This is an adjective from сегодня. Its nominative forms are сегодняшний, сегодняшнее, сегодняшняя, and it is a SOFT ADJECTIVE. See Table 6 and compare with the endings in Table 5.

- 24 Видишь вон там киоск? *You see that kiosk over there?* (*See over there kiosk?*)
- 25 Можешь там купить. *You can buy one there. (Can there buy.)*
Note that this and the sentence above are abbreviated because it is colloquial speech: ты is omitted, and no word for *one* is needed.
- 26 Сегодняшнюю газету, пожалуйста. *Today's paper, please.* This is in the accusative because, if it were not abbreviated, colloquial speech, Volodya would be saying *Give me today's paper, please*, and *today's paper* would clearly be the object of such a sentence.
- 27 Какую? «Правду», «Советскую Россию», «Труд»? *Which one?* 'Pravda', 'Soviet Russia', 'Labour'?
а какую? *which?* Accusative of *какая* because it refers to газету.
б «Правду», «Советскую Россию», «Труд» These names of Soviet newspapers are in the accusative for the same reason as in N26.
- 28 А «Комсомольская правда» есть? *And have you got 'Komsomolskaya Pravda'?*
есть? Whereas in English it is normal in a shop to ask *have you got . . . ?*, in Russian one can just say *есть?: is there?*
- 29 Есть. In a reply, *есть* is enough to say *Yes, there is*.
- 30 Две копейки, пожалуйста. *Two kopeks, please.* Soviet currency is a decimal currency and there are 100 kopeks in a ruble. The word for *kopek* is *копейка*, and here it is in the genitive after *две*.
- 31 Пожалуйста. For this use of *пожалуйста* look back to L1, N28a.
- 32 Журнал можете купить. *Would you like to buy a magazine?* (*Magazine you can buy.*)
- 33 Какой? *What have you got?* (*Which?*) This is masculine because it refers to журнал.
- 34 «Иностранную литературу», «Новый мир», «Новое время». 'Foreign Literature', 'New World', 'New Time'. See N26—they are the object of *купить*.
- 35 Отсюда—на площадь Гагарина? *From here to Gagarin Square?*
- 36 Простите. *I'm sorry.* Here, *простите* is short for *I'm sorry to have troubled you*.

- 5 37** Одну минуту. *Just a minute! (One minute.)* Another colloquial phrase for you to learn.
- 38** Кто может знать? *Who could know? (Who can know?)*
- 39** Кого? *Who?* Genitive of **кто** because it is referring to милиционера.
- 40** Вы можете спросить милиционера. Он должен знать. *You can ask the policeman. He should know.*
- 41** Пожалуйста. In reply to спасибо, пожалуйста means *Not at all, Please don't mention it.*

PART 3

- 42** Ах, вы иностранец! Простите, пожалуйста. Но вы очень хорошо говорите по-русски. *Oh, you're a foreigner! Excuse me, please. But you speak Russian very well.*
- 43** Да, уже часа два. *Yes, [I've] already [been here] about two hours.*
- 44** Я думаю, что она забыла о вашей встрече или ждёт в другом месте. *I think that she's forgotten about your meeting or is waiting in another place.*
в другом месте *in another place, in a different place.*

The language you've learnt

Table 1

Present tense of ждать and идти (1st conj.)

ждать	идти
я жду	я иду
ты ждёшь	ты идёшь
он ждёт	он идёт
она ждёт	она идёт
мы ждём	мы идём
вы ждёте	вы идёте
они ждут	они идут

Table 2

Present tense of мочь (1st conj.)

мочь	
я могу́	мы мо́жем
ты мо́жешь	вы мо́жете
он мо́жет	они мо́гут
она мо́жет	

Table 3

Present tense of любить (2nd conj.)

люби́ть	
я люблю́	мы лю́бим
ты люби́шь	вы любите́
он лю́бит	они лю́бят
она лю́бит	

Note especially the ending after **я**: **люблю**. All 2nd conjugation verbs with stems ending in **-б, -п, -в, -ф, -м** have the letter **л** inserted before the ending **-ю** in the 1st pers. singular.

Table 4

Present tense of видеть* (2nd conj.)

видеть	
я вижу	мы видим
ты видишь	вы видите
он видит	они видят
она видит	

*And other 2nd conj. verbs with stems ending in **-д** or **-з**. Note especially the change to **-ж** in the 1st pers. singular.

5 Table 5
Nominative, accusative* and genitive of normal adjectives

	masculine	neuter	feminine
Nom.	иностранный турист Ленинский проспект	иностранное место	иностранная студентка Ленинская улица
Acc.	иностранного туриста Ленинский проспект	иностранное место	иностранную студентку Ленинскую улицу
Gen.	иностранного туриста Ленинского проспекта	иностранного места	иностранной студентки Ленинской улицы

*Note masculine accusative with animate and inanimate nouns.

Table 6
Nominative, accusative* and genitive of soft adjectives

	masculine	neuter	feminine
Nom.	сегодняшний	сегодняшнее	сегодняшняя
Acc.	сегодняшний сегодняшнего	сегодняшнее	сегодняшнюю
Gen.	сегодняшнего	сегодняшнего	сегодняшней

*See footnote to Table 5 above.

Обед в ресторане Dinner in a restaurant

What happens

After walking around Moscow all afternoon, Volodya and Vika suddenly realize they are hungry and decide to dine in a restaurant. They sit at a small table in the corner and the waiter brings the menu. They order a typical Russian dinner of hors d'œuvre, followed by soup as a 'first' course, then beef-Stroganov and Kiev cutlets as a 'second' course. They finish their meal with ice cream and stewed fruit. Volodya asks for the bill, pays, and they leave.

In Part 3 there are three short conversations which might be overheard in a Russian restaurant: in the first, Aleksandr is asking for his bill; in the second, Vasily asks Leonid whether the *solyanka* (a type of soup) is good in a particular restaurant; and in the third, Pavel asks Sasha what he would like to drink.

New words in this lesson

бефстроганов beef-Stroganov
борщ borshch (beetroot soup)
брать (*imp.*) to take
бульон bouillon, clear soup
бутылка bottle
взять (*p.*) to take
вино wine
вкусный good, tasty, delicious
вода water
водка vodka
входить (*imp.*) to go in, enter
его it, him
заказ order
заказать (*p.*) to order
заказывать (*imp.*) to order
закуска hors d'œuvre
занять (*p.*) to occupy
икра caviar
компот stewed fruit
коньяк cognac
котлета cutlet
красный red
меню menu

минеральный mineral (*adj.*)
молчать (*imp.*) to be silent
мороженое ice-cream
мясной meat (*adj.*)
мясо meat
обед lunch, dinner
обедать (*imp.*) to have lunch, dinner;
to dine
официант waiter
пиво beer
пить (*imp.*) to drink
платить (*imp.*) to pay
пока for the moment
по-киевски à la Kiev, Kiev-style
пора it's time to, it's time for
порция portion
правильно that's right
принести (*p.*) to bring
приносить (*imp.*) to bring
просить (*imp.*) to ask for
раз time, occasion
ресторан restaurant
рыбный fish (*adj.*)

- 6** садиться (*imp.*) to sit down
салат salad
сидеть (*imp.*) to sit, be sitting
солянка solyanka (type of soup)
столик small table
сухой dry
счёт bill
тот, то, та that
уходить (*imp.*) to leave, go out
фруктовый fruit (*adj.*)
хотеть (*imp.*) to want
шестой sixth

- шесть six
щи shchi (cabbage soup)
на закуску for hors d'œuvre, as a starter
на первое/второе/третье for the first/second/third course
пошли! let's go!
раз два-три two or three times
что ещё? what else?
я хочу есть I'm hungry

Notes

PART 1

- 1 **Обед в ресторане.** Обед is the main meal of the day for Russians, and may be eaten at any time between midday and nine o'clock in the evening. It can therefore be translated into English as *lunch* or *dinner*.
- 2 **Володя и Вика входят в ресторан.** Volodya and Vika go into a restaurant.
входят Part of **входить**: to go in, enter. This verb conjugates like **видеть**. See L5, T4.
- 3 **Вот столик в углу.** There's a table in the corner.
столик This is a diminutive of **стол**, and means a *small table*.
- 4 **Вика и Володя садятся.** Vika and Volodya sit down.
сажаются Part of **садиться**: to sit down. Also like **видеть** (L5, T4).
- 5 **Официант приносит меню.** The waiter brings the menu.
приносит Part of **приносить**: to bring. See Table 1.
- 6 **Володя делает заказ.** Volodya orders. (. . . does the order.)
- 7 **На закуску он просит принести икру и салат, на первое—борщ.** For hors d'œuvre he orders caviare and salad, and for first course—borshch. (. . . he asks to bring . . .)
a **На закуску** For hors d'œuvre, as a starter The word **закуска** means a *snack* or an *hors d'œuvre*, with which Russians often like to start a meal. It is usual to have **закуски** (pl.) with vodka.
b **просит** Part of **просить**: to ask, in the sense of *request*, whereas **спрашивать** and **спросить** mean *to ask a question*. It conjugates like **приносить** (T1).
c **принести** to bring Perfective infinitive of **приносить** (N5).

- 6**
- d **на первое** for *first course* Another phrase to learn with the preposition **на**, like **на закуску** (N7a).
 - e **борщ** borshch This is a thick soup made basically from beetroot but with many other ingredients added, which vary from region to region.
 - 8 **На второе Володя берёт бефстроганов, а Вика—котлету по-киевски.** For second course Volodya has beef-Stroganov, and Vika has a cutlet à la Kiev.
a **на второе** for *second course* See N7d.
b **берёт** From **брать**: to take See Table 2.
c **бефстроганов** This is an internationally famous dish, originally made in Russia from beef steak, onions and sour cream.
d **котлету по-киевски** Accusative of **котлета по-киевски**—a tasty chicken dish.
 - 9 **Володя и Вика любят обедать в ресторане.** Volodya and Vika like to dine in a restaurant.
обедать You've already met the verb **завтракать**: to have breakfast. This is the verb from **обед** and means *to dine, to have dinner* (or *lunch*—see N1.)
 - 10 **Сейчас они сидят, молчат и ждут официанта.** Now they sit in silence, waiting for the waiter. (Now they sit, are silent and wait . . .)
a **сидят** sit, are sitting From **сидеть**. Again like **видеть** (L5, T4). Do not confuse this verb with **садиться** in N4 which means *to sit down*.
b **молчат** From **молчать**: to be silent. This is a 2nd conjugation verb, with a similar conjugation to the verbs in L3, T5, except for the endings after **я** and **они**:
я молчу i.e. *y* instead of *ю*,
они молчат i.e. *a* instead of *я*.
These endings are always found on 2nd conjugation verbs with stems ending in **-ч, -ж, -ш, -щ**. **Молчать** is conjugated in Table 3.
 - 11 **Официант приносит закуску и борщ.** The waiter brings the hors d'œuvre and the borshch.
 - 12 **Володя очень любит борщ.** Volodya likes borshch very much. Note where **очень** comes in this sentence.
 - 13 **Потом официант приносит второе.** Then the waiter brings the second course.
 - 14 **Вика говорит, что котлета по-киевски очень вкусная.** Vika says that the cutlet à la Kiev is very tasty.

- 6 15** А что на третье? *And what for third course?*
- 16** Володя заказывает мороженое, а Вика—компот. *Volodya orders ice-cream, and Vika—stewed fruit.*
 а заказывает From заказывать: to order.
 б компот This is from the French word *compote*.
- 17** Обед был вкусный. *It was a good dinner. (Dinner was delicious.)*
- 18** Володя просит счёт, платит, и они уходят. *Volodya asks for the bill, pays, and they leave.*
 а просит счёт *asks for the bill* This verb takes an object in the accusative, so *for* is not needed in Russian.
 б платит From платить, see Table 1. 2nd conjugation verbs with stems ending in -т take -ч after я: я плачу.
 с уходят From уходить: to leave, go out, which conjugates like входить (N2).

PART 2

- 19** Знаешь, я хочу есть. *You know, I'm hungry. (. . . I want to eat.)*
 Я хочу есть means *I want to eat* and is a colloquial expression corresponding to *I'm hungry* in English. See L8, N3a and Table 2.
- 20** И я тоже. *So am I. (And I too.)*
- 21** Пора обедать. *It's time for dinner. (It's time to have dinner.)*
 Пора plus a verb in the infinitive means *it's time to . . .*
- 22** Видишь вон там большой ресторан? *See that big restaurant over there? (See over there big restaurant?)*
- 23** Вижу. Я знаю этот ресторан. *I see it. I know that restaurant.*
- 24** Я была там раза два-три. *I've been there two or three times. (I was there . . .)*
 раза два-три. Раз means *time, occasion* and два раза would mean *twice*, and три раза: *three times*. The inversion of the order makes it more vague, thus раза два: *about twice*, and раза два-три: *two or three times*. See also L4, N48.
- 25** Это хороший ресторан? *Is it a good restaurant?*
- 26** Да, я его люблю. *Yes, I like it.*
 его means *it*, when it is the object of a verb. (Он, оно, она are in the nominative, and are always the subject of a verb.) Его also means *him*.
- 27** Прекрасно. Пошли! *Splendid. Let's go! Пошли!* is a very colloquial expression meaning *Let's go!*

- 28** Можем мы занять тот столик? *May we sit at that table? (May we occupy that table?)*
 занять: to occupy, from which the short adjective занят, -о, -а is derived.
- 29** Он не занят? *It isn't taken?*
- 30** Пожалуйста. Столик свободен. *Please [sit there]. The table's free.*
- 31** Что мы будем пить? *What shall we drink?*
 мы будем *we shall* This is the future tense of the verb *to be*, and is used to form the future of an imperfective verb with its infinitive. See Table 5.
 а For the conjugation of пить see the verb list in Appendix 4 (p. 232).
- 32** Я не очень люблю коньяк. *I don't like cognac very much.*
 Again note the position of *очень*.
- 33** А какое вино ты любишь? *And what kind of wine do you like?*
- 34** Я люблю сухое. *I like dry wine.* No need to repeat *wine* in Russian.
- 35** А что взять на закуску? Есть салат, рыба, красная и чёрная икра . . . *And what shall we have for hors d'oeuvre? There's salad, fish, red and black caviare . . . (And what to take . . .)*
 взять Perfective infinitive of *to take*. Брать (N8b) is the imperfective. Note this use of the infinitive in colloquial speech again. (See also L5, N22.)
- 36** А что у них есть на первое? *And what have they got for first course?*
 у них есть *they have* Них is the genitive of они after a preposition which requires the genitive.
- 37** Солянка мясная или рыбная, борщ, щи, бульон. *Meat or fish solyanka, borshch, shchi, bouillon.*
 а солянка *Solyanka* is a salty soup, for which there are many different recipes.
 б щи *Shchi* is cabbage soup, a famous Russian dish.
 с бульон *Bouillon* is a clear soup, usually served with a meat pasty.
- 38** Пожалуйста, бутылку сухого вина. *A bottle of dry wine, please.*
 This is short for *Please bring us a bottle . . .*, so бутылку is in the accusative.
- 39** Потом—красной икры . . . *Then, some red caviare . . .* Красной икры is in the genitive and this is an example of what is known as the 'partitive genitive', used to express *some (of)*.
- 40** Одну порцию? *One portion?*

- 6 41 **Какой салат? Мясной или рыбный?** *What kind of salad? Meat or fish?* Salad to a Russian conjures up quite a different picture from the usual English or French salad. It is closer to what we call *hors d'œuvres*: a variety of cold meat and fish, often with cold vegetables in mayonnaise—what in English is known as Russian salad.
- 42 **Что ещё?** *What else?*
- 43 **Воду не забыли?** *Haven't you forgotten the water?* You will see from the waiter's next question that he doesn't mean ordinary water. It is usual in Russia to drink bottled mineral water or fizzy fruit drinks with a meal.
- 44 **Фруктовую или минеральную?** *Fruit-flavoured or mineral?* See note above.
- 45 **Две бутылки минеральной, пожалуйста.** *Two bottles of mineral, please.* (Note that **вода** is not repeated in this sentence or the one above.)
- 46 **Всё?** *Is that all? (All?)*
- 47 **Пока всё. Спасибо.** *That's all for the moment. Thank you.* (For the moment all.)

PART 3

- 48 **А что у вас было?** *And what did you have?* У вас было is the past of у вас есть: you have. Было is neuter to agree with что.
- 49 **Что вы заказали на первое?** *What did you order for first course?*
- 50 **А она здесь вкусная?** *Is it good here? (Is it here tasty?)*
- 51 **Я раза три обедал здесь и знаю, что солянка здесь очень вкусная.** *I've had dinner here about three times and I know that the solyanka here is very good.* Note order.
- 52 **Да, правильно.** *Yes, that's fine. (Yes, right.)*

The language you've learnt

Table 1

Present tense of 2nd conjugation verbs with stems ending in -с or -т.

приносить	платить
я принош ^у	я плач ^у
ты приносишь	ты платишь
он приносит	он платит
она приносит	она платит
мы принесим	мы платим
вы принесите	вы платите
они принесят	они платят

Note that both these verbs change the final consonant of their stem in the 1st pers. singular. Stems ending in **с** change to **ш**, and those ending in **т** change to **ч**. Note also the shift of stress.

Table 2

Present tense of брать (1st conj.)

брать	
я беру	мы берём
ты берёшь	вы берёте
он берёт	они берут
она берёт	

Table 3

Present tense of молчать* (2nd conj.)

молчать	
я молчу	мы молчим
ты молчишь	вы молчите
он молчит	они молчат
она молчит	

*and all 2nd conj. verbs with stems ending in -ч, -ж, -ш, -щ.

Table 4

Past tense of быть and забыть

	я, ты, он	оно	я, ты, она	мы, вы, они
быть	был	было	была	были
забыть	забыл	забыло	забыла	забыли

6 Table 5 Future tense of быть

я буду	мы будем
ты будешь	вы будете
он она	они будут

Table 6*
У кого есть ... ? (Who has ... ?)

Nominative	Genitive
он	у него есть
она	у неё есть
они	у них есть

*See also Table 6, Lesson 4

Урок семь Lesson seven Седьмой урок Seventh lesson

Володя и Вика едут на метро Volodya and Vika go by tube

What happens

It's time for Vika to go home and they decide to go by tube. They walk to the tube station and Volodya changes a ruble to get the five-kopek pieces necessary to enter the Moscow Underground through the automatic barriers. They go down the escalator and on to the left-hand platform. They have to change once on their journey: they travel on a train going towards Preobrazhenskaya Square until the stop named after the Recreation Park, and change on to the circle line. They get out at Oktyabrskaya station.

While they are in the train Vika sees an elderly man standing and suggests that Volodya give up his seat to him. A passenger then asks Vika if she knows the way to the Exhibition (the short name for the permanent Exhibition of Economic Achievements on the outskirts of Moscow). She tells him to change at Prospect Mira station. The passenger then asks her to explain this to a young foreigner.

In Part 3 there are four dialogues: in the first, Stepan asks Aleksei how to get to the Exhibition; in the second, Sergei asks Anna how to get to Dzerzhinsky Square; in the third, Irina asks which bus goes to Komsomolskaya Square; and in the fourth, Katerina asks Konstantin if he's got change for three rubles.

New words in this lesson

автобус bus
близко near
вагон carriage
вставить (imp.) to get up
выставка exhibition
выходить (imp.) to go out
до to, up to
ездить (imp.) to go (by transport)
кольцевая линия circle line
левый left
мелочь (f.) small change
мир peace
мужчина (m.) man
налево to the left, on the left

направо to the right, on the right
объяснить (p.) to explain
пассажир passenger
пересадка change
(on the Underground)
пешком on foot
платформа platform
площадь Дзержинского
Dzerzhinsky Square
поезд train
пожилой elderly
правый right
Преображенская площадь
Preobrazhenskaya Square

проехать (p.) to get to
 проспект Мира Prospect Mira
 (Peace Prospect)
 прохожий passer-by
 прямо straight ahead
 пятак five-kopek piece
 разменять (p.) to change
 рубль (m.) ruble
 сдача the change
 седьмой seventh
 семь seven

следующий next
 совсем quite, absolutely
 старый old
 уступить (p.) to give up
 ходить (imp.) to go (on foot)
 эскалатор escalator
 этот, это, эта this

три-четыре минуты ходьбы three or
 four minutes' walk

Notes

PART 1

- 1 **Володя и Вика едут на метро.** *Volodya and Vika go by tube. (. . . go on the tube.)*
- a **едут** Part of the verb **ехать**: *to go, travel* by some means of transport. See Table 1.
- b **на метро** *on the tube* **Метро** is a foreign word and does not decline.
- 2 **Вике пора ехать домой.** *It's time for Vika to go home.*
Вике *for Vika* In Russian *to* and *for* a person is often expressed by the DATIVE CASE (and no preposition). Feminine nouns usually end in *-e* in the dative.
- 3 **Она любит ездить на метро.** *She likes travelling by tube. (. . . to travel on the tube.)*

ездить This is another verb meaning *to go, travel* by some means of transport.

VERBS 'TO GO'

You already know that most verbs have two forms: imperfective and perfective (L3, 17a). A few verbs, including those meaning 'to go', have three forms: two imperfective and one perfective. The difference between the two imperfective forms is that one is *indefinite* and the other is *definite*. The indefinite form expresses repeated, habitual action or 'going' when it is being discussed in a general way; the definite form expresses actually 'going' on a particular occasion. This will become clearer as you see examples of its use.

Look again at the two sentences at the beginning of this lesson:

Вике пора ехать домой, and **Она любит ездить на метро**.
 In the first sentence the definite form, **ехать**, is used because on this particular occasion it's time for Vika to go home, and she is actually going to travel on the tube. In the second sentence the indefinite form, **ездить**, is used because it is a general statement, and a habitual action.

- 4 **Володя и Вика идут на станцию метро.** *Volodya and Vika go to the tube station.*
Идти is the definite form of *to walk, go on foot*. The indefinite form is **ходить**.
- 5 **Сначала они идут прямо, а потом направо.** *At first they go straight on, then [they go] to the right.* Note that **идут** is not repeated in Russian.
- 6 **У Володи нет мелочи.** *Volodya hasn't any change.*
- 7 **Он должен разменять рубль.** *He has to change a ruble.*
- 8 **Володя и Вика едут на эскалаторе, а потом идут на левую платформу.** *Volodya and Vika go down the escalator, and then go on to the left-hand platform. (. . . travel on the escalator . . .)*
- 9 **Оттуда поезд идёт до станции «Преображенская площадь».** *The train to Preobrazhenskaya Square station goes from there.* Note the complete reversal of this word order in Russian.
 - a **идёт** Note that *going* of trains, buses, etc., is expressed by the verbs **идти** and **ходить** (see N4 and N3).
 - b **до to, as far as** This preposition is always followed by the genitive.
 - c **станции** Genitive of **станция**.
- 10 **На следующей станции входит пожилой мужчина.** *At the next station an elderly man gets in.* Note order.
следующей This is the locative feminine from the adjective **следующий**. Although it looks like a soft adjective in these two parts, it is not entirely soft, but mixed. Mixed adjectives have the same endings as soft adjectives in all cases except for the feminine nominative and accusative. **Хороший** is another mixed adjective, see Table 7.
- 11 **Володя встаёт и предлагает ему место.** *Volodya gets up and offers him a seat.*
 - a **встаёт** From **вставать**—see Table 2.
 - b **ему** This is the dative of **он**. The dative is required after the verb **предлагать**. This sentence really means *Volodya offers a seat to him*.
 - c **место** You've met **место** meaning *place*. It also means *seat* in a bus, train, theatre, etc.
- 12 **Здесь пересадка на кольцевую линию.** *Here they change on to the circle line. (Here a change . . .)*
кольцевую линию Note that *the circle line*: **кольцевая линия** is in the accusative here as a change on to it involves motion. When

- 7** на can be translated as *on to*, it always demands the accusative.
- 13** Володя и Вика делают пересадку. *Volodya and Vika change trains. (. . . make a change.)*
- 14** Потом они едут до станции «Октябрьская» и там выходят. *Then they go to Oktyabrskaya station and get out.*
выходят From **выходить**: *to get out*, particularly used for getting out of trains, buses, etc.

PART 2

- 15** Володя, уже поздно. Мне пора ехать домой. *Volodya, it's late. It's time for me to go home. (. . . it's already late.)*
a уже Russian has a tendency to put **уже** (*already*) where it would not necessarily be required in English.
b Мне is the dative of **я**, and means *to me* or *for me*.
- 16** А как мы можем ехать? *But how can we go?* The precise meaning of Volodya's sentence would be completely obvious to a Russian, because of his use of the verb **ехать**. He is saying *What means of transport can we use?*
- 17** На автобусе или на метро. *By bus or tube. (On the bus or on the tube.)*
- 18** А метро далеко отсюда? *And is the tube far from here?*
- 19** Нет, совсем близко. *No, quite near.*
Совсем means *quite* in the sense of *completely, absolutely*. In Lesson 4 you learnt that **совсем не** means *not at all*. **Совсем близко** could also be translated as *not at all far*.
- 20** Три-четыре минуты ходьбы. *Three or four minutes' walk. (Three-four minutes of walking.)*
- 21** Прости, у тебя есть пятак? *Excuse me, have you got a five-kopek piece?*
Пятак is the common name for a five-kopek coin. One enters the Moscow Underground by inserting a five-kopek piece in the automatic barrier, and can then travel any distance for that price. Change can always be obtained at the entrance.
- 22** Нет, у меня нет мелочи. *No, I haven't got any change.*
- 23** Тогда я сейчас разменяю рубль. Одну минуту . . . *Then I'll just change a ruble. One minute . . .* Note that **сейчас** translates better here as *just*.

- 24** Вот четыре пятака и сдача. *Here are four five-kopek pieces and the change.*
Сдача is *the change* you receive when you pay for goods in a shop, or in the situation described here, whereas **мелочь** means *small change*.
- 25** Один пятак—тебе, другой—мне. *One five-kopek piece for you, the other for me.*
тебе Dative of **ты**.
- 26** Как мы едем? *How do we go?* Here Volodya means *Which way do we go?*
- 27** Потом ещё одна остановка. *Then one more stop. (Then still one stop.)*
- 28** Оттуда идём пешком. *From there we can walk. (From there go on foot.)*
пешком You've already learnt that **идти** means *to go* when a person is on foot. **Пешком** reinforces the fact that the person is *on foot*, or *walking* when this is the point being emphasized.
- 29** Володя, я думаю, что ты должен уступить место этому старому человеку. *Volodya, I think you should give up your seat to that old man.* Note that although we sometimes omit *that* in a sentence such as this in English, **что** must never be omitted in Russian.
этому старому человеку This is all in the dative: **этому** is the dative of the masculine **этот**: *this* or *that*; **старому** has the usual dative ending, **-ому**, of masculine and neuter adjectives; **человеку** has the usual **-y** ending for masculine and neuter nouns in the dative. See Tables 3, 5 and 6.
- 30** Вы знаете, как проехать на выставку? *Do you know how to get to the Exhibition?*
проехать You met **пройти** in Lesson 5, meaning *to get to, on foot*. **Проехать** means *to get to, by some means of transport*, so it is obvious from the question that the passenger is asking how to get there on the tube.
- 31** До станции «Проспект Мира», а там—пересадка. *As far as Prospect Mira station, and change there.* Note order.
Проспект Мира. **Мир** is the word for *peace*, so this means *Peace Prospect*.
- 32** Вы можете объяснить это вон тому иностранцу? *Could you explain that to the foreigner over there?*

- 7 a **вон тому иностранцу** *to that foreigner over there* You know **вон** from **вон там**: *over there*. Note this further colloquial use of **вон**, and its position in the sentence.
- b **Тому** is dative of **тот**: *that*, which declines, for the most part, like **этот**.
- c **иностранцу** Dative of **иностранец**. Note that in the dative, as in the genitive, the e is dropped.

33 **Тому, молодому?** *That young one?* Note that **иностранец** is not repeated in this sentence.

34 **Конечно, могу.** *Of course, I can.* or *Certainly.* Note that **я** is omitted here.

PART 3

35 **Сначала едете до станции «Проспект Мира», а там—пересадка.** *Go first to 'Prospect Mira' station, and then change.*

36 NOTE ON DIALOGUE 2 Note especially the use of the verbs **проехать** and **пройти** in this dialogue. To make sense of this in English we have to add words like *walking* or *on foot*, and *by some means of transport*. See if you can understand this dialogue by yourself, now that you've had this hint.

37 **Простите, какой автобус идёт до Комсомольской площади?** *Excuse me, which bus goes to Komsomol Square?*

Первый. *Number one.* Note that **первый** in answer to the question **какой автобус?** means *a number one bus*.

- a **Комсомольской** Most feminine adjectives end in **-ой** in the genitive (as well as in the dative and locative). Soft and mixed adjectives end in **-ей**. See Tables 6 and 7.
- b **площади** Genitive of **площадь**.

The language you've learnt

Table 1

Present tense of **ехать** (1st conj.)

ехать	
я еду	мы едем
ты едешь	вы едете
он едет	они едут
она едет	они едут

Table 2

Present tense of **вставать** (1st conj.)

вставать	
я встаю	мы встаём
ты встаёшь	вы встаёте
он встаёт	они встают
она встаёт	они встают

Table 3

Dative of masculine and neuter nouns

	masculine			neuter		
Nom.	стол	иностранец	чай	окно	настроение	время
Dat.	столу	иностранцу	чаю	окну	настроению	времени

Table 4

Dative of feminine nouns*

Nom.	Вика	станция	площадь	папа	Володя
Dat.	Вике	станции	площади	папе	Володе

*and nouns which are masculine, but look feminine.

7 Table 5
Dative of этот (and to)

	masculine	neuter	feminine
Nom.	этот	это	эта
Dat.	этому (тому)		этой

Table 6
Dative of normal adjectives

	masculine	neuter	feminine
Nom.	старый	старое	старая
Dat.	старому		старой

Table 7
Mixed adjectives (i.e. with stems ending in ж, ч, ш and щ, and with unstressed endings.)

	masculine	neuter	feminine
Nom.	хороший	хорошее	хорошая
Acc.	as Nom. or Gen.	хорошее	хорошую
Gen.	хорошего		хорошей
Dat.	хорошему		хорошей
Loc.	хорошем		хорошей

NOTE: Dative endings of soft adjectives are also -ему, -ей.

Table 8
Dative of personal pronouns

Nominative	Dative
я	мне
ты	тебе
он	ему
она	ей
мы	нам
вы	вам
они	им

Володя с Викой в Volodya and Vika at the
Большом театре Bolshoi Theatre

What happens

Vika and Volodya are interested in the Arts: theatre, music and painting. Today they are going to the Bolshoi Theatre, to see 'Swan Lake'. They sit in the second row of the stalls. The famous Russian ballerina, Maya Plisetskaya, is dancing the role of Odette.

After the first act they go into the foyer to meet Volodya's colleague, Kirill, and his wife, Natasha. They talk about their interest in the Arts, and about where they are sitting.

On the way home Volodya asks Vika if she has enjoyed herself—of course she has!

In Part 3 there are two dialogues: in the first Vladimir asks Nikolai if he's been to the Vakhtangov Theatre; in the second, Lara asks Kolya if he would like to meet her mother.

New words in this lesson

антракт interval
балерина ballerina
балет ballet
бельэтаж dress circle
Большой театр the Bolshoi Theatre
весь, всё, вся; pl. все all
вообще generally
восемь eight
восьмой eighth
все everyone
действие act
доволен, довольно, -на pleased
её her, it
жена wife
женщина woman
живопись (f.) art, paintings
зал hall, auditorium
звонок bell
и . . . и . . . both . . . and . . .

интересоваться (1, imp.) to be
interested in
искусство art, the Arts
исполнять (1, imp.) to perform,
play (a rôle)
классический classical
конец end
Лебединое озеро Swan Lake
ложа box
Майя Плисетская Maya Plisetskaya
милый nice, charming
музыка music
Одетта Odette
один alone
партер stalls
познакомиться (2, p.) to get to know,
make the acquaintance of
помнить (2, imp.) to remember

- 8** **разговаривать** (*1, imp.*) to discuss, have a conversation
роль (*f.*) rôle
ряд row
с, **со** with
свой See note 8c
слышать (*2, imp.*) to hear
современный modern, contemporary
спектакль (*m.*) show, performance

считать (*1, imp.*) to consider to be
театр theatre
театр имени Вахтангова Vakhtangov Theatre
товарищ colleague
фойе (*n. indec.*) foyer
ярус tier, circle

исполнять роль to take the rôle, play the part

Notes

PART 1

- 1** **Володя с Викой в Большом театре.** *Volodya and Vika at the Bolshoi Theatre. (Volodya with Vika . . .)*
a **Володя с Викой** *Volodya with Vika* It is common in Russian, when someone is accompanying someone else, to use the preposition **с**: *with*, followed by the INSTRUMENTAL CASE. **Викой** is in the instrumental, and **-ой** is the most common instrumental ending for feminine nouns.
b **в Большом театре** You will now see that the 'Bolshoi' Theatre is really the 'big', or 'great' theatre. The adjective **большой** must always agree with the case of **театр**, even though it is the name of the theatre.
2 **Вика и Володя интересуются искусством: театром, музыкой, живописью.** *Vika and Volodya are interested in the Arts: theatre, music, painting.*
a **интересуются** From **интересоваться**: *to be interested in, to be keen on*. This verb has similar endings to **чувствовать** (L3, T3), except that it is reflexive. See Table 1. No preposition is needed with it, but it demands the instrumental case.
b **искусством, театром, музыкой, живописью** All these nouns are in the instrumental: **-ом** is the most common masculine and neuter instrumental ending. Feminine nouns ending in **-ь** take **-ю** in the instrumental. See Tables 3 and 4.
3 **Сегодня они хотят пойти в Большой театр на «Лебединое озеро».** *Today they want to go to the Bolshoi theatre to 'Swan Lake'.*
a **они хотят** From **хотеть**, which is one of the very few Russian verbs which do not truly belong to either the 1st or 2nd conjugation, and are therefore called 'irregular'. See Table 2.
b **на** Note that **на** is used to express going *to* a play, ballet, or concert. Going *to* the theatre or cinema, however, is expressed by **в**: **ходить в театр, в кино**.

- 4** **Вот Вика и Володя в театре. Они сидят в партере, во втором ряду.** *Here are Vika and Volodya in the theatre. They are sitting in the stalls, in the second row.*
Ряд is another masculine noun which has a stressed **-y** ending in the locative.

- 5** **«Кто сегодня исполняет роль Одетты?»—спрашивает Володя.** *'Who's dancing the role of Odette today?' asks Volodya.*
6 **«Майя Плисецкая»,—говорит Вика.—«Все считают её очень хорошей балериной».** *'Maya Plisetskaya', says Vika. 'Everyone considers her a very good ballerina'.*
a **все** *all, here everyone* This is the plural of *all*: **весь, всё, вся**.
b **считают** From **считать**: *to consider*, which conjugates like **читать** (1st conj.)
c **её** *her or it* (when it refers to a feminine noun), as the object of a verb.
d **считают её хорошей балериной** After the verb **считать** the object is in the accusative, and any nouns or adjectives describing how the object is considered (here—*a good ballerina*) are in the instrumental. Here is another example: **Все считают Володю хорошим инженером:** *Everyone considers Volodya a good engineer.*
e **хорошей. -ей** is the instrumental feminine ending for soft and mixed adjectives. The normal feminine instrumental ending is **-ой**. See Table 6.
7 **... Конец первого действия. Антракт. Вика с Володей идут в фойе.** *The end of the first act. The interval. Vika and Volodya go into the foyer.*
8 **Там Володя хочет встретиться со своим товарищем.** *There Volodya wants to meet his colleague.*
a **встретиться с (со)** *to meet* The Russian is literally *to meet with*, and is followed by the instrumental.
b **со** is simply a variant of **с** used before some words beginning with two consonants.
c **своим**
NOTE ON СВОЙ. **Своим** is the masculine instrumental of **свой**, which here means *his*. This is a possessive adjective, with the meaning of *one's own*, which can mean *my, your, her, his, our* and *their*, according to the subject of the sentence. e.g.
Я встретился со своим товарищем: *my*
Ты встретился со своим товарищем: *your*
Свой must always be used when the subject is in the 3rd person (he, she, they) for *his, her, their*, when these words refer to the

subject. Compare these two sentences:

он встретился со своей мамой means *he met his mother* (i.e. his own mother);

он встретился с его мамой also means *he met his mother* (but somebody else's mother).

Свой declines in the same way as **мой** and **твой**. See Table 5.

- d товарищем** Some masculine and neuter nouns end in **-ем** in the instrumental. See Table 3.
- 9 Он в театре со своей женой.** *He's at the theatre with his wife.* **Своей** is the feminine instrumental of **свой**. This is another example of its use (explained in N8c).
- 10 Вика тоже хочет познакомиться с ними.** *Vika would also like to make their acquaintance. (Vika also wants to become acquainted with them.)*
- a познакомиться с** *to become acquainted with* Another verb always followed by **с** and the instrumental.
- b с ними.** **Ними** is the instrumental of **они** after a preposition.
- 11 Они разговаривают о спектакле.** *They discuss the performance. (They converse about the show.)*
- 12 Звонок. Пора идти в зал.** *The bell rings. It's time to go back into the auditorium. (A bell. Time to go into the auditorium.)*

PART 2

- 13 Володя, ты не забыл, что мы с тобой сегодня идём на 'Лебединое озеро'.** *Volodya, you haven't forgotten that we're going to 'Swan Lake' today?* Note order.
- мы с тобой** This is best learnt as a phrase. It means *you and I, or we*.
- 14 Нет, я помню. Я очень хочу пойти.** *No, I remember. I very much want to go.*
- помню** From **помнить**—a regular 2nd conjugation verb (L3, T5).

GENERAL NOTE ON VERBS

From now on verbs will be marked (1) or (2) in the list of new words in each lesson, to denote 1st or 2nd conjugation. Regular verbs will not be explained in the notes. Any irregularities will still be mentioned.

- 15 Хочешь пойти в театр или хочешь пойти со мной?** *Do you want to go to the theatre or do you want to go with me?*
- со мной.** **Мной** is the instrumental of **я**.

- 16 Хочу пойти с тобой в театр.** *I want to go with you to the theatre.* **с тобой.** **Тобой** is the instrumental of **ты**.
- 17 Я хочу встретиться с моим старым товарищем.** *I want to meet my old colleague.*
- a моим** Masculine and neuter instrumental of **мой** and **моё**.
- b старым.** **-ым** is the normal masculine and neuter instrumental ending for adjectives. Soft, mixed, and normal adjectives with stems ending in **г**, **к**, and **х**, take **-им**. See Table 6.
- 18 А где ты должен с ним встретиться?** *And where are you supposed to be meeting him?*
- с ним.** **Ним** is the instrumental of **он** after a preposition.
- 19 В фойе. Хочешь с ним встретиться?** *In the foyer. Would you like to meet him?*
- 20 Хочу. А он здесь один?** *Yes, I would. But is he here alone?*
- один** This is another meaning of **один**: *alone, on his own*. It must still agree with the noun, e.g. **она здесь одна**: *she's here on her own*.
- 21 Хочешь познакомиться с моей женой?** *Would you like to meet my wife?*
- Моей** is the instrumental of **моя**.
- 22 Очень рад с вами познакомиться.** *Very pleased to meet you. (Very pleased to make your acquaintance.)*
- 23 Вы любите балет?** *Do you like ballet?*
- 24 Да, люблю. Я вообще очень интересуюсь театром.** *Yes, I do. I'm very interested in the theatre generally.*
- a вообще** *generally, in general* Note where it comes in this sentence.
- b театр** *the theatre* In a wider sense than we usually use the word in English. In Russian it covers not only plays, but ballet and opera as well. **Спектакль**: *show* also has this wide application in Russian.
- 25 А ещё чем вы интересуетесь?** *And what else are you interested in?*
- ещё чем . . . ?** *in what else . . . ?* **Чем** is the instrumental of **что**.
- 26 Чем я ещё интересуюсь? Живописью . . .** *What else am I interested in? Painting . . .*
- 27 Современной или классической?** *Contemporary or classical?*
- Both these adjectives are in the instrumental to agree with **живописью**, which is not repeated here.
- 28 А мы сидим в ложе. В бельэтаже? Нет, во втором ярусе.** *And we're sitting in a box. In the dress circle? No, in the upper circle.*

It is not easy to give exact translations of the different parts of the theatre. Most old Russian theatres, such as the Bolshoi, are constructed in a different way from an English theatre. They consist of several tiers of boxes, going up in a horse-shoe facing the stage from the stalls almost to the ceiling. The word **ярус** means *tier*.

29 **Так далеко?** *So far away?*

Это далеко, но мы всё хорошо видим и слышим. *It is far away, but we see and hear everything well.* Note order.

30 **Ну, ты довольна сегодняшним днём?** *Well, have you enjoyed your day today? (Are you pleased with today's day?)*

а довольна Feminine of the short adjective **доволен**: *pleased, content with*. It demands the instrumental (but without a preposition).

б сегодняшним днём This is the instrumental of **сегодняшний день**. Note the unusual instrumental ending of **день**.

31 **Всем доволен, и спектаклем и встречей с Кириллом.** *I'm pleased with everything, the show and the meeting with Kirill.*

а Всем is the instrumental of **всё**.

б и . . . и . . . can often be translated as *both . . . and . . .*

32 **Наташа—очень милая женщина. Я рада, что я с ней познакомилась.** *Natasha is a very nice woman. I'm glad I made her acquaintance.*

с ней with her **Ней** is the instrumental of **она** after a preposition.

PART 3

33 **Вы были в театре имени Вахтангова?** *Have you been to the Vakhtangov Theatre?* This is one of Moscow's best dramatic theatres, named after the prominent experimental theatrical director, Yevgeny Vakhtangov, who died in 1923.

The language you've learnt

Table 1

Present tense of **интересоваться** (1st conj.)

интересоваться	
я интересуюсь	мы интересуемся
ты интересуешься	вы интересуетесь
он интересуется	они интересуются
она	

Table 2

Present tense of **хотеть** (irregular* conj.)

хотеть	
я хочу	мы хотим
ты хочешь	вы хотите
он хочет	они хотят
она	

*Note carefully the change in stress.

Table 3

Instrumental of masculine and neuter nouns

	masculine		neuter		
Nom.	театр	товарищ	чай	искусство	действие
Instr.	театром	товарищем	чаем	искусством	действием

Table 4

Instrumental of feminine nouns*

Nom.	музыка	станция	живопись	Володя
Instr.	музыкой	станцией	живописью	Володей

*and nouns which are masculine, but look feminine.

8 Table 5
свой, мой and твой

	masculine	neuter	feminine
Nom.	свой	своё	своя
Acc.	свой своего	своё	свою
Gen.	своего		своей
Dat.	своему		своей
Instr.	своим		своей
Loc.	своём		своей

Table 6
Instrumental of adjectives

	masculine	neuter	feminine	
Nom.	старый ленинский большой сегодняшний следующий	старое ленинское большое сегодняшнее следующее	старая ленинская большая сегодняшняя следующая	normal soft mixed
Instr.	старым ленинским большим сегодняшним следующим		старой ленинской большой сегодняшней следующей	

Note that all adjectives with stems ending in -г, -ж, -х, -ж, -ч, -ш or -щ, end in -им in the masculine and neuter instrumental.

Table 7
Instrumental of pronouns, and всё

я	мною	(after a preposition)
ты	тобой	
он	им	ним
она	ей	ней
мы	нами	
вы	вами	
они	ими	ними
кто	кем	
что	чем	
всё	всем	

Володя и Вика поехали на дачу Volodya and Vika go to the dacha

What happens

Today Volodya and Vika go out into the country to visit Vika's friend, Irina, and her family in their dacha (a wooden summer cottage). In Part 2 we hear the telephone conversation between Irina and Vika, when Irina learns that Volodya has returned, and extends the invitation to him. In the past Irina had asked Vika to bring him many times, but he had been abroad. Vika asks Volodya if he would like to go, and he agrees. They discuss whether to go by train or car, and eventually decide to go by train. Early next morning they meet at the station. Volodya reads the paper on the way, while Vika just looks out of the train window. They get to their destination, and Volodya is introduced to Irina. She asks them what they did in the train.

In Part 3 there are three dialogues giving you further examples of the use of imperfective and perfective aspects of verbs. In the first, Sergei asks Dimitry if he may take a magazine; in the second, Vasya asks Tolya if he's finished his work; and in the third, Sasha asks Misha what he usually does in the evening.

New words in this lesson

бывать (1, imp.) to be
вместе together
вокзал main-line station
всегда always
давно a long time ago, for a long time
дача dacha (wooden country cottage)
девятый ninth
девять nine
недоволен displeased
долго for a long time
завтра tomorrow
муж husband
наконец in the end, at last
ничего nothing
обязательно absolutely, without fail
ответить (2, p.) to answer
отвечать (1, imp.) to answer
побывать (1, p.) to visit

подруга friend (female)
предложить (2, p.) to offer
пригласить (2, p.) to invite
приглашать (1, imp.) to invite
просто simply
прочитать (1, p.) to read through,
finish reading
рано early
сделать (1, p.) to do
сказать (1, p.) to say
удовольствие pleasure
утром in the morning
часто often

как ты поживаешь? how are you?
смотреть в окно to look out of the window
у неё at hers, at her place

Notes

PART 1

- Володя и Вика поехали на дачу.** (*Volodya and Vika went to the dacha.*)
поехали Past of **поехать**, which is the perfective of the verb *to go* (by some means of transport). Note that although there are two imperfective forms of this verb (**ехать** and **ездить**) there is only one perfective form.
- Вчера Вика предложила Володе поехать на дачу.** *Yesterday Vika suggested to Volodya that they might go to a dacha.*
предложила From **предложить**—perfective of **предлагать** which you met in Lesson 5. Note the construction: this verb is normally followed by the dative of the person to whom the suggestion is being made, and the infinitive.
- Там живёт подруга Вики.** *Vika's friend, Irina, lives there.* Note reverse order of this sentence.
Подруга, being a feminine word, always means a female friend.
- Вика часто бывала у неё.** *Vika often used to go and see her.* (*Vika was often at hers.*)
a **бывала** From the imperfective infinitive **бывать**: *to be*, when repeated 'being' is indicated, as here. Take another example, **вечером я всегда бываю дома**: *I am always at home in the evening.*
b **у неё** at hers (similar to the French *chez elle*, etc.)
- Володя тоже должен побывать там.** *Volodya should have been there too.*
побывать Perfective of **бывать**, often used to express *to be in or to visit* a place.
- Ирина часто спрашивала Вика о Володе и приглашала Вика приехать с ним на дачу.** *Irina often used to ask Vika about Volodya, and would invite Vika to come with him to the dacha.*
спрашивала, приглашала Both these verbs are in the imperfective aspect. This is because they are actions which Irina repeated often. The imperfective aspect sometimes translates well into English as *used to* or *would*.
- Но Вика всегда отвечала, что Володя—за границей и она не может сейчас приехать с ним.** *But Vika would always reply that Volodya was abroad and she couldn't come with him at that time.*
a **отвечала** Imperfective—for the same reason as in N6.

9 b REPORTED SPEECH

Imagine what Vika would actually have said in reply to Irina:

Володя—за границей и я не могу сейчас приехать с ним.

In reported speech Russian sticks closely to what the person would actually have said. Thus, if what was said was in the present tense, the present is retained in the reported speech. This is why the clause of reported speech in this sentence contains the present tense (**может**) and the dash (—) which implies the present tense of the verb *to be*.

- 8 **Володя и Вика долго решали, как ехать на дачу: на поезде или на машине. Наконец, они решили: «на поезде».**

Volodya and Vika were a long time deciding how to go to the dacha: by train or by car. Finally they decided: 'by train'.

IMPERFECTIVE AND PERFECTIVE ASPECTS (CONTD.)

These two sentences give a clear example of the use of imperfective and perfective aspects. In the first sentence the imperfective, **решать** is used to express that they *were deciding*, or *discussing and trying to decide* for a long time without coming to a decision. In the second sentence the perfective, **решить** is used because at last they *came to a decision* and the action was therefore completed.

- 9 **Они встретились рано утром на вокзале.** *They met early in the morning at the station.*

- 10 **В поезде Вика всё время смотрела в окно.** *On the train Vika looked out of the window all the time.* Note order.

А Володя посмотрел в окно только один раз. *But Volodya looked out of the window only once.* Note again the use of aspects in these two sentences. The imperfective is used in the first to express a repeated action, and the perfective is used in the second because the action is done only once.

- 11 **Он всё время читал газету.** *He was reading the paper all the time.*

- 12 **Вот и станция.** *And here's the station.*

станция, вокзал Note the difference between the two words for station: **станция** means a *small country station*, whereas **вокзал** is a *big main-line station* in a city centre. **Станция** is also used for a tube station.

- 13 **«Ты прочитал газету?»—спросила Вика. «Прочитал»,—ответил Володя.** *'Have you finished reading the paper?' asked Vika. 'Yes, I've read it', replied Volodya.*

- a **прочитал. Прочитать**, being a perfective verb *to read*, really means *to finish reading* something. The imperfective **читать** merely describes the action, *to be reading*.

- b **Спросила** and **ответил** are both in the perfective aspect because Vika asked once, and Volodya replied once.

- 14 **А что сделала Вика? Ничего. Она просто смотрела в окно.** *And what had Vika done? Nothing. She had simply been looking out of the window.*

PART 2

- 15 **Это Ирина говорит.** *This is Irina speaking.*

- 16 **Как ты поживаешь?** *How are you? (How are you living, getting on?)* This is another common expression to learn. **А ты как?** in the next line is an abbreviation of this.

- 17 **Знаешь, я хочу пригласить тебя завтра на дачу.** *You know, I'd like to invite you to the dacha tomorrow.* Note that **я хочу**: *I want* can often be translated into English as *I should like*.

- 18 **Да, а ты завтра занята?** *Yes, why, are you busy tomorrow?*

- 19 **Тогда ты обязательно должна приехать с ним вместе.** *Then you absolutely must come with him. (. . . with him together.)*

- a Note that Russian sometimes includes **вместе**: *together* where it would be unnecessary in English.

- b **Должна** is the feminine form of **должен**. The neuter is **должно**.

- 20 **Обязательно, вместе.** *You really must come together.*

обязательно This is sometimes a difficult word to translate. It comes from the adjective **обязательный**: *compulsory, obligatory*. It is common in colloquial speech, e.g. **Ты обязательно приедешь!:** *You really must come*, might be answered by **Обязательно, приеду!:** *I'll come without fail*.

- 21 **Я давно хочу с ним познакомиться.** *I've wanted to meet him for a long time.* Note order.

давно AND **долго**

This is the second word in this lesson meaning *for a long time*.

There is an important difference between them. In the earlier sentence, **В. и В. долго решали**, **долго** was used to express *for a long time* when that time had finished, i.e. they took a long time to decide but eventually came to a decision, so that time was finished. In the sentence here, **я давно хочу с ним познакомиться**, **давно** is used to express a time that has not yet finished (Irina has not yet met Volodya). **Давно** can sometimes be translated as *for a long time now or long since*.

- 9 22 Да, с удовольствием. *Yes, with pleasure.* С удовольствием is another colloquial phrase for you to learn.
- 23 Да, но меня не было в Москве. *Yes, but I wasn't in Moscow.* меня не было в Москве *I wasn't in Moscow* This is a common colloquial construction, using the impersonal не было and the genitive of the person. It is also found in the present tense, using нет, e.g. его нет дома means *he isn't at home*.
- 24 Вот она обычно так и отвечала. *That's just what she usually answered.* Note the word order of this very colloquial sentence.
- 25 Но теперь я рад познакомиться с вами. *But I'm glad to make your acquaintance now.* Note order.
- 26 Вика, что вы делали в поезде? *Vika, what were you doing in the train?* Note that in the dialogue beginning with this sentence, all the verbs are in the imperfective aspect. In reply to Irina's general enquiry, Vika says that Volodya was reading and she was looking out of the window, without specifying for exactly how long, whether Volodya finished what he was reading, etc. She is merely stating the actions in a general way, and so the imperfective is used.

PART 3

- 27 Простите, могу я взять этот журнал? *Excuse me, may I take this magazine?*
- 28 Ты сделал работу? *Have you done the work?* English is close to Russian here: in both languages this question really means *Have you finished the work?* English expresses the same nuances as Russian by use of its many different tenses instead of aspects. Thus, the imperfective ты делал работу? would be expressed in English by *were you doing the work?*
- 29 Но ты должен был работать! *But you should have worked!* or *But you were supposed to work!*
должен был The past tense of должен, должно, -а, is formed by the addition of the past tense of the verb to be (был, -о, -а) with the appropriate ending, e.g. Она должна была работать.
- 30 Да, но приехала подруга жены, и мы смотрели с ней телевизор. *Yes, but my wife's friend came and we watched television with her.* Note order.
- 31 Я решил, что жена недовольна мной. *I decided that my wife wasn't pleased with me.* In Lesson 8 you met the word доволен, followed by the instrumental case. Here you see its opposite,

недоволен, followed by a personal pronoun in the instrumental.

Now that you understand the last line of this dialogue, it should help you to understand the rest. The meaning of the dialogue depends entirely on the use of imperfective and perfective aspects throughout it. Bear in mind that the speaker is comparing what usually happens with what happened on one particular occasion.

The language you've learnt

Table 1

Summary of imperfective and perfective aspects of verbs

	imperfective	perfective
group 1	думать* смотреть (2) бывать читать делать	подумать посмотреть (2) побывать прочитать сделать
group 2	решать начинать спрашивать приглашать предлагать отвечать	решить (2) начать (1) спросить (2) пригласить (2) предложить (2) ответить (2)
Note especially	приносить (2) говорить (2) брать (1)	принести (1) сказать (1) взять (1)

NOTE:

The perfective aspect of verbs is formed in different ways. Often it is formed from the imperfective form by adding a prefix: **по, про, с** and others, of which the most common is **по**. When the only change is the addition of the prefix, the verb does not change its conjugation. Examples of this are found in group 1.

Group 2 consists of verbs whose perfective and imperfective forms vary considerably. Often the imperfective form is 1st conjugation, and the perfective form is 2nd conjugation.

Note especially the three pairs at the end of the list, in which the two parts are very different and must be carefully learnt.

*The verbs in this table are regular 1st conjugation (-аю, -аешь), unless indicated otherwise.

Verbs marked (1) are 1st conjugation but change their stem. If you are not sure of how to conjugate them, check in the Russian-English vocabulary at the end of the book. Do the same for any 2nd conjugation verbs you are not sure of.

9 Table 2
Future tense of сказать (1st conj.; perfective of говорить)

сказать	
я скаж ^у	мы скаж ^{ем}
ты скаж ^{ешь}	вы скаж ^{ете}
он скаж ^{ет}	они скаж ^{ут}
она	

Урок десять Lesson ten
Десятый урок Tenth lesson

10

На даче At the dacha

What happens

In this lesson we learn more about Irina, her husband Sergei, who is an engineer at the Likhachyov factory, and their small daughter, Katenka. In the summer they usually spend the weekend at their dacha, travelling out to the country on Friday evening and returning to Moscow on Monday morning.

Vika and Volodya enjoy their day at the dacha and thank their hosts on leaving. Irina and Sergei invite them to come again one day that week. It's a problem to decide which day, as Vika and Volodya are intending to go to Rostov on Tuesday or Wednesday.

In Part 3 there are three dialogues: in the first, Vasya is trying to get to know Marina; in the second, Nina greets Oleg on his return from a trip somewhere; and in the third, Boris asks Marita when Ivanov is due to return from holiday.

New words in this lesson

весна spring
 весной in spring
 во (= в) in
 возвращаться (1, imp.) to return
 воздух air
 воскресенье Sunday
 время года season
 вторник Tuesday
 десятый tenth
 десять ten
 дочка little daughter
 её her, hers
 ещё раз again
 завод имени Лихачёва Likhachyov
 factory
 звать (1, imp.) to call
 зима winter
 зимой in winter
 из out of
 интересный interesting
 их their, theirs; them
 лето summer
 летом in summer
 неделя week

осень autumn
 осенью in autumn
 отдыхать (1, imp.) to rest, be on
 holiday
 отпуск leave, holiday
 переехать (1, p.) to move (house)
 показать (1, p.) to show
 понедельник Monday
 провести (1, p.) to spend
 проводить (2, imp.) to spend
 пятница Friday
 рабочий worker
 Ростов Rostov
 свежий fresh
 семья family
 среда Wednesday
 суббота Saturday
 четверг Thursday

как тебя зовут? what are you called?
 её зовут she is called
 его зовут he is called
 меня зовут I am called
 тебя зовут you are called

PART 1

- 1 Летом Ирина и её муж часто приезжают на дачу. *In the summer Irina and her husband often come to the dacha.*

приезжают From the imperfective **приезжать**.

VERBS 'TO GO' (CONT.)

In Lesson 7 (N3) you learnt that there are three forms of the verbs *to go*, on foot and by some means of transport:

imperfective perfective

indefinite definite

ходить идти пойти

ездить ехать поехать

However, 'going' verbs with prefixes have only two forms:

imperfective and perfective, e.g.

imperfective perfective

входить войти

выходить выйти

уходить уйти

проходить пройти

проезжать проехать

приходить прийти

приезжать приехать

- 2 Здесь на свежем воздухе они отдыхают. *Here they relax in the fresh air.* Note order.
 а свежем From the soft adjective **свежий**.
 б отдыхают From **отдыхать**: *to relax, have a rest, or be on holiday.*
- 3 Сейчас у Ирины и её мужа отпуск. *At the moment Irina and her husband are on leave. (Now Irina and her husband have leave.)*
 у Ирины и её мужа отпуск *Irina and her husband have leave* Both the words **Ирины** and **мужа** are in the genitive as usual in a 'have' construction. Note, however, that **её**: *her, hers* does not change. Similarly **его**: *his* and **их**: *their, theirs* do not decline to agree with nouns in the various cases. Other possessive adjectives (**мой, твой, наш** and **ваш**) always agree with the noun, e.g. *my husband has leave is у моего мужа отпуск.*
- 4 И вся семья переехала из Москвы на дачу. *And the whole family has moved out of Moscow to the dacha.*
 а вся семья *the whole family, or all the family*
 б переехала From **переехать**: *to move* in the sense of moving house, or moving out of Moscow to a country cottage.

с из *out of, from* This preposition is always followed by the genitive.

- 5 Его зовут Сергей, а её зовут Катенька. *He is called Sergei, and she is called Katenka. (Him they call Sergei, and her they call Katenka.)* Here you see the Russian way of saying *someone is called . . .* or *someone's name is . . .* **Зовут** is an abbreviation of **они зовут**: *they call*, and it takes a direct object, i.e. a noun or pronoun in the accusative case (which may be the same as the genitive, e.g. in masculine animate nouns and personal pronouns.) More examples of this construction will be found in Table 1.

- 6 Сергей—рабочий. *Sergei is a worker.* **Рабочий** is another example of an adjective which has come to be used as a noun.

- 7 Он работает на заводе имени Лихачёва. *He works at the Likhachyov factory. (. . . in the name of Likhachyov.)*

- 8 Обычно в пятницу вечером он приезжает на дачу, проводит здесь субботу и воскресенье и возвращается в Москву только в понедельник утром. *He usually comes to the dacha on Friday evening, spends Saturday and Sunday here, and only returns to Moscow on Monday morning.* Note order.

в пятницу, в понедельник *on Friday, on Monday* On a day is expressed by **в** and the day in the accusative case. For all the DAYS OF THE WEEK, see Table 2.

- 9 Володя очень доволен, что они с Викой приехали на дачу. *Volodya is very pleased that he and Vika came to the dacha.* они с Виктор *he and Vika* This is similar to the phrase **мы с тобой** (L8, N13).

- 10 Сергей и Ирина приглашают их приехать ещё раз на этой неделе. *Sergei and Irina invite them to come again during that week.*

а Их means *them* when it is the object of a verb.

б ещё раз *once more, or again.*

с на этой неделе *in or during that week* Note the use of the locative here.

- 11 Но в какой день? *But on which day?*

Во вторник или в среду Володя с Виктор хотят поехать в Ростов. *On Tuesday or Wednesday Volodya and Vika want to go to Rostov.* Note that the question **в какой день?** is in the accusative, as is the reply **во вторник или в среду.**

PART 2

- 12 Я хочу показать вам нашу дачу. *I want to show you our dacha.*

а Вам is the dative of **вы**. For a summary of personal pronouns in all cases see Table 3.

- 10 b** Показать, and all verbs ending in **-казать**, conjugate like **сказать** (L9, T2).
- 13** Это комната нашей дочки. *This is our daughter's room.*
нашей Genitive feminine of **наша**. For **наш** and **ваш** (*your*) in all cases see Table 4.
- 14** Вы живёте здесь только летом? *Do you live here only in summer?*
Да, зимой мы здесь не живём. *Yes, in winter we don't live here.*
летом, зимой *in summer, in winter* These words are the instrumental forms of **лето** and **зима**. This is a good place for you to learn the remaining two seasons—**весна**: *spring*, and **весной**: *in spring*; **осень**: *autumn*, and **осенью**: *in autumn*.
The word **время** which you already know as *time*, is also used for *season*. **Время года** is *a season*, and **времена года**: *the seasons*.
- 15** Вы уже были в отпуске. *Have you been on leave yet? (You've already been on leave?)*
- 16** У меня сейчас отпуск. *I'm on leave at the moment. (I have now leave.)*
- 17** Меня зовут Сергей. А вас? *I'm called Sergei. What are you called?*
А вас? is an abbreviation of **А как вас зовут?** which is the normal way of asking someone's name in Russian. See Table 1.
- 18** А меня—Володя. *And I'm called Volodya.*
The verb is sometimes omitted in colloquial speech.
- 19** Вот мы и познакомились. *So, now we know each other. (There, we've made each other's acquaintance.)*
- 20** Мою маму зовут Ирина. *My mummy is called Irina.*
А как твоего папу зовут? *And what is your daddy called?* You already know (N5) that the accusative is used in this construction. You should have no difficulty recognising **мою маму** as being in the accusative, but look carefully at **твоего папу**. **Папа** has the same endings as a feminine noun in all cases, and thus disregards the rule about masculine animate nouns. An adjective, or possessive adjective, with it, however, still behaves as if it is with a masculine animate, and thus takes a genitive ending.
- 21** Спасибо, у нас был сегодня прекрасный день. *Thank you, we've had a lovely day today.* Note order.
- 22** Вы можете приехать, когда хотите: во вторник, в среду, в четверг. *You can come whenever you like: on Tuesday, Wednesday or Thursday.* Note this use of **когда**.

- 23** Простите, я вас не знаю. *Excuse me, I don't know you.*
Вот я и хочу с вами познакомиться. *But I want to get to know you.*
- 24** Но ваша подруга зовёт вас Марина. *But your friend calls you Marina.*
зовёт The infinitive of this verb is **звать**, and its present tense will be found in Table 5.
- 25** Значит, вы знаете, как меня зовут. Почему вы спрашиваете? *Then you know what I'm called. Why are you asking?*
- 26** Я говорю, что я хочу с вами познакомиться. *As I say, I want to get to know you.*
- 27** Когда Иванов возвращается из отпуска? *When is Ivanov returning from his leave?*
- 28** А сегодня какой день? *And what day is it today?* Note order.
Сегодня среда. *It's Wednesday today.*
- 29** Четверг, пятница, суббота, воскресенье—четыре дня. *Thursday, Friday, Saturday, Sunday—four days.*
дня Genitive of **день**: *day*. **День** has an irregular declension. See Table 6.

The language you've learnt

Table 1

Как вас зовут?

меня зовут ...
тебя зовут ...
его зовут ...
её зовут ...
нас зовут ...
вас зовут ...
их зовут ...
его жену зовут ...
её мужа зовут ...
мою маму зовут ...
твоего папу зовут ...

10 Table 2
Дни недели

понедельник	в понедельник
вторник	во вторник
среда	в среду
четверг	в четверг
пятница	в пятницу
суббота	в субботу
воскресенье	в воскресенье

Table 3
Personal pronouns

Nom.	я	ты	он, оно	она	мы	вы	они
Acc.	меня	тебя	его	её	нас	вас	их
Gen.	меня	тебя	его	её	нас	вас	их
Dat.	мне	тебе	ему	ей	нам	вам	им
Instr.	мной	тобой	им	ей	нами	вами	ими
Loc.	мне	тебе	нём	ней	нас	вас	них

Note that after prepositions all other case forms of **он, оно, она** and **они** have the letter **н** added at the beginning, e.g. у него, с ними.

Table 4
наш, ваш

	masculine	neuter	feminine
Nom.	наш	наше	наша
Acc.	наш нашего	наше	нашу
Gen.	нашего		нашей
Dat.	нашему		нашей
Instr.	нашим		нашей
Loc.	нашем		нашей

Table 5
Present tense of звать (1)

звать	
я зову	мы зовём
ты зовёшь	вы зовёте
он зовёт	они зовут

Table 6
день

Nom.	день
Acc.	день
Gen.	дня
Dat.	дню
Instr.	днём
Loc.	дне

Поездка в Ростов A trip to Rostov

What happens

Today Volodya and Vika are going to Rostov, a beautiful old town about one hundred and fifty miles north-east of Moscow. Its full name is **Ростов Великий**: *Great Rostov*, not to be confused with Rostov-on-the-Don, in the Ukraine. Great Rostov is famous for its Kremlin and fine examples of old Russian architecture. Volodya and Vika leave Moscow by car early in the morning and soon arrive in Zagorsk, where there is a famous old monastery. Vika would be quite happy to stay there all day, but Volodya insists on going on to Rostov. There they look round the Kremlin, and chat to a member of a party from Yaroslavl. They listen to a guide telling them about the history of Rostov, then go down to the lake, across which there is a splendid view of the towers and shining cupolas of Rostov.

In Part 3 there are two dialogues: in the first, a Muscovite is asking a stranger to Moscow what he has managed to see of the city; in the second, Svetlana is telling Nikolai about her aunt.

New words in this lesson

архитектура architecture
берег shore
войти (1, p.) to go in, enter
волнение emotion
впервые for the first time
выехать (1, p.) to go out (in a vehicle)
выйти (1, p.) to go out (on foot)
главный main
глубокий deep
группа group
далее further
достопримечательность (f.)
attraction, 'sight'
древний ancient
единственный only
живописный picturesque
Загорск Zagorsk
замечательный remarkable
звон chime
издали from far off, from a distance

история history
к, ко towards
каждый each
колокольный звон bell chime
красивый beautiful
любоваться (1, imp.) admire
монастырь (m.) monastery
находиться (2, imp.) to be situated
Новодевичий монастырь Novodevichy Monastery
одиннадцатый eleventh
одиннадцать eleven
озеро lake
осматривать (1, imp.) to look around
остаться (1, p.) to stay, remain
отец father
памятник monument
погода weather
Подмосковье Podmoskovye (area around Moscow)

подойти (1, p.) to go up to (on foot)
подъехать (1, p.) to go up to
(in a vehicle)
послушать (1, p.) to listen
прекрасный marvellous
приезжий visitor
природа countryside
путь (m.) journey
раньше before, formerly
рассказ commentary, story
русский Russian
самый the very . . . , the . . . itself
сестра sister

собор cathedral
старина the past
сюда here, to here
те those
тётя aunt
только что just now
целый whole
церковь (f.) church
через after
экскурсия tour; party, group
экскурсовод guide
Ярославль Yaroslavl

Notes

PART 1

- 1 Они выехали из Москвы на машине рано утром. *They left Moscow by car early in the morning.*
Выехать из, followed by the genitive, means *to go out of, leave* a place (in a vehicle).
- 2 Погода была хорошая, и они любовались прекрасной природой Подмосковья. *The weather was fine and they admired the marvellous countryside around Moscow.*
а любовались From любоваться: *to admire*, which conjugates in the same way as интересоваться (L8, T1) and is also followed by the instrumental.
б Подмосковье is a general name for the rural districts outside Moscow.
- 3 Через два часа они приехали в Загорск. *In two hours they arrived in Zagorsk.*
Через два часа. Через is a preposition which is always followed by the accusative, and is often found in expressions of time.
- 4 Там они вышли из машины и вошли в монастырь. *There they got out of the car and went into the monastery.*
вышли, вошли These are the past tense of выйти and войти, which are the perfectives of выходить and входить, which you have already met. See L10, N1.
- 5 И Вика уже хотела остаться здесь на целый день. *And Vika wanted to stay there all day. (And Vika already wanted to stay here for the whole day.)*
на целый день for the whole day На, followed by the accusative, is also used in expressions of time.

- 11** 6 Он хотел ехать дальше, в Ростов. *He wanted to go on farther, to Rostov.*
- 7 Ещё час пути—и они уже подъехали к Ростову. *Another hour's drive and they were already approaching Rostov.*
- a ещё час пути You already know that ещё раз means *once more*, or *one more time*; ещё час means *one more hour*. Путь has many different meanings, including *way, road, journey*. Learn it here as a phrase.
- b они подъехали к. Подъехать к, followed by the dative, means *to come up to, approach (in a vehicle)*.
- c к, ко The preposition к, or ко (before a word beginning with two consonants) means *to, towards*, and is always followed by the dative.
- 8 Он находится на берегу живописного озера. *It is situated on the shore of a picturesque lake.*
на берегу. Берег is another masculine noun which ends in *y* in the locative.
- 9 Главная достопримечательность города—Кремль. *The chief attraction of the town is its Kremlin.*
Кремль Moscow is not the only Russian city to have a Kremlin, which is a fortress or walled city containing the churches and most important buildings.
- 10 Каждый день в Ростов приезжают те, кто любит древнюю русскую архитектуру, кто интересуется историей страны. *Every day Rostov is visited by those who love old Russian architecture, and those interested in the history of their country.*
(*Every day to Rostov come those . . .*)
те, кто *those, who* Note that the verb after те, кто can be in the 3rd person singular.
- 11 С глубоким волнением входили Вика и Володя в Кремль, слушали рассказ экскурсовода, любовались замечательным памятником старины. *Vika and Volodya entered the Kremlin with deep emotion, listened to the guide's commentary, admired this remarkable monument of the past.* Note order.

PART 2

- 12 Я хочу подъехать к самому монастырю. *I want to drive right up to the monastery itself.*
самому Dative of the emphatic adjective самый, -ое, -ая, which, when together with a noun, gives emphasis to that noun, expressed in English by *the very . . .*, or *the . . . itself*. Compare with the

emphatic pronoun сам, which you met in Lesson 3, N49. Самый declines like a normal adjective and always agrees with the noun.

- 13 А ты впервые в Загорске? *Is this your first time in Zagorsk?*
(*And you for the first time in Zagorsk?*)
- 14 Нет, раньше я часто приезжал сюда. *No, I used to come here often.* (*No, earlier I often came here.*)
- 15 Нет. Здесь жила моя тётя, сестра отца. Я приезжал к ней. *No. My aunt, my father's sister, lived here. I came to visit her.*
приезжал к When the verb приезжать, приехать is followed by к and a person, it has the additional meaning of *to come and visit, or come and see someone*.
- 16 Володя, я хочу войти в эту церковь. *Volodya, I want to go into that church.*
эту Accusative of эта. A full declension of этот, это, эта will be found in Table 1.
- 17 А потом я хочу подойти к тому собору. *And then I'd like to go up to that cathedral.*
a подойти к *to approach, go up to (on foot)*.
b тому Dative of тот, which declines in almost the same way as этот (T1).
c собору The word *cathedral* in English has a restricted use compared with собор in Russian. Many quite small churches are called собор.
- 18 К какому? *To which one?* Dative of какой. See Table 2.
- 19 Вон к тому, видишь? *To that one over there, see?* Note order.
- 20 Оттуда только что вышла экскурсия. *A party came out of there just now.* Note order.
только что вышла *came out just now, just came out* Learn this meaning of только and что together.
- 21 А ты раньше бывала в Ростове? *And have you been in Rostov before?* Note the position of раньше in this sentence.
- 22 Нет, но я много о нём слышала. *No, but I've heard a lot about it.*
- 23 Что Кремль стоит на очень красивом месте, что Ростов—очень старый город, что достопримечательность Кремля—это колокольный звон. *That the Kremlin stands in a very beautiful place, that Rostov is a very old town, that the [main] attraction of the Kremlin is its bell chime.*

11 24 Простите, откуда приехала ваша группа? Из Ярославля.
Excuse me, where is your group from? From Yaroslavl. Yaroslavl is another old Russian town famous for its Kremlin and historic buildings.

25 Но это не единственная наша достопримечательность. Вы бывали в Ярославле? *But that isn't our only attraction. Have you been to Yaroslavl?*
единственная The adjective **единственный** means *only, single*, and must always agree with the noun.

26 Сначала я хочу послушать, что говорит экскурсовод. *First I want to listen [to] what the guide is saying.* Note order and the comma, which is essential before a clause introduced by **что, кто, как, где**, and so on.

27 Потом мы можем подойти к озеру и посмотреть на Кремль издали. *Then we can walk up to the lake and look at the Kremlin from a distance.*

PART 3

28 А в Новодевичьем монастыре вы бывали? *And have you been to Novodevichy Monastery?* This is a beautiful monastery on the banks of the River Moscow.

The language you've learnt

Table 1
этот and тот*

	masculine	neuter	feminine
Nom.	этот	это	эта
Acc.	этот	это	эту
Gen.	этого (того)		этой
Dat.	этому (тому)		этой
Instr.	этим (тем)		этой
Loc.	этом		этой

*the endings for **тот** are the same as for **этот**, except for the masculine and neuter instrumental, and some differences in stress (the stress on **этот** remains constant).

Table 2
какой, -ое, -ая

(and all adjectives with stressed **-ой** endings and stems ending in **г, к, х, ж** or **ш**, e.g. **большой**).

masculine	neuter	feminine
какой	какое	какая
какой	какое	какую
какого		какой
какому		какой
каким		какой
каком		какой

Случайная встреча A chance meeting

What happens

Today Vika and Volodya are going to meet at Kamenny Bridge and go for a trip on a pleasure-boat down the River Moscow. This is a pleasant trip as it gives a good view of parts of Moscow which are situated on the banks of the river, such as Novodevichy Monastery, the University and Gorky Recreation Park.

Evening. Volodya and Vika are on the pleasure-boat, where they unexpectedly meet Igor, a friend of Volodya's. Igor is just about to go away on holiday, and the conversation turns to holidays: where they have been and where they would like to go.

In Part 3 there are two dialogues: in the first, Mikhail thinks he recognises someone he met on holiday the previous year, but is mistaken; in the second, Sasha asks Misha if he would like to go to Abramtsevo on Sunday, but Misha doesn't want to make up his mind immediately—he wants to know if Tanya's coming!

New words in this lesson

Абрамцево Abramtsevo
богатый rich
будущий next
взморье coast, sea-front
встречать (I, imp.) to meet
год year
двенадцатый twelfth
двенадцать twelve
днём in the daytime
дом отдыха holiday home
друг friend
жить (I, imp.) to stay
загорать (I, imp.) to sunbathe
Кавказ the Caucasus
Каменный мост Kamenny Bridge
(Stone Bridge)
кататься (I, imp.) to go for a ride
край region
купаться (I, imp.) to bathe
море sea
мост bridge

начаться (I, p.) to start
опять again
Парк культуры и отдыха имени
Горького Gorky Recreation Park
Пицунда Pitsunda
Прибалтика the Baltic States
прогулка outing
прошлый last
путешествовать (I, imp.) to travel
рассказывать (I, imp.) to tell
речной катер river launch, pleasure-
boat
Рига Riga
Рижский Riga (adj.)
случайно by chance
случайный chance
Средняя Азия Central Asia
стройка construction job
увидеть (2, p.) to see
уезжать (I, imp.) to leave (in a vehicle)
уехать (I, p.) to leave (in a vehicle)

устал, -a tired
фантастически fantastically
центральный central
Чёрное море the Black
Sea

в будущем году next year
в прошлом году last year
вот встреча! fancy meeting you here!
поживём—увидим! we'll see!,
wait and see!

Notes

PART 1

- 1 Сегодня вечером Володя и Вика встретятся у Каменного моста и поедут кататься на речном катере. *This evening Volodya and Vika will meet at Kamenny Bridge and go for a trip on a pleasure-boat.*
- a **встретятся, поедут** *will meet, will go* These verbs are in the future tense, from the *perfective* infinitives **встретиться** and **поехать**.
THE FUTURE TENSE (PERFECTIVE VERBS)
Up to this point all verbs you have seen conjugated in the present tense have been *imperfective*. (You've seen the perfective form only in the infinitive and past tense.) This is because the present tense can only be expressed by the *imperfective* aspect. THE PERFECTIVE ASPECT, when conjugated in what looks like the present tense, in fact expresses THE FUTURE, e.g. **Завтра я поеду в Москву: Tomorrow I'm going to Moscow.**
- b **у** The preposition **у**, followed by the genitive, means *at, by*.
- c **Каменного моста** This means *Stone Bridge*. **Каменный** is the adjective from **камень** (m.): *stone*.
- d **Кататься** is a verb with many different meanings, depending on context. Here it means *to go for a trip, go for a sail*, i.e. on a boat. **Кататься на машине** means *to go for a spin, go for a drive in a car*.
- e **речной катер** This is really a *river launch*. **Речной** is an adjective from **река**: *river*.
- 2 Они опять увидят Парк культуры и отдыха имени Горького, Центральный стадион имени Ленина, новое здание Московского университета. *They will again see Gorky Recreation Park, Lenin Central Stadium, and the new building of Moscow University.*
- a **увидят** From **увидеть**, the perfective aspect of **видеть**.
- b **Парк культуры и отдыха имени Горького, Центральный стадион имени Ленина** Literally, *the Park of culture and recreation in the name of Gorky, and the Central stadium in the name of Lenin*. These are the full names of these places which were mentioned in an abbreviated form in Lesson 5.

- 12 3** Здесь Володя случайно встречается своего друга Игоря. *Here Volodya happens to meet his friend Igor. (Here Volodya accidentally meets . . .)*

встречает Up to now you have only met the reflexive form of this verb—**встречаться, встретиться**—as in the first sentence of this lesson, **Володя и Вика встретятся . . .** The reflexive form is used to express two people *meeting each other*, usually by arrangement. In **Володя встречается своего друга . . .** there is no mutual arrangement, and the transitive verb is used, taking an object in the accusative. (**Своего друга Игоря**, a masculine animate, has genitive endings in the accusative.)

- 4** Игорь рассказывает, как он будет проводить свой отпуск. *Igor tells them how he's going to spend his leave.*

будет проводить

THE FUTURE TENSE (IMPERFECTIVE VERBS) You already know the future tense of **быть** (L6, T5). Here you see it together with an imperfective infinitive. This is how the **IMPERFECTIVE FUTURE** is formed. It is used to express, in a general way, some action intended in the future, or some action that will be habitual or repetitive in the future.

- 5** Его отпуск начнётся в понедельник, но уже в пятницу вечером Игорь уедет из Москвы, а в субботу утром будет в Риге. *His leave starts on Monday, but Igor will leave Moscow on Friday evening, and on Saturday morning he'll be in Riga. (His leave will start . . .)*

начнётся, уедет Both these verbs are in the perfective future, as both actions are going to take place once only, at a specific time.

- 6** Он будет жить в доме отдыха на Рижском взморье. Там он будет купаться, загорать. *He will stay in a holiday home on the Riga sea-front. There he will swim and sunbathe.*

All the verbs here are in the imperfective future, because they are all general statements of what he'll do there, without any specific details of how long he'll stay, how many times he'll swim, etc.

дом отдыха This is a Soviet institution, designed to give Soviet workers cheap and carefree holidays. They are usually subsidized by the trade unions. The atmosphere is similar to that of a holiday camp, with emphasis on healthy exercise and relaxation.

- 7** Игорь любит путешествовать. *Igor loves travelling. (. . . to travel.)*

- 8** В прошлом году он был в Сибири. А в будущем году он хочет поехать в Среднюю Азию. *Last year he went to Siberia. (. . . was in*

Siberia.) And next year he wants to go to Central Asia.

В прошлом году, в будущем году *last year, next year* Learn these two expressions.

PART 2

- 9** А что мы будем делать завтра? Завтра днём у меня не будет времени. *And what shall we do tomorrow? Tomorrow I shan't have any time during the day. (Note order)*
у меня не будет *I shan't have* The future tense of **have** is formed with the future tense of **быть**. See also N11 below.
- 10** Да, я в самом деле очень устал. *Yes, I'm really very tired.*
- 11** Но скоро у меня будет отпуск. *But soon I shall be on leave. (But soon I shall have leave.)*
- 12** В Прибалтику. *To the Baltic.* **Прибалтика** is a collective term for the Baltic States—Estonia, Latvia and Lithuania.
- 13** А что вы будете там делать? *And what will you do there?*
Как «что делать»? *What do you mean 'what will you do'?*
- 14** Я работала там летом на стройке. *I've worked there on a construction job in the summer.* It's usual for young people and Komsomol members to help out in their summer vacation on such jobs as building and harvesting in the developing parts of the Soviet Union.
- 15** Я тоже был там, в прошлом году. *I've been there too, last year.*
- 16** Это—фантастически богатый край. *It's a fantastically rich land.* (Igor has in mind the natural resources, fertile soil and striking nature and scenery of Siberia.)
- 17** Я обязательно поеду в будущем году в Среднюю Азию. **Володя, хочешь поехать со мной вместе?** *I absolutely must go to Central Asia next year. Volodya, do you want to come with me?* Note that the Russian says *go with me together*. See also L9, N19.
- 18** Поживём—увидим! *Wait and see! or We shall see what we shall see! (We shall live and see!)* This is a Russian saying for you to learn.
- 19** На Пицунду? Это на Чёрном море? *To Pitsunda? Is that on the Black Sea?* Pitsunda is a resort in Georgia, on the Black Sea. You have learnt that the preposition **в** is usually used for *to* and *in* with names of towns, and may be wondering why **на** is used with **Пицунда**. It is because **Пицунда** is a *cape* or *promontory* (**мыс**), and **на** is always used with this word: **на мысе Пицунда** or **на Пицунду, на Пицунде**.

- 12** 20 В Крыму тоже очень хорошо. *It's also very nice in the Crimea.*
В Крыму Note that the locative of Крым is Крымѹ.

PART 3

- 21 Иван Иванович! Вот встреча! *Ivan Ivanovich! Fancy meeting you here! (There's a meeting!)*
- 22 Простите, я думал, что мы с вами вместе были в прошлом году в доме отдыха на Кавказе. *Excuse me, I thought that you and I were in a holiday home together in the Caucasus last year.* (Note order.)
мы с вами *you and I, or we* See also L8, N13.
- 23 Миша, что ты будешь делать в воскресенье? *Misha, what are you doing on Sunday? (what will you be doing . . . ?)*
- 24 Ты не хочешь поехать в Абрамцево? *You wouldn't like to go to Abramtsevo, would you?* Note that in colloquial speech in Russian, as in English, questions are sometimes put in the negative.
Абрамцево *Abramtsevo* is an old country estate about 45 miles from Moscow. Many famous Russian painters and writers, including Gogol and Turgenev, worked there. Now it is a museum.
- 25 А кто ещё поедет? *And who else is going?*
- 26 Так ты поедешь или нет? *Then are you coming or not?*
- 27 Поживѐм—увидим! Сегодня ещё только среда. *We'll see! It's only Wednesday today.*

GENERAL NOTE:

From now on there will not always be a **Language you've learnt** section in each lesson. Where a new point can best be illustrated in tables, they will be retained, otherwise we shall refer you to the grammatical appendix.

Вика заболела Vika is ill

What happens

Yesterday evening Vika wasn't feeling very well, and this morning she couldn't get up. She took her temperature and decided to call the doctor. The doctor came and told her she'd got 'flu. Vika rang up Volodya, who asked if he could come and visit her, but not immediately—he has to go to the dentist first.

In Part 3 there are two dialogues. In the first, Nikolai Ivanovich is asking Maria Petrovna why she wasn't at work the previous day. She replies that she wasn't feeling well—and still isn't. In the second, Misha asks Maria Ivanovna if she has recovered, as he knows she has been in hospital.

New words in this lesson

ангина tonsillitis
болен, больно, -на ill, painful
болеть (2, imp.) to be painful, to ache
встать (1, p.) to get up
вызвать (1, p.) to call out
голова head
горло throat
градусник thermometer
грипп 'flu
доктор Doctor
заболеть (1, p.) to fall ill
зуб tooth
зубной врач dentist
к сожалению unfortunately
лёгкие (s. лёгкое) lungs
лежать (2, imp.) to lie
лекарство medicine
можно may, is possible
навестить (2, p.) to visit
надо must, is necessary
нельзя must not, is impossible
нужно must, is necessary
оставить (2, p.) to leave
позвонить (2, p.) to ring up

по-моему in my opinion, I think
пообещать (1, p.) to promise
постель (f.) bed
почему why
прийти (1, p.) to come (on foot)
принимать (1, imp.) to take
рецепт prescription
сердце heart
температура temperature
тринадцатый thirteenth
тринадцать thirteen
трудно difficult
уйти (1, p.) to leave

лежать в постели to stay in bed
не повезло тебе you've been
unlucky
смерить температуры to take one's
temperature
три раза в день three times a day
что с тобой/вами? what's the matter
(with you)?
что с тобой/вами случилось? what's
happened to you?

PART 1

- 1 **Вика заболела.** *Vika is ill. (Vika has become ill.)*
заболеть means *to become ill*.
- 2 **Вчера вечером Вика чувствовала себя плохо. А сегодня утром ей было трудно встать.** *Yesterday evening Vika felt ill. And this morning it was difficult for her to get up.*
ей было трудно *it was difficult for her* This is an IMPERSONAL CONSTRUCTION, using **было**: *it was*, the dative of the person involved, and an infinitive. Such impersonal constructions are common in Russian, and are found not only in the past tense (as here), but also in the present and future:
ему трудно . . . ;
завтра мне будет трудно
- 3 **У неё болела голова и болело горло.** *She had a headache and a sore throat.* Note carefully the construction used in this sentence—it is the way Russian expresses *to have an ache* somewhere. The verb **болеть** means *to ache, be painful*, and it agrees with the part of the body which is aching, while the person is expressed by **у** and the genitive. Here you see the past tense, but the construction is, of course, also used in the present. Here are some more examples:
У меня болит голова;
У него болит горло;
Вчера у неё болел зуб.
- 4 **Вика взяла градусник и смерила температуру. Да, у неё, в самом деле, температура.** *Vika took a thermometer and measured her temperature. Yes, she had in fact got a temperature.* Note that the second sentence here is in the present tense because at the time of taking her temperature Vika would have said 'Yes, I really have got a temperature', i.e. she would have used the present tense.
- 5 **Значит, Вике нельзя выходить из дома. Надо вызвать врача.** *That meant that Vika shouldn't go out. She should call the doctor.*
- a **нельзя, надо** Both these words call for the same type of impersonal construction as that mentioned in N2, i.e. with the person in the dative. **Надо** really means *it is necessary*, thus **ей надо** means *it is necessary for her*, or *she must, has to, should*. **Нельзя** means *it is impossible*, and is really the negative of **можно**, but is often used as the negative of **надо**, thus **ей нельзя** means *she must not*.

- b **выходить из дома** Here **выходить из дома** means *to go out*, or *outside*.
- 6 **Он послушал сердце и лёгкие, посмотрел горло и сказал, что у Вики—грипп.** *He listened to [her] heart and lungs, looked at [her] throat and said that Vika had 'flu.* Note that no word for *her* is needed in Russian, as it is obvious to whom it is referring.
- 7 **Вика позвонила Володе и сказала, что она заболела.** *Vika rang up Volodya and said that she was ill.*
позвонила Володе Note that the verb **позвонить** is followed by the dative.
- 8 **Володя пообещал приехать вечером. А сейчас у него болит зуб, и сначала он должен пойти к зубному врачу.** *Volodya promised to come in the evening. But at that moment he had toothache, and first he'd got to go to the dentist. (. . . But now he's got toothache, . . .)* Here is another clear example of the present tense used in reported speech.
- a **у него болит зуб** *he's got toothache* See N3.
- b **пойти к зубному врачу** *to go to the dentist* The same construction—**пойти к** plus the dative—is used for *going to the doctor*: **пойти к врачу**.

PART 2

- 9 **Что у вас болит?** *What's the trouble?, Where's the pain?*
(*What in you is hurting?*)
- 10 **А температура у вас есть?** *And have you got a temperature?*
Есть. *Yes, I have.*
- 11 **У вас—грипп.** *You've got 'flu.*
А я думала, что ангина. *And I thought that [I'd got] tonsillitis.*
- 12 **Будете принимать это лекарство три раза в день.** *You'll take this medicine three times a day.*
Note that the doctor's order is expressed in the imperfective future, as it will be a repetitive action.
- 13 **А что с тобой?** *But what's the matter with you?*
Learn this as an expression.
- 14 **По-моему, нужно вызвать врача.** *I think you should call the doctor. (In my opinion it is necessary to call the doctor.)*
a **по-моему** *in my opinion*, although *I think* is sometimes a better translation in English as it is more colloquial.

13 b Нужно, like надо, means *it is necessary* or *desirable*, and is used in exactly the same way.

15 Врач уже был. *The doctor's already been.*

16 Сказал, что я должна лежать в постели. [*He*] *said that I should stay in bed.* (. . . lie in bed.)

17 Да, не повезло тебе. *Yes, you've been unlucky.*
To be lucky is expressed in Russian by another impersonal construction with the dative. Here are some more examples:
ей повезло: *she was lucky*
нам не повезло: *we weren't lucky*

18 Можно мне навестить тебя? *May I visit you? (Is it possible for me to visit you?)*

можно мне . . . ? This is another impersonal construction composed of **можно**: *it's possible*, or, in a question, *is it possible?*, *may I?*, the dative, and an infinitive. Here you also have an object, in the accusative, as usual.

19 Конечно можно. *Of course you can. (Of course it's possible.)*

Можно is often repeated in the answer to a question containing it. Listen carefully to the rise and fall of the voice—this should tell you that the first **можно** is a question, and the second is a reply.

20 Вечером? А почему не сейчас? *In the evening? But why not now?*
Сейчас, к сожалению, не могу. *Unfortunately, I can't [come] now.*
Note the position of **к сожалению**: *unfortunately* in this sentence.

21 Не можешь? А что с тобой случилось? *Can't? But what's happened to you?* or *What's the matter with you?*
This is another colloquial phrase for you to learn.

22 У меня зуб очень болит. *I've got a bad toothache.* or *My tooth is very painful.*

This construction was explained in N3. Note where the word **очень** is inserted if the ache is very bad or painful!

23 Да, мне надо пойти к врачу. *Yes, I must go to the dentist.*

a This is another example of the construction explained in N5a.

b Врач here is an abbreviation of **зубной врач**.

24 Можно мне посмотреть? *May I have a look?*
Note the impersonal construction again.

25 Так, больно? *Is that painful?*

PART 3

26 Мария Петровна, что с вами случилось? Вы вчера не были на работе. *Maria Petrovna, what happened to you? You weren't at work yesterday.* Note order.

27 Вам не надо было приходить сегодня. *You shouldn't have come today.*

The past tense of expressions with **надо**, **не надо**, **нужно**, **нельзя**, **можно**, etc., is formed by the addition of **было**. Learn **вам не надо было**: *you shouldn't have* as a model.

Володя идёт за лекарством Volodya goes for the medicine

What happens

In this lesson Volodya visits Vika in her student hostel, which is nearly empty now as most of the students have gone away for the summer vacation. Vika is very bored because her friends have left, and she sits in bed, surrounded by books and magazines. Vika asks Volodya to go to the chemist's with her prescription. He goes out but can't find the chemist's. He sees other shop signs, but not the one he wants. People are hurrying by and he doesn't know who to ask. Unfortunately he picks someone who is not at all helpful. Suddenly he sees a sign saying 'Chemist's' on the other side of the road. He has to go to two different departments in the chemist's: one for prescriptions, and another for medicines available without a prescription.

In Part 3 there are two dialogues: in the first, Vanya meets Misha who is feeling ill and is on his way to the chemist's; in the second, Zhora is telling Lyova that their friend Kolya is ill.

New words in this lesson

аптека chemist's (shop)
аптекарь chemist (female)
аспирин aspirin
вокруг around
волноваться (1, imp.) to be worried, anxious
вывеска shop sign
головная боль headache
готов, -о, -а ready
деньги (pl. only) money
же, ж (see note 9)
закрыт, -о, -а closed
идти за (1, imp.) to go for, fetch
кальцека kaltsex
каникулы holidays
касса cash desk
книга book

к счастью luckily, fortunately
люди (s. человек) people
мех fur
наверное no doubt, surely
нужен, нужно, -на necessary
овощи vegetables
от from
отдел department
понимать (1, imp.) to understand
попросить (1, p.) to ask for, request
почти nearly
пустой empty
разъехаться (1, p.) to go away, depart
расстройство желудка upset stomach
скучно boring
соки-воды soft drinks

спешить (2, imp.) to hurry
странный strange
таблетка tablet
такой such
фрукты fruit
четырнадцатый fourteenth
четырнадцать fourteen
шутить (2, imp.) to joke
шутка joke

где же? wherever (is)?
да нет but no, certainly not
добрый вечер good evening
как твои дела? how are things?
мне скучно I am bored
по рецепту on prescription
это у вас что? what's this you've got here?

Notes

PART 1

- Володя идёт за лекарством.** *Volodya goes for the medicine.*
За is a preposition which has many different meanings. With a 'going' verb, and a noun in the instrumental, it means *to go for*, or *fetch* something, e.g. **идти за врачом:** *to fetch the doctor.*
- Здесь живут студенты.** *Students live here.* Note reverse order.
студенты The nominative plural of most masculine and feminine nouns ends in **-ы**. To form the plural of masculine nouns ending in a consonant, simply add **-ы** at the end.
- Но сейчас лето, и почти все комнаты пустые.** *But now it's summer, and nearly all the rooms are empty.*
a **Все** is the nominative plural of **весь, всё, вся**. There is only one plural for all three genders.
b **комнаты** To form the nominative plural of most feminine nouns ending in **-а**, remove **-а** and put **-ы**.
c **пустые** The nominative plural of an adjective is the same for all three genders. The ending **-ые** is found on normal adjectives ending in **-ый** in the nominative masculine. Adjectives with stems ending in **г, к, and х**, soft and mixed adjectives all end in **-ие** in the nominative plural. See Table 3.
- Рядом лежали книги и журналы.** *There were books and magazines lying around.* Note order.
книги The letter **ы** cannot follow **г, к, х, ж, ч, ш, or щ**, therefore, in feminine nouns where the stem ends in one of these letters, or in masculine nouns where the final consonant is one of these, **-и** forms the plural instead of **-ы**.

- 14** 5 **Окна в комнате были закрыты.** *The windows in the room were closed.*
- a **окна** Most neuter nouns ending in -о take the ending -а in the nominative plural.
- b **закрыты.** -ы is the normal nominative plural ending for short adjectives.
- 6 **Вика попросила Володю пойти в аптеку и купить ей лекарство.** *Vika asked Volodya to go to the chemist's and buy her the medicine.*
- a **Вика попросила Володю . . .** Here you learn how to ask someone to do something in Russian. The verb **просить**, which you met in Lesson 6, and its perfective form **попросить**, is used, and the person to whom the request is being made is the object of this verb, and is in the accusative.
- b **купить ей лекарство** to buy her the medicine. Here **лекарство** is the object of **купить** and **ей** is the dative of **она** meaning for her.
- 7 **Вокруг были новые дома.** *All around there were new blocks of flats.*
дома Some masculine nouns end in stressed -а or -я in the nominative plural. **Дом** is one of them.
- 8 **Володя читал вывески: «Овощи-фрукты», «Меха», «Соки-воды» . . .** *Volodya read the signs: 'Vegetables-fruit', 'Furs', 'Soft drinks' . . .*
- a **меха.** **Мех** is another masculine noun which ends in **а** in the nominative plural.
- b **«Соки-воды»** Literally 'Juices-waters'. This is a sign over a shop selling fruit juices and mineral waters such as those mentioned in Lesson 6.
- c **соки** See N4.
- 9 **Но где же аптека?** *But wherever is the chemist's?*
же The insertion of the little word **же** here gives greater emphasis to the question. **Но где аптека?** is a simple question: *But where is the chemist's?*, but the addition of **же** makes it stronger: *Wherever is the chemist's?*, *Where can the chemist's be?*
- 10 **Люди спешили, и Володя не знал, кого спросить.** *People were hurrying by, and Volodya didn't know who to ask.*
- a **Люди:** people is the plural of **человек:** person. Make a special point of learning them as a pair.
- b **кого спросить** Note that **спрашивать, спросить:** to ask a question takes an object, in the accusative. **Кого** is the accusative and genitive of **кто**.

- 14** 11 **Володя начал волноваться, но вдруг он увидел на другой стороне улицы вывеску: «Аптека».** *Volodya started getting worried, but suddenly he saw a sign 'Chemist's' on the other side of the street.* Note order.
- 12 **В аптеке было два отдела.** *In the chemist's there were two departments.* Note this use of **было:** there were.
- 13 **В одном Володя заказал лекарство по рецепту, а в другом купил таблетки от головной боли, кальцекс и аспирин.** *In one Volodya ordered the medicine on prescription, and in the other bought tablets for headache, kaltsex and aspirin.*
Note that in Russian, as in English, there is no need to repeat department. The words qualifying it, however, must still have the correct endings to agree with it (here **одном** and **другом**).
- a **по рецепту** on prescription Learn this as a phrase. The preposition **по** is usually followed by the dative.
- b **от головной боли** Whereas in English we say tablets, medicine, etc., for headache, Russian says *from*, with the preposition **от** followed by the genitive.
- c **кальцекс Kaltsex** is an effective Russian remedy for 'flu.
- PART 2
- 14 **Можно войти?** *May I come in?*
Пожалуйста. Please do.
- 15 **Как твои дела?** *How are things with you? (How your affairs?)*
This is another colloquial phrase for you to learn. An abbreviated form, **Как дела?**, is equally common.
- a **твои** Nominative plural of **твой, твоё, твоя.**
- b **дела** Note the change of stress in the plural: from **дело** to **делá**. This happens in some neuter nouns, e.g. **мéсто, местá**.
- 16 **Мне очень скучно.** *I'm very bored.* Note this impersonal construction with **скучно:** it is boring and the dative.
- 17 **Сейчас каникулы, и все мои друзья разъехались.** *Its the holidays now, and all my friends have departed.* Note order.
Друзья is the plural of **друг**.
- 18 **А лекарство ты принимаешь?** *But are you taking anything for it?* (But medicine you are taking?) Note that we have given a free translation of **лекарство** here, as it has a wider meaning than the English word *medicine* usually has. **Лекарство** really means a remedy, and can be in the form of tablets, liquid 'medicine' and so on.

14 19 А деньги у тебя есть? *But have you got any money?*
 деньги Note that деньги is always plural.

20 Аптека? Вы, наверное, шутите. *A chemist's? You must be joking!*
(You, no doubt, are joking.) Наверное on its own means *no doubt*,
probably, but is more commonly found in a colloquial exclamation
 such as this. Note its position in the sentence.

21 Да нет. Какие шутки! *Oh no! What kind of a joke would that be!*
(What kind of jokes!)
 Да нет. This is a very emphatic *no*, and can be translated as
Certainly not!, *Nothing of the kind!*

22 Такой молодой, а спрашиваете аптеку. Что у вас болит?
So young and asking for a chemist's! What's wrong with you?
 Такой means *so* or *such*, and always agrees with the noun or
 person it is referring to. It declines like какой.

23 Нет, мне в самом деле нужна аптека. *But I really do need a*
chemist's. (No, to me really is necessary a chemist's.)
 нужна In Lesson 13 (N14b) you met нужно in an impersonal
 construction. The short adjective нужен, нужно, нужна means
necessary and agrees with the thing which is needed (here нужна
 agrees with аптека). The person who needs it is still in the dative.
 This construction is always used when a *thing* (a noun) is needed.
 The other construction, with нужно, is used when someone *needs*
to do something, (i.e. with a verb). Compare these two examples:
 Нужно вызвать врача., and Мне нужна аптека.

24 Не нужны мне эти аптеки, больницы . . . *I don't need these*
chemist's, hospitals . . .

a нужны This is the plural of нужен, explained in N23.

b эти Plural of этот, это, эта.

25 Станный вы человек. *You're an odd person.* Note order.

26 Деньги в кассу. Лекарство будет готово завтра утром. *Pay at*
the cash-desk. The medicine will be ready tomorrow morning.
 Деньги в кассу Literally: *Money to the cash-desk.* It is normal
 practice in Soviet shops to pay a cashier, receive a chit, and return
 to the counter for the goods purchased.

27 Я возьму кальцекс и аспирин. *I'll take kaltsex and aspirin.*
 я возьму Part of the verb *взять*, which is the perfective of *брать*:
to take, and has an irregular conjugation:

я возьму мы возьмём
 ты возьмёшь вы возьмёте
 он возьмёт они возьмут
 она

28 Лекарство от расстройства желудка. *A remedy for stomach*
upset.

Нет, к счастью, это мне не нужно. *No, fortunately, I don't need*
that.

PART 3

29 Потом пойду домой и вызову врача. *Then I'll go home and call*
the doctor.

Правильно. *That's right.* In colloquial speech правильно:
correct, right, is an expression of approval, such as *Yes, that's the*
right thing to do.

The language you've learnt

Table 1

Nominative plural of masculine and feminine nouns

	masculine				feminine			
sing.	студент	сок	рубль	герой	комната	книга	жизнь	тётя
pl.	студенты	соки	рубли	герои	комнаты	книги	жизни	тёти

SUMMARY:

All masculine and feminine nouns end in *-ы* or *-и* in the nominative plural
 (except for a few masculine nouns which end in *-а́* or *-я́*, e.g. *домá*); *-и* must
 always follow *г, к, х, ж, ч, ш* and *щ*. All masculine nouns ending in *-й* or *-ь*,
 and all feminine nouns ending in *-я* or *-ь*, end in *-и* in the nominative plural.
 This includes feminine words ending in *-ия* (*станция—станции*).

Table 2

Nominative plural of neuter nouns

sing.	окно́	мо́ре	здоровье́	здание́
pl.	о́кна	мо́ря	здоровья́	здания́

SUMMARY:

Most neuter nouns ending in *-о* change this to *-а* in the nominative plural, and
 those ending in *-е* change to *-я*. Sometimes there is a shift of stress.

14 Table 3 Nominative plural of adjectives

	normal	soft	mixed
sing. (masculine)	старый ленинский большой	сегодняшний	хороший
pl. (all genders)	старые ленинские большие	сегодняшние	хорошие

SUMMARY:

- Normal adjectives which end in **-ый** in the nominative masculine singular, plus a few adjectives with stressed **-ой** endings (i.e. NOT those with stems ending in **-г, -к, -х, -ж** or **-ш**) end in **-ые** in the plural.
- All other adjectives end in **-ие**.
- The adjective **третий**, and the few adjectives like it, is an exception. Its nominative plural is **третьи**.

Урок пятнадцать Lesson fifteen Пятнадцатый урок Fifteenth lesson

15

Елена Васильевна Yelena Vasilievna
идёт в магазин goes shopping

What happens

In this lesson we go shopping with Yelena Vasilievna, Volodya's mother. She goes to a grocery store and buys goods in different departments. Listen carefully to how much she pays for them, and how much change she receives—it will help you get used to Russian money.

On her way to the baker's, Yelena Vasilievna meets her friend, Maria Ivanovna. Yelena Vasilievna tells her that Volodya has come home, and that he wants to get married. She is still against the idea.

In Part 3 there are two short dialogues: in the first, a customer is buying a water melon; and in the second, Yura is trying to borrow some money from his friend Alik.

New words in this lesson

арбуз water-melon
булочная baker's
ветчина ham
виноград (*s. only*) grapes
восемьдесят eighty
гастроном grocery store
грамм gram
груша pear
двадцать twenty
двести two hundred
домашнее хозяйство domestic chores
заниматься (*1, imp.*) to be occupied,
busy with
истратить (*2, p.*) to spend
касси́рша cashier (female)
кило kilo
килограмм kilogram
курица chicken
магазин shop
масло butter
молоко milk

молочный отдел dairy department
несколько several, a number of
овощной магазин greengrocer's
покупатель (*m.*) customer
полкило half a kilo
полтора one and a half
почём? (at) how much?
продавщи́ца salesgirl
пятна́дцатый fifteen
пятна́дцать fifteen
пятьдеся́т fifty
свинина pork
семьдеся́т seventy
ско́лько? how much, how many?
со́рок forty
сто a hundred
стои́ть (*2, imp.*) to cost
триста three hundred
четы́реста four hundred
шестьдеся́т sixty
шестьсо́т six hundred

дней пять-шесть five or six days
по сорок копеек at forty kopeks
сколько лет, сколько зим! long time,
no see!

хорошее дело that's nice, what a good
thing
что у вас нового? what's new with
you?

Notes

PART 1

- 1 Елена Васильевна идёт в магазин. *Yelena Vasilievna goes to a shop.*
- 2 Елена Васильевна занимается домашним хозяйством. *Yelena Vasilievna is busy with her domestic chores.*
занимается The verb **заниматься** means *to be busy with or occupied with*, and is followed by the instrumental.
- 3 Утром она идёт в «Гастроном». *This morning she is going to the grocery store. (In the morning . . .)*
- 4 В этом магазине несколько отделов. *In this shop there are several departments.*
несколько отделов After **несколько**: *several, a number of* the word following it must go into the GENITIVE PLURAL. In the genitive plural, the noun **отдел** takes the most common ending for masculine nouns, **-ов**.
- 5 Там она покупает курицу и четыреста грамм свинины. *There she buys a chicken and four hundred grams of pork.*
 - a **четыреста** *four hundred* Learn the cardinal numbers from the complete list in Appendix 3.
 - b **грамм** Although a number is usually followed by the genitive, the form **грамм** is commonly used instead of a genitive form.
- 6 Это стоит три рубля десять копеек. *That costs three rubles, ten kopeks.* Note that no comma is needed in Russian.
 - a **три рубля** Just to remind you of the rule you met in Lesson 4 (N3), that the numbers *two, three and four* are always followed by the genitive singular. **Рубля** is the genitive singular of **рубль** (m.)
 - b **десять копеек** Numbers from *five* upwards are followed by the genitive plural, and **копеек** is the genitive plural of **копейка**. This does not include numbers ending in *1, 2, 3 or 4*, which still follow the rules you learnt in Lesson 4 (N3 and 4a).

7 В молочном отделе Елена Васильевна покупает двести грамм масла и триста грамм ветчины. *In the dairy department Yelena Vasilievna buys two hundred grams of butter and three hundred grams of ham.*

- 8 Теперь Елена Васильевна истратила пять рублей тридцать копеек. *Now Yelena Vasilievna has spent five rubles, thirty kopeks.*
Рублей is the genitive plural of **рубль**. All masculine and feminine nouns ending in **-ь** take the ending **-ей** in the genitive plural.
- 9 Потом Елена Васильевна идёт в овощной магазин. *Then Yelena Vasilievna goes to a greengrocer's. (. . . to a vegetable shop.)*
Овощной is the adjective from the noun **овощи**, which you met in Lesson 14.
- 10 Там она покупает полтора кило яблок, два кило груш и полкило винограда. *There she buys one and a half kilos of apples, two kilos of pears and half a kilo of grapes.*
 - a **Полтора** means *one and a half*, and is usually followed by the genitive singular. Here it isn't, because **кило** is a widely used abbreviation of **килограмм**, and does not decline.
 - b **Яблок** is the genitive plural of **яблоко**: *apple*. All neuter words ending in **-о** drop it in the genitive plural (i.e. have no ending).
 - c **груш** The word for a *pear* is **груша**, and feminine words ending in **-а** drop it in the genitive plural.
 - d **полкило** *half a kilo* This word does not decline.
 - e **винограда** This is in the genitive singular, because the word **виноград**: *grapes* is always singular.
- 11 Теперь Елена Васильевна истратила уже семь рублей тридцать копеек. *Now Yelena Vasilievna has already spent seven rubles, thirty kopeks.* Note the position of **уже**.
- 12 Она взяла с собой десять рублей. *She took with her ten rubles.*
 - a **она взяла** Although the future tense of **взять** is irregular (L14, N27), the past tense is formed as usual from the infinitive.
 - b **с собой** *with her* The reflexive pronoun **себя**, which you met in Lesson 3, 25b, declines in a similar way to the pronouns **я** and **ты**, except that it is not found in the nominative. See Table 4. It must be used in place of all other personal pronouns when a personal pronoun refers back to the subject, e.g.
Я взял с собой три рубля.
Они говорили о себе.
- 13 Сколько денег у неё осталось? *How much money has she got left?*
 - a **сколько?** *How much?* or *how many?*, is always followed by the

genitive. When it means *how much*? it is usually followed by the genitive singular, and when it means *how many*? it is followed by the genitive plural, e.g. **сколько масла?**: *how much butter*?; **сколько яблок?**: *how many apples*?

- b **Сколько денег?** is an exception to this rule because **деньги** is always plural, and is here in the genitive plural. **Сколько винограда?** is another exception: **виноград** is always singular, so here is in the genitive singular, although in English it would be translated as *how many grapes*?
- c **у неё осталось** This is an impersonal construction using part of the verb **остаться**: *to remain, be left*. You already know that **у неё есть** means *she has*. Learn **у неё осталось** as a similar construction.

PART 2

- 14 **Сколько стоят яблоки?** *How much are the apples? (How much cost the apples?)*
- a **Стоят** is from the verb **стоять**: *to cost*. It is most commonly found in the 3rd person, singular and plural, i.e. **стоит** and **стоят**, in such sentences as:
Сколько стоит масло?
Яблоки стоят пятьдесят копеек кило.
- b **яблоки** The nominative plural of **яблоко** is **яблоки**, and is thus an exception to the rule that neuter nouns ending in **-о** end in **-а** in the nominative plural. Make a point of learning it as an exception.
- 15 **Эти—по сорок копеек килограмм, а те—по пятьдесят.** *These are forty kopeks a kilogram, and those are fifty. (These—at forty kopeks a kilogram, and those—at fifty.)*
по The preposition **по** is here used to express the price of goods.
- 16 **А груши почём?** *And how much are the pears? (And pears at what?)*
почём? *at how much?* This is an alternative way of asking the price of something.
- 17 **А арбузов у вас нет?** *And haven't you got any water melons?*
Нет, арбузов сегодня не будет. *No, there won't be any water melons today.* In both these sentences the genitive is used because they are in the negative. This is the same point as that discussed in Lesson 4, 22b.
- 18 **Мне, пожалуйста, полтора кило яблок.** *For me, please, one and a half kilos of apples.*
- 19 **Два килограмма груш.** *Two kilograms of pears.* The word

килограмм, unlike its abbreviated form **кило**, does decline. Here it is in the genitive singular after **два**.

- 20 **Ещё что? Всё.** *Anything else? [That's] all.*
- 21 **Вот вам пять.** *Here are five. (Here to you five.)* Note that *rubles* need not be repeated.
- 22 **Пожалуйста, три рубля сдачи.** *Here you are, three rubles change.*
- 23 **Шесть бутылок молока и сто грамм колбасы.** *Six bottles of milk and a hundred grams of sausage.*
шесть бутылок The word **бутылка** has the letter **о** inserted in the genitive plural for ease in pronunciation. Many neuter and feminine nouns, with stems ending in two consonants have an **о** or **е** inserted between these two consonants in the genitive plural, e.g.
окно—о́кон;
таблетка—таблето́к.
- 24 **Рубль двадцать.** *[One] ruble, twenty.* Note that there is no need to say *kopeks*.
- 25 **Мария Ивановна, сколько лет, сколько зим!** *Maria Ivanovna, it's ages since I saw you! (How many summers, how many winters!)* This is a colloquial expression, comparable with the English *long time, no see!*
- 26 **А что у вас нового?** *And what's new with you?* Another colloquial expression for you to learn.
- 27 **Приехал? Давно?** *He's back? Has he been back long? (Come back? A long time ago?)*
- 28 **Да, дней пять-шесть . . .** *Yes, five or six days . . .*
Дней is the genitive plural of **день**.
- 29 **Хорошее дело.** *That's nice!* (or a similar expression of approval.)
- 30 **Вы думаете, хорошее . . . А я так не думаю.** *You think that's nice? Well, I don't think so.*
- 31 **А кто её знает, хорошая или плохая?** *Who knows her, [whether she's] good or bad?*

PART 3

- 32 **Пожалуйста, вот этот, десять шестьсот.** *Certainly, this one here—ten, six hundred.* It is not necessary here to say *kilos* and *grams*.
- 33 **Хорошо, сколько платить?** *Good, how much to pay?*

15 34 Мне нужно много денег. I need a lot of money.

Много, like **сколько** (N13a), is always followed by the genitive, singular or plural depending on the noun:

много ветчины: a lot of ham

много бутылок: a lot of bottles

The English will generally give you a good guide as to whether the noun should go into the genitive singular or plural, e.g. *ham* is singular, so is **ветчины**, whereas *bottles* and **бутылок** are plural.

Watch out for exceptions such as **деньги** and **виноград** (N13b).

- 35 **Понимаешь, я хочу пригласить Наташу в ресторан, а у меня только пять рублей.** *You understand, I want to invite Natasha to a restaurant, and I've only got five rubles.* Note that **понимаешь** can be used in colloquial speech in a similar way to **знаешь** (L3, N39a).

The language you've learnt

Table 1

Genitive plural of masculine nouns

Nom. s.	стол	нож	рубль	край
Gen. pl.	столов	ножей	рублей	краев

NOTE: 1 Nouns ending in **-ж**, **-ч**, **-ш** and **-щ** take **-ей**.

2 Nouns ending in **-ц** have two possible endings: **-ов** if the stress is on the last syllable, **отец—отцов**; or **-ев** if it is on a preceding syllable, **месяц—месяцев** (month).

Table 2

Genitive plural of feminine nouns

Nom. s.	комната	неделя	дверь	станция	вилка
Gen. pl.	комнат	недель	дверей	станций	вилкок

NOTE: 1 If the stem of a noun ends in two or more consonants, the last two consonants are usually separated by **-о-**, **-е-**, or **-ё-**, e.g. **таблетка—таблеток**, **девушка—девушек**, **сестра—сестёр**.

2 If the ending **-я** is preceded by two or more consonants, again one of the above vowels will be inserted, and **-ь** will replace the **-я**, thus **деревня—деревень**.

Table 3

Genitive plural of neuter nouns

Nom. s.	место	море	здание	окно
Gen. pl.	мест	морей	зданий	окон

Table 4

Reflexive pronoun себя

Nom.	—
Acc.	себя
Gen.	себя
Dat.	себе
Instr.	собой
Loc.	себе

На «Красной стреле» On the 'Red Arrow' в Ленинград to Leningrad

What happens

Volodya and Vika have decided to go to Leningrad for a few days to visit Volodya's grandfather. They are going on the overnight sleeper known as the 'Red Arrow', which leaves Moscow for Leningrad at 11.55 every night. Volodya and Vika arrange to meet at the station at 11.15, but Vika is late. They still have time, however, to find their reserved compartment. Vika is excited that they'll be in Leningrad next morning.

In Part 3 there are two conversations which might be overheard at a station: in the first, Lena apologizes for being late, and Kolya tells her they've missed the train and will have to get the next one; and in the second, a passenger is enquiring about trains to Kiev.

New words in this lesson

без without
билет ticket
внимание attention
извиняться (I, imp.) to excuse oneself
киевский Kiev (adj.)
Красная стрела the Red Arrow
купе compartment
минута minute
начало beginning, front
номер number
объявление announcement
около near
опоздание lateness
опоздать (I, p.) to be late
отправление departure
отправляться (I, imp.) to set off
отход departure
половина half
прибытие arrival
проводник steward, conductor

проводить (I, imp.) to see off, accompany
проводжающий person accompanying, seeing off
радио loud-speaker
расписание time-table
с from
спать (2, imp.) to sleep
торопиться (2, imp.) to hurry
четверть (f.) quarter
шестнадцатый sixteen
шестнадцать sixteen

который теперь час? what's the time?
ничего it's nothing, never mind
сейчас just a moment, right away
слава богу! thank God!
спокойной ночи! good night!
счастливого пути! have a good trip, bon voyage!
успеть на поезд to catch the train

Notes

PART 1

- 1 Поезд из Москвы в Ленинград отправляется в двадцать три часа пятьдесят пять минут. *The train from Moscow to Leningrad leaves at twenty-three hours, fifty-five minutes.*
- 2 Володя с Викой решили встретиться четверть двенадцатого на Ленинградском вокзале. *Volodya and Vika decided to meet at a quarter past eleven at Leningrad station.*
четверть двенадцатого at a quarter past eleven (quarter of the twelfth) To express times between the hour and half hour, Russian uses the ordinal number of the following hour (here—двенадцатого) in the genitive. A list of ORDINAL NUMBERS, which decline like adjectives, will be found in Appendix 3.

A full explanation of TELLING THE TIME IN RUSSIAN is also given in Appendix 3.

- 3 Володя вышел из дома без двадцати одиннадцать, без четверти одиннадцать он был уже около станции метро, а тринадцать минут двенадцатого он был уже на вокзале. *Volodya left home at twenty to eleven, at a quarter to eleven he was already at the tube station, and at thirteen minutes past eleven he was at the station.*
- a вышел из дома left home (went out of the house).
b около The preposition около: at, by, near is followed by the genitive.
- 4 Вики ещё не было. *Vika wasn't there yet or Vika still wasn't there.* Note this use of the impersonal не было: there was no. Вики is the genitive because it is a negative statement. Literally, this means *There was still no Vika.*
- 5 Уже почти половина двенадцатого. Вот, наконец, Вика. *Already nearly half past eleven. Here, at last, is Vika.*
- 6 Она извиняется за опоздание. Вика опоздала на пятнадцать минут. *She apologises for being late. Vika is fifteen minutes late.*
a опоздание, опоздала The verb опоздать (p.) means to be late, and is followed by на and the length of time by which the person is late. Опоздание is the noun from it and means lateness.
b извиняется за To apologise for something is expressed by извиняться за and the accusative.
- 7 У Володи и Вики места в третьем вагоне. *Volodya and Vika have places in carriage No. 3.*

- 16** а места. Место can mean *place* or *seat*, including a reserved seat or sleeping berth in a train.
 б в третьем вагоне *in carriage No. 3*, NOT *the third carriage*. This is the same point as in Lesson 7, N37.
 в третьем. Третий, -ье, -ья, and the few adjectives like it, does not have the same endings as the other adjectives you have learnt. Look in Appendix 4 under adjectives.
 8 Два места рядом—пятое и шестое—пока свободны. *The two places next [to them]—five and six—[are,] for the moment, free.*
 9 Скоро двенадцать часов. *Soon it is twelve o'clock.*
 Завтра в восемь поезд уже будет в Ленинграде. Счастливого пути! *Tomorrow at eight o'clock the train will be in Leningrad. Happy journey!* Note again that Russian often uses *уже* for emphasis when it would sound strange to say *already* in English.

PART 2

- 10 Володя, прости, пожалуйста. Я опоздала. *Volodya, excuse me, please. I'm late.* Note that the past tense of *опоздать* is used, whereas in English we use the present. See also N6.
 11 Ничего. А что с тобой случилось? *Never mind. But what happened to you?*
 Ничего: *nothing* in colloquial speech means *it's nothing, never mind, that's all right.*
 12 Я вышла без десяти одиннадцать, хотела взять такси, но свободного такси не было, и я поехала на метро. *I left at ten to eleven, wanted to take a taxi but there wasn't a free taxi, and I went on the tube.*
 свободного такси не было From the adjective you can see that this is in the genitive. This is because it is a negative statement, similar to that in N4. Такси, of course, does not decline.
 13 А ты давно пришёл? *And have you been here long? (And you a long time ago came?)*
 14 Четверть двенадцатого. *[Since] a quarter past eleven. (At a quarter of the twelfth.)*
 15 Значит, это в начале поезда. *That means its at the front of the train.*
 16 Который теперь час? *What's the time now?* Learn this way of asking the time.
 17 Успеем? *Will we make it?*
 Успеем, но нам надо торопиться. *We'll make it, but we must hurry.*

Успеем The verb *успеть* means *to be in time for*, e.g. *мы успели на поезд* means *we caught the train.*

- 18 Ну, слава богу, успели. *Well, thank God, we made it!*
 19 Объявление по радио. *Announcement over the radio.* The radio referred to here is a loud-speaker in the compartment.
 20 Внимание! До отхода поезда номер два «Красная стрела» осталось пять минут. *Attention! There are five minutes left until the departure of train No. 2, the 'Red Arrow'.* Note order.
 21 Пассажиры должны занять свои места, а провожающие—выйти из вагонов. *Passengers should take their seats and those seeing them off should leave the carriages.*
 провожающие The word *провожающий* is from the verb *проводить*: *to see off, accompany*, and means a person who is doing this.
 22 Сейчас посмотрю расписание. *I'll just have a look at the timetable.* Сейчас is often used in colloquial speech to indicate that someone will do something straight away. Sometimes it can be translated as *Just a moment, right away.* (See also L7, N23.)
 23 Прибытие в Ленинград в восемь четырнадцать. *Arrival in Leningrad at 08.14.* Note that the accusative is used for *in Leningrad* here as motion towards Leningrad is still implied.
 24 Значит, уже завтра утром мы увидим Невский проспект? *Then we'll see Nevsky Prospect tomorrow morning?* Note order and that *уже* is again used here for greater emphasis.
 25 Да, а теперь пора спать. *Yes, but now it's time to sleep.*
 Спокойной ночи! *Good night!*

PART 3

- 26 А когда приходит в Киев двадцать девятый поезд? *And when does train 29 arrive in Kiev?*
 Поезд номер двадцать девять? *Train No. 29?* Note that there are two possible ways of expressing the number of a train, bus, etc.
 27 Два билета на этот поезд, пожалуйста. *Two tickets for that train, please.* Note this further use of the preposition *на*.
 28 Пожалуйста, тридцать два сорок. *Certainly, thirty-two, forty.* This means thirty two rubles, forty kopeks.
 29 Отправление из Москвы в двадцать сорок пять. *Departure from Moscow at 20.45.*

С Киевского. From Kiev [station].

с So far you have met the preposition **с** followed by the instrumental case, meaning *with*. When it is followed by the genitive case, it has a different meaning: *from*. Learn it as the opposite of the preposition **на** when **на** means *to*. In other words, with a noun which must have **на** for *to* or *at* (L2, T10), use **с** for *from*, e.g. **на завод—с завода**.

Similarly, learn **в** and **из** as a pair, e.g. **в Москву—из Москвы**.

Володя и Вика приходят в гости к дедушке Volodya and Vika go to visit Grandfather

What happens

On arrival in Leningrad Volodya and Vika go straight to Grandfather's. Volodya is a little worried about whether Grandfather will be at home, as he didn't warn him of their intended arrival beforehand—he wanted it to be a surprise.

They catch a bus from the station towards Grandfather's flat. In Part 2 you will hear a conversation of the kind often heard inside a bus in the Soviet Union, where there are usually no conductors and passengers help each other to get tickets from automatic machines.

Grandfather opens the door, looking very smart and as if he were expecting someone. Volodya soon realizes why, when he sees a greetings telegram on the table: today is Grandfather's birthday, and he had forgotten all about it.

In Part 3 there are four dialogues: in the first, Yelena Sergeyevna is inviting Ivan Ivanovich to visit her; in the second, Aleksei mentions to Vladimir that he wants to meet Comrade Petrovsky; in the third, Valya asks where she can find Comrade Potapov, and in the final dialogue Tamara Ivanovna is welcoming her guest, Nina Petrovna.

New words in this lesson

беспокоиться (2, *imp.*) to worry
выглядеть (2, *imp.*) to look, seem
герой hero
гость (*m.*) guest
дать (1, *p.*) to give
дверь (*f.*) door
дедушка (*m.*) grandfather
день рождения birthday
жаль what a pity
ждать (1, *imp.*) to expect
заранее beforehand
имя (*n.*) Christian name
лифт lift
назвать (1, *p.*) to name, say somebody's name
однако however
опускать (1, *imp.*) to drop

опустить (2, *p.*) to drop
открыть (1, *p.*) to open
оторвать (1, *p.*) to tear off
отчество patronymic
очаровательный charming
перепутать (1, *p.*) to mix up, confuse
поздравлять (1, *imp.*) to congratulate
представить (2, *p.*) to introduce
приезд arrival
причина reason
разве really, surely not
разрешить (2, *p.*) to permit, allow
семнадцатый seventeenth
семнадцать seventeen
сомневаться (1, *imp.*) to doubt, have doubts, wonder
сообщить (2, *p.*) to inform, let know

сюрприз surprise
телеграмма telegram
товарищ Comrade
торжественно festive
точно exactly
фамилия surname
этаж floor, storey

вот не ждал! I wasn't expecting you!
давай! let's!
застать его дома to find him in

извините excuse me, I'm sorry
мне очень нужно I really must
очень приятно pleased to meet you
правда? is that so?
приходить в гости к to go to visit
разве я не говорил тебе? didn't I tell
you?, surely I told you?
смотри! watch out!
чувствуйте себя, как дома make
yourself at home

Notes

PART 1

- 1 **Володя и Вика приходят в гости к дедушке.** *Volodya and Vika go to visit Grandfather. (. . . come as guests to Grandfather.)*
Приходить в гости к, followed by the dative, is the Russian way of saying to go to visit someone.
- 2 **Поезд пришёл в Ленинград точно по расписанию.** *The train arrived in Leningrad exactly on time. (. . . exactly according to time-table.)*
по расписанию Note this use of the preposition **по**, and the dative.
- 3 **С вокзала наши герои поехали к дедушке.** *From the station our heroes went to [see] Grandfather.*
а **с вокзала** Note again this use of **с**, mentioned in Lesson 16, N30.
б **к дедушке** to see Grandfather, or to Grandfather's. Note this use of the preposition **к** followed by a person, or pronoun, in the dative.
- 4 **Дедушка живёт в Ленинграде один.** *Grandfather lives in Leningrad on his own.*
один You met this meaning of **один** in L8, N20.
- 5 **И он всегда очень рад, когда к нему приезжают гости.** *And he's always very pleased when people come to see him. (. . . when to him come guests.)*
к нему See N3b.
- 6 **Володя хорошо знал это и решил сделать дедушке сюрприз.** *Volodya well knew this and had decided to give Grandfather a surprise.*
сделать сюрприз Note that to give a surprise is expressed in Russian by the verb **сделать**.

- 7 **Он не сообщил заранее о своём приезде.** *He had not informed [him] beforehand of his arrival.*
своём For note on **свой** look back to Lesson 8, N8c.
- 8 **Она не знала, как её встретит дедушка.** *She didn't know how Grandfather would react to her. (. . . her will meet Grandfather.)*
Note order. Also note the tenses of the verbs here: **встретит** is in the future (it is the perfective form), because at the time Vika is wondering about the meeting with Grandfather, it is still in the future.
This is the same principle as that mentioned in connection with reported speech (L9, N7b).
- 9 **Володя тоже волновался. Однако совсем по другой причине.** *Volodya was also worried. But for quite a different reason. or But for a different reason altogether.*
а **однако** Another word for **but**, *however*.
б **по другой причине** Note a further use of the preposition **по**.
- 10 **Он сомневался, застанут они дедушку дома или нет.** *He was wondering whether they would find Grandfather at home or not.*
Note the order of this construction.
Он сомневался, застанут они . . . The verb **сомневаться** means to have doubts or to wonder about something. Note how it is used here: the subject and verb in the clause following it are reversed as in a question, and it is in the future tense because Volodya is actually wondering *Will they find Grandfather at home or not?*
- 11 **Володя позвонил.** *Volodya rang [the bell].* *Volodya rang* is sufficient in Russian.
- 12 **Дверь открыл сам дедушка.** *Grandfather himself opened the door.*
Note the reverse order here for greater emphasis: keeping the words **сам дедушка** back to the end of the sentence adds an element of surprise.
- 13 **Он выглядел очень торжественно. Может быть, он знал, что Вика и Володя должны приехать?** *He looked very smart. Maybe he knew that Vika and Volodya were supposed to be coming?*
а **выглядел** The verb **выглядеть** means to look, when describing someone's appearance. It is followed by an adverb, e.g.
Она хорошо выглядит сегодня.
Он плохо выглядит.
Compare the latter with the English expression *He looks poorly*, in which *poorly* was originally an adverb.

17 b торжественно The adjective **торжественный**, from which this adverb comes, is not easy to translate as it has several meanings. The verb **торжествовать** means *to celebrate*, and thus the adjective means *festive, in mood to celebrate*. In this sentence it conveys much more than the English *smart*: it gives a picture of Grandfather, dressed up in his Sunday best and in festive mood, ready to receive his guests and celebrate his birthday.

c должны приехать *were supposed to be coming* **Должны** is the plural of **должен**. Note how it is used here.

14 Володя увидел на столе телеграмму: «Поздравляем с днём рождения . . .» *Volodya saw a telegram on the table: 'Greetings on your birthday . . .'* Note order.

поздравляем This is an abbreviation of **мы поздравляем**: *we congratulate* from the verb **поздравлять**, which also means *to wish* and *to greet*. It is followed by the preposition **с** and the instrumental, e.g. **Поздравляем с Новым годом!**: *Happy New Year!* (literally, *we greet you with the New Year*).

15 Сегодня у дедушки день рождения. *Today is Grandfather's birthday.* Note the Russian way of saying that it's somebody's birthday—the 'have' construction (**у** plus gen.) is used.

PART 2

16 Садись! *Sit down!* In Lesson 1 you met **Садитесь!**, which is the more formal way of inviting someone to sit down, and is used when the person would be addressed as **вы**. **Садись** is used when people are on **ты** terms. Here it could also mean *Get in!*

17 Билет стоит пять копеек. *A ticket costs five kopeks.* On a Soviet bus one can travel any distance for five kopeks.

18 Опустите, пожалуйста, деньги и оторвите нам билеты. *Please put in the money and tear us off some tickets.* Note order.

a Опустите деньги *Put in the money* It is not necessary here to say where the money should be put; it is obvious that the passenger wants it put in the automatic ticket machine.

b опустите, оторвите Both these words are in the IMPERATIVE. In N16, it was explained that there are two ways of saying *sit down!*, one used when the person would be addressed as **ты**, the other for more than one person or for a person who would be addressed as **вы**. These are known as the 2nd person singular and plural forms. A full account of how imperatives are formed will be found in Appendix 4 under Verbs.

19 Товарищи, не опускайте пять копеек. *Comrades, don't put in five kopeks.* The passenger here needs five kopeks change, and is asking the other passengers not to drop five kopeks in the machine but to give them to her.
опускайте See N18b. This is the 2nd person plural imperative of **опускать**.

20 Кто даст пять копеек сдачи? *Who will give five kopeks change?* The verb **дать** has an irregular conjugation:

я дам	мы дадим
ты дашь	вы дадите
он даст	они дадут
она даст	они дадут

21 Вы сейчас выходите? *Are you getting off now?*

22 Разрешите пройти. *Allow me to pass.*
Разрешите Another imperative. See Appendix 4.

23 Скажи, пожалуйста, а как ты меня представишь дедушке? *Tell me, please, how will you introduce me to Grandfather?*
представишь The verb **представить**: *to introduce, present* someone takes a direct object (here **меня**) and the person to whom someone is being introduced is in the dative (**дедушке**).

24 Назову твоё имя, отчество и фамилию. *I shall say your Christian name, patronymic and surname. (I shall name your . . .)*

25 Смотри, не забудь и не перепутай. *Watch out [that you] don't forget and [you] don't muddle it up.*

a смотри This is a colloquial use of the imperative of **смотреть** (see Appendix 4) meaning *watch out, be careful*.

b забудь Imperative from **забыть**.

c перепутай Imperative from **перепутать**: *to confuse, mess up, make a muddle of something*.

26 Не шути, пожалуйста. *Don't joke, please.*
Я очень волнуюсь. *I'm very worried.*
шути Imperative from **шутить**.

27 Разве я не говорил тебе, что дедушка не знает о нашем приезде? *Didn't I tell you that Grandfather doesn't know about our arrival?* or *Surely I told you . . .*

Разве is a word added at the beginning of a question for greater emphasis. It introduces an element of surprise, anxiety or doubt (or a combination of these) into the question, e.g. **Разве он это сказал?**: *Did he really say that?*, or *Surely he didn't say that?*

17 28 Может быть, его нет в Ленинграде. *Maybe he isn't in Leningrad.*
Note again the use of the genitive in a negative statement. Learn его нет in a phrase. e.g. его нет дома: *he is not at home.*

29 Не волнуйся, Володя! *Don't worry, Volodya!*
волнуйся Imperative of волноваться. See Appendix 4.

30 На каком этаже живёт дедушка? *Which floor does Grandfather live on?*

На четвёртом. *On the fourth.* Russians count the ground floor as the first, so this would only be the third floor in England.

31 Пойдём пешком. *Let's walk. (Let's go on foot.)*

Нет, давай вызовем лифт! *No, let's call the lift!*

Давай! *Yes, let's!*

a пойдём *Let's go* This is the 1st person plural form of the imperative—*let us*. It is exactly the same as the 1st person plural of the perfective future tense (i.e. after мы). See Appendix 4.

b давай вызовем This is an alternative way of expressing *let us* . . .
Вызовем is the 1st person plural imperative as explained in Na above. Sometimes давай precedes this form of the verb. There is little difference in the meaning and use of these two forms, except that possibly the давай form is a little stronger.

c Давай! For a positive reply to an imperative in the 1st person plural, давай can be used on its own.

32 Володя? Вот не ждал . . . *Volodya? I wasn't expecting you.*
Learn Вот не ждал as a phrase.

33 Представь меня, пожалуйста, этой очаровательной девушке.
Introduce me, please, to this charming young lady.
представь Another imperative—see Appendix 4.

34 Проходите, Вика, и чувствуйте себя, как дома. *Go in, Vika, and make yourself at home. (. . . feel at home.)*

PART 3

35 Не можете? Очень жаль. *You can't? That's a great pity.*

36 Мне очень нужно встретиться с товарищем Петровским.
I really must meet Comrade Petrovsky. (To me is very necessary to meet . . .)

37 Извините, где можно видеть товарища Потапова? *Excuse me, where can I see Comrade Potapov?*
извините Another word for I'm sorry, *Excuse me.*

38 Третий этаж, левая сторона, вторая дверь направо, комната триста двадцать пять. *Third floor, to the left, second door on the right, room 325.*

39 Но я не знаю, застанете вы его там или нет. *But I don't know whether you'll find him there or not.* Note order and compare with N10.

40 Правда? Really?, Is that so? The word правда means truth, and has this additional colloquial use.

41 Спасибо, не беспокойтесь. *Thank you, don't trouble yourself.*
Беспокоиться is another verb which means to worry, be anxious. Here it could also be translated as *don't put yourself to any trouble, or don't go to any bother* . . .

42 У вас я всегда чувствую себя, как дома. *I always feel at home at your's.* Note order.

В гостях у дедушки Guests at Grandfather's

What happens

It is Grandfather's birthday and he has invited his old friends in to celebrate it. They drink toasts to Grandfather and make speeches about his fine character. Then they sing a song about Leningrad. Vika and Volodya enjoy themselves with Grandfather's guests.

In Part 2 we hear Volodya asking Grandfather about his telegrams: where and whom they're from. He is very interested as he discovers he has relatives in Baku he didn't know about.

In Part 3 there are two short dialogues: in the first, Kira asks Lyova where he was the previous evening; in the second, Anna Andreyevna asks a foreign tourist about his visit to the Soviet Union.

New words in this lesson

Архангельск Arkhangelsk
Баку (*indec.*) Baku
большой great
брат brother
верный true
весёлый happy
Владивосток Vladivostok
военный war (*adj.*), military
война war
восемнадцатый eighteenth
восемнадцать eighteen
вспоминать (*1, imp.*) to recall
герои-ленинградцы the heroic
Leningraders
Дальний Восток the Far East
двоюродный брат cousin
доброта goodness
желать (*1 imp.*) to wish
за at; in, during
завидовать (*1, imp.*) to envy
знакомый acquaintance
интересный interesting
Казань (*f.*) Kazan
качество quality

компания company, group of people
Комсомольск-на-Амуре
Komsomolsk-on-Amur
красавица-Нева the beautiful Neva
молодёжь (*f.*) youth, young people
молодость (*f.*) youth, young days
ночь (*f.*) night
песня song
племянник nephew
позавидовать (*1, p.*) to envy
поздравительный congratulatory
получать (*1, imp.*) to receive
преподавать (*1, imp.*) to teach
пример example
профессор professor
разный various
Родина Motherland
родные relations, one's own people
родственный relation
смеяться (*1, imp.*) to laugh
Советский Союз the Soviet Union
спеть (*1, p.*) to sing
строительство construction
счастье happiness

сын son
тост toast
трудолюбие diligence, industry
успеть (*1, p.*) to succeed
успех success
ученик pupil
человеческий human
честность (*f.*) honesty

быть в гостях у to be visiting
на днях the other day; in a few day's
time
предлагать тост за to propose a
toast to
произносить тост за to propose a
toast to
так? isn't that so?

Notes

PART 1

- 1 В гостях у дедушки. *Guests at Grandfather's.* In Lesson 17 you learnt the expression **приходить в гости к** with the dative: *to go to visit someone*. This construction is possible with other 'going' verbs.

Another construction, which you see here, is used when the guests are actually at their host's home, in other words when they are stationary, rather than in motion. Thus the two constructions correspond to the use of the accusative to express motion, and the locative to express location. *To be a guest at somebody's home*, or *to be visiting someone* is expressed by **быть в гостях** (locative plural of **гость**) and **у**, followed by the genitive.

- 2 Он получает поздравительные телеграммы из разных мест Советского Союза: из Владивостока, Казани, Баку, Архангельска. *He receives greetings telegrams from various places in the Soviet Union: from Vladivostok, Kazan, Baku, Arkhangelsk.*
Разных is in the genitive plural to agree with **мест**. All adjectives end in **-ых** or **-их** in the genitive plural. See complete tables of adjectives in Appendix 4, under Adjectives.
- 3 Они поздравляют его с днём рождения, желают ему доброго здоровья, хорошего настроения, успехов в делах, счастья. *They congratulate him on his birthday, wish him good health, good humour, success in everything he does, happiness.*
- a желают ему доброго здоровья After the verb **желать**: *to wish* the person goes into the dative case, and what is being wished goes into the genitive.
- b успехов In Russian the word for *success*: **успех** is often used in the plural. **Успехов в делах** means *success in his affairs* or *success in everything he does*.
- c в делах. **-ах** is the most common locative plural ending for all genders of nouns. Some end in **-ях** (**гостях**). See complete tables of nouns in Appendix 4, under Nouns.

- 18** 4 Потом все садятся за стол. *They all sit down at the table.*
 а садятся Note that садиться: to sit down implies motion towards the table, chair, etc., so is followed by the accusative case. The verb сидеть: to be sitting is followed by the locative (with prepositions на and в), or the instrumental (with preposition за). Compare these examples:
 Он садится в машину.: *He is getting into the car.*
 Они сидят в машине.: *They are sitting in the car.*
 б за стол You have met the preposition за with a 'going' verb meaning to go for, fetch (идти за). Here it means at, and is followed by the accusative (motion) or the instrumental (stationary) e.g.
 Они сидели за столом.
- 5 Один из гостей предлагает тост за здоровье дедушки. *One of the guests proposes a toast to Grandfather's health.*
 а один из гостей Note this use of из to express one out of a number.
 б предлагает тост Note this further use of the verb предлагать, which you met earlier as to suggest.
 с за здоровье. За is always used after предлагать тост, and is then followed by the accusative.
- 6 Говорит о его прекрасных человеческих качествах: честности, трудолюбии, доброте. *He talks about his fine human qualities: honesty, diligence, kindness.*
 а прекрасных, человеческих Both these adjectives are in the locative plural, to agree with качествах. You will note that the locative plural ending for adjectives is the same as the genitive plural.
 б честности, трудолюбии, доброте Note that all these are in the locative, as they are still governed by о.
- 7 «На днях я подумал, как много успел сделать Иван Ильич за свою жизнь.» *'The other day it occurred to me how much Ivan Ilych has managed to do in his life-time.'*
 а На днях is an expression meaning the other day, or a day or two ago. It can also be used of the future: in a day or two, in a few days.
 б подумал. Подумать, the perfective aspect of думать, was discussed at length in L3, N17a. Here it has a different meaning: to occur to, to suddenly think.
 с успел The verb успеть, which you met in L16, N17 meaning to be in time for, also means to manage, succeed in doing something.
 д За, with the accusative, is also used in expressions of time, and can mean in, during.
- 8 Он верный сын своей Родины. *He is a true son of his country.*
 (. . . his native land, or Motherland.)

- 9 Гости произносят тосты, шутят, смеются. *The guests pronounce toasts, joke and laugh.*
 произносят тосты. Произносить тост is an alternative to предлагать тост.
- 10 Вике и Володе весело и приятно в этой компании пожилых людей. *Vika and Volodya find it gay and pleasant in this company of elderly people. (To Vika and Volodya it is gay and pleasant . . .)*
 Note the impersonal construction here.
- 11 Потом дедушка просит спеть песню о Ленинграде: о его белых ночах, о красавице-Неве, о героях-ленинградцах . . . *Then Grandfather asks [them] to sing a song about Leningrad: about its white nights, about the beautiful Neva, about heroic Leningraders . . .*
 а о его белых ночах Leningrad, due to its northerly situation, has 'white nights' in mid-summer.
 б о красавице-Неве Literally, the beauty-the-Neva. The Neva is the river on which Leningrad is situated.
 с о героях-ленинградцах Literally, heroes-Leningraders. Here, and in Nb above, two nouns are joined together by a hyphen. When this happens, both nouns must still decline.

PART 2

- 12 Друзья, родные, знакомые . . . *Friends, relations, acquaintances . . .*
 родные The adjective родной, which means own or native, is also used as a noun, meaning relations, one's own people.
- 13 Эта—с Дальнего Востока. В молодости я работал в этих местах, на строительстве Комсомольска-на-Амуре. *That one's from the Far East. In my youth I worked in those parts, on the construction of Komsomolsk-on-Amur.*
 а взтих местах Note the locative plural of этот, это, эта.
 б Комсомольска-на-Амуре This town on the River Amur was built in the 1930s by Komsomol members, after whom it was named.
- 14 Значит, помнят о твоих делах. *That means, they remember what you did. (. . . about your deeds.)*
 а о твоих делах Note the locative plural of твой, твоё, твоя.
- 15 Разве у нас там есть родственники? *Have we really got relations there?* Note order.
 а Разве was discussed in L17, N27. Here it is used to express surprise.
 б родственники. Родственник is a noun for relation, relative.
- 16 Да, мои племянники, двоюродные братья твоего отца. *Yes, my nephews, cousins of your father.*
 двоюродные братья The word брат means brother, and its

plural is **братья**. **Двоюродный брат** is a *male cousin*, and **двоюродная сестра** is a *female cousin*.

- 17 **Мы познакомились с ним на войне.** *We got to know each other in the war.* Note again that **мы . . . с ним** means *he and I*, or *we*. Here the reflexive verb gives the meaning *each other*.
- 18 **Я часто вспоминаю о наших военных днях.** *I often recall our war days.*
 а **вспоминаю.** **Вспоминать** means to *recall, recollect*, and is followed by **о** and the locative.
 б **Военный** is an adjective from **война**. It also means *military*.
- 19 **В Казани я преподавал в институте, а теперь мои ученики—сами профессора.** *In Kazan I taught at an institute, and now my pupils are themselves professors.*
сами профессора. **Сами** is the plural of **сам**, and note that **профессор** ends in **-á** in the plural.
- 20 **Ой, Иван Ильич, вам можно позавидовать. Сколько людей о вас помнят!** *Oh, Ivan Ilych, one might envy you. So many people remember you!* Note order.
 а **Ой** is a very common exclamation in Russian.
 б **позавидовать** Note that the verb **позавидовать** is followed by the dative (here **вам**).
 с **сколько** In an exclamation **сколько** can mean *so many* or *so much*.
- 21 **Да, это приятно, что помнят, но нельзя завидовать старику. Молодёжи надо завидовать. Так?** *Yes, it's nice that they remember, but you shouldn't envy an old man. It's youth that's to be envied. Isn't that so?*

PART 3

- 22 **И вашей поездке, и тому, что вы так хорошо говорите по-русски.** *Both your trip, and the fact that you speak Russian so well.* Note order.
тому, что Note this use of **тот**. The verb **позавидовать** must be followed by the dative, so **тот** is put into the dative, and then the relative clause begins with **что**, as usual.

Володя и Вика ищут Volodya and Vika look for a
подарок дедушке present for Grandfather

What happens

Volodya and Vika want to put right their mistake of forgetting Grandfather's birthday by buying him a present. But they don't know what to give him. They decide to buy a book, but then the problem is what kind of book. They eventually choose a book on the history of Leningrad. Then they go to a record shop, but they are not sure what kind of music Grandfather likes. They settle for two copies of a record of the Rostov chimes, one for Grandfather, and one for themselves.

In Part 3 there are three dialogues: in the first, Igor Sergeyevich asks Maria Nikolayevna how old her children are; in the second, Vasily Vasilievich asks Lev Nikolayevich if he enjoyed the ballet; and in the third, Valery gives Tanechka a photograph.

New words in this lesson

альбом album
 витрина shop window
 восемьдесят eighty
 выбрать (1, p.) to choose
 дарить (2, imp.) to give
 девятнадцатый nineteenth
 девятнадцать nineteen
 искать (1, imp.) to look for
 исправить (2, p.) to put right
 картина picture
 книжный магазин book shop
 колокол bell
 лет (gen. pl.) years
 народная песня folk song
 нравиться (2, imp.) to please
 ошибка mistake
 память (f.) memory

пластинка record
 подарок present
 понравиться (2, p.) to please
 посоветовать (1, p.) advise
 Прокофьев Prokofiev
 Ростовский Rostov (adj.)
 список list
 тридцать thirty
 фотография photograph
 Эрмитаж the Hermitage
 Ясная Поляна Yasnaya Polyana

в конце концов in the end
 ему исполнилось шестьдесят девять
 he has reached sixty-nine
 по правде говоря to tell the truth
 как? what?

PART 1

- 1 **Володя и Вика ищут подарок дедушке.** *Volodya and Vika look for a present for Grandfather.*
ищут Note the conjugation in the present tense of the verb **искать**:
- | | |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| я ищ ^у | мы ищем |
| ты ищ ^{ешь} | вы ищ ^{ете} |
| он ищ ^{ет} | они ищ ^{ут} |
| она ищ ^{ет} | |
- 2 По правде говоря, они не очень хорошо знают, что обычно дарят старым людям. *To tell the truth, they don't very well know what people usually give old folk.*
- a по правде говоря This is a colloquial phrase for you to learn.
- b что обычно дарят Note the impersonal use here of the verb in the 3rd person plural without the pronoun **они**. This could also be translated as *what one usually gives* or *what is usually given*.
- c старым Adjectives in the dative plural end in **-ым** or **-им**. See Appendix 4, under Adjectives.
- d людям. Nouns in the dative plural end in **-ам** or **-ям**. See Appendix 4, under Nouns.
- 3 Наверное, такой подарок понравится дедушке. *No doubt Grandfather would like such a present. (. . . such a present will please Grandfather.)*
понравится You have already learnt the verb **любить**: *to love, to like*, which is used to describe a lasting or habitual fondness for something or someone. There is another way of expressing *to like* in Russian, using the verb **нравиться**, and its perfective form **понравиться**: *to please*. With this verb the thing which pleases is the subject, and the person who is pleased goes into the dative.
- 4 Вот они уже подходят к витринам книжного магазина. Here they are already approaching the windows of a book shop.
витринам Note that there is a special word for a *shop window*.
- 5 Вике очень понравилась книга об истории Ленинграда. *Vika liked very much a book on the history of Leningrad. (Vika very much pleased a book . . .)*
понравилась The verb **нравиться**, and especially its perfective aspect **понравиться**, is often used to describe an initial favourable impression of a person or thing.

- 6 А Володе нравится альбом картин Эрмитажа. *But Volodya likes an album of pictures in the Hermitage.*
Эрмитаж *The Hermitage* is a world-famous museum and art gallery in Leningrad.
- 7 В конце концов они покупают книгу о Ленинграде. *In the end they buy the book on Leningrad.*
в конце концов Another colloquial expression, *in the end, finally*.
- 8 Потом Вика и Володя идут в магазин пластинок. *Then Vika and Volodya go to a record shop. (. . . a shop of records.)*
- 9 Музыка нравится всем—и молодым, и пожилым, и старым. *Everyone likes music—young, middle-aged, and old. (Music pleases all . . .)*
- a Всем is the dative plural of **весь**. For a complete table see Appendix 4, under Other types of adjectives and pronouns.
- b молодым, пожилым, старым. Note that all these adjectives are in the dative plural as they are all governed by **нравится**.
- 10 Но какую музыку любит дедушка? *But what kind of music does Grandfather like?* This is a good example of the use of **любить** mentioned in N3.
- 11 Какую выбрать пластинку? *Which record to choose?* Note order.

PART 2

- 12 Володя, сколько лет дедушке? *Volodya, how old is Grandfather? (how many years to Grandfather?)* The Russian way of asking how old someone is, is **сколько лет?** (*how many years?*) and the dative of the person concerned, thus: **Сколько вам лет? Сколько лет вашей дочке?**
- 13 Вчера ему исполнилось шестьдесят девять. *Yesterday he was sixty-nine. (. . . to him was completed sixty-nine.)* Learn this expression.
- 14 Шестьдесят девять лет? *Sixty-nine years?*
Лет which is really the genitive plural of **лето**: *summer*) is only used after the numbers five upwards.
 With numbers one to four, and composite numbers with these, the word for *year* is **год**. Thus, if Grandfather were sixty-one years old, it would be: **шестьдесят один год**. After two, three and four, and composite numbers with these, the genitive singular **года** must be used, thus: **шестьдесят два года**.
- 15 Он так молодо выглядит. *He looks so young.* The use of the verb **выглядеть** was discussed in L17, N13a.

- 19 16 Вика, скоро у тебя будет день рождения. *Vika, soon it'll be your birthday.*
Да, скоро мне будет двадцать два года. *Yes, soon I'll be twenty-two years old.* A future age is expressed by the same construction with **будет**.

17 Просто не знаю. *I simply don't know or I just don't know.* This is another colloquial expression.

18 А что ты обычно даришь своему папе? *But what do you usually give your Dad?* Note the use of **свой** here.

19 Пошли! *Let's be off!* This was mentioned in L6, N27. Of course, it is only used when setting off somewhere on foot. When setting off in a car **поехали!** is used.

20 Извините. Нам надо сделать подарок. *Excuse me, we want to make [someone] a present.* Note the impersonal construction with **надо**, and that the verb **сделать** is used with **подарок**.

21 Что вы можете посоветовать? *What can you advise?* Note order.

22 Покажите, пожалуйста, ещё вон ту книгу. *Show us, please, that book over there as well.* Note order and use of **ещё**.

23 Купим дедушке и себе! *Let's buy [one] for Grandfather and [one] for ourselves!* Note the use of the reflexive pronoun **себя**.

24 На память о нашей поездке! *To remind us of our trip. (In memory of...)*

PART 3

25 Я всегда думал, что вам лет тридцать пять. *I always thought you were about thirty-five.*

лет тридцать пять In expressions of age a reversal of the usual order indicates approximation or vagueness.

26 Танечка, я хочу подарить вам эту фотографию на память о нашей поездке в Ясную Поляну. *Tanechka, I want to give you this photograph to remind you of our trip to Yasnaya Polyana.*

Ясную Поляну. Ясная Поляна was Lev Tolstoy's country estate, and lies 140 miles south of Moscow. It is now a museum.

Урок двадцать Lesson twenty Двадцатый урок Twentieth lesson

20

В кафе-мороженое In an ice-cream café

What happens

Volodya and Vika were walking about Leningrad, but it was very hot, so they decided to have a rest and some refreshments in an ice-cream café. In the café a young man came up to their table, who turned out to be a friend of Vika's. Vika and her friend Victor have a lot to talk about; they are students together and have many mutual acquaintances. Volodya, however, gets very bored.

In Part 3 there are two short dialogues: in the first, Alyosha nearly misses a train; and in the second, Dimitry asks Vyacheslav what he's done since he finished at university.

New words in this lesson

аспирант graduate student
аспирантура postgraduate course
аспирант-физик postgraduate physicist

беречь (I, imp.) to take care of
брюнет dark-haired man
ведь after all
вскоре soon after
выйти замуж (I, p.) to get married (take a husband)

вырасти (I, p.) to grow up
высокий tall
глава chapter
двадцатый twentieth
диссертация thesis, dissertation
жара heat
жаркий hot
исчезнуть (I, p.) to vanish
казанский Kazan (adj.)
кафе-мороженое (indec.) ice-cream café

кончить (2, p.) to finish
лимонад lemonade
МГУ—Московский государственный университет MGU—Moscow State University

Минск Minsk
незнакомый unknown
неизвестный unknown
немножко a little
неожиданно unexpected
общий common
отдохнуть (I, p.) to rest
очки spectacles
помочь (I, p.) to help
попасть (I, p.) to land up
привезти (I, p.) to bring (by transport), to convey
привести (I, p.) to bring (on foot), to lead
привык, -ла accustomed
прочсть (I, p.) to read through, finish reading
результат result
сесть (I, p.) to sit
совет advice
спасти (I, p.) to save
стать (I, p.) to become
умереть (I, p.) to die
успешно successfully
худой thin
экзамен examination

ему надоел, -о, -а he was bored, 'fed up'
и всё that's all, that was all
кажется it seems, apparently
лечь в больницу to go into hospital
на улице outside
не только . . . , но и . . . not only . . . ,
but also . . .
по делам on business
поступить в аспирантуру to be
accepted for, start a postgraduate
course

прежде всего first of all
прошу прощения I beg your pardon
сдать экзамен to take an
examination
сколько сегодня градусов? what's the
temperature today?
успешно сдать экзамен to pass an
examination

Notes

PART 1

- 1 **В кафе-мороженое.** *In an ice-cream café.* Мороженое is another noun which looks like an adjective. Note that two nouns have again been joined by a hyphen. The signs over Russian cafés often indicate what is available inside.
- 2 **Они сели за столик.** *They sat down at a small table.* сели. Сесть is the perfective aspect of садиться. Note carefully that one is reflexive and the other is not. This does not affect the meaning.
- 3 **Официант принёс им мороженое и лимонад.** *The waiter brought them ice-cream and lemonade.* принёс The past tense forms of the verb принести are: принёс, принесло, -а; -и.
- 4 **На улице было жарко, а здесь Вика и Володя могли немножко отдохнуть.** *Outside it was hot, but here Vika and Volodya could rest a little. (On the street . . .)* могли The past tense forms of the verb мочь are: мог, могло, -а; -и.
- 5 **К их столику подошёл высокий худой брюнет в очках.** *A tall, thin, dark-haired man with glasses came up to their table.*
 - a **брюнет** While in English we use the word *brunette* only of a woman, in Russian there is a masculine and a feminine form: **брюнет, брюнетка.**
 - b **в очках** Note that in Russian it is *in glasses.*
- 6 **Он аспирант химического факультета МГУ.** *He is a graduate student in the Chemistry Faculty of MGU.*

МГУ is an abbreviation of Московский государственный университет: *Moscow State University.*

- 7 **Виктор приехал в Ленинград по делам.** *Victor has come to Leningrad on business.*
по делам Learn по делам as a phrase.
- 8 **А в это кафе он попал случайно.** *And he found himself in this café quite by chance. (And into this café he came by chance.)*
попал The verb попасть is used colloquially to mean *to find oneself in, to land up in.*
- 9 **Катя Комарова успешно сдала экзамены и поступила в аспирантуру.** *Katya Komarova passed her exams and has gone on to postgraduate work.*
 - a **успешно сдала экзамены** The phrase сдать экзамены means *to take, sit exams*, and the addition of the word успешно: *successfully* changes this to mean *to be successful in, to pass exams.*
 - b **поступила в аспирантуру** The verb поступить has various meanings: поступить в университет means *to enter, go up to university.* Поступить в аспирантуру means *to be accepted for a postgraduate course, or to start postgraduate work.*
- 10 **У Пети Юшина сын уже совсем вырос.** *Petya Yushin's son is already quite big.*
 - a **У Пети Юшина** Note this colloquial use of the 'have' construction: у Пети Юшина сын, rather than сын Пети Юшина.
 - b **вырос** The past tense forms of the verb вырасти: *to grow, grow up* are вырос, выросло, -а; -и.
- 11 **А профессор Ефимов умер.** *But Professor Yefimov has died.*
умер The past tense forms of the verb умереть are: умер, умерла; умерли.
- 12 **Он всегда много работал, не берёг себя, неожиданно лёг в больницу и вскоре умер.** *He always worked hard, didn't look after himself, went into hospital unexpectedly and soon died.*
 - a **берёг** The past tense forms of the verb беречь: берёг, берегло, -а; -и.
 - b **лёг в больницу** Note the Russian way of saying *to go into hospital: лечь в больницу (to lie into hospital).* The verb лечь has similar endings in the past tense to беречь in Na above.
- 13 **А Саша Петров совсем пропал.** *And Sasha Petrov has disappeared altogether.*
пропал The verb пропасть, not to be confused with попасть (N8), means *to disappear, be missing.*

20 14 Работает на Дальнем Востоке, а где—неизвестно. [*He's working in the Far East, but where—nobody knows. (. . . is unknown.)*]

15 И Ирина Доронина исчезла. Уехала с мужем в Минск—и всё. *And Irina Doronina has disappeared. Went with her husband to Minsk—and that was the last we heard. (. . . and [that was] all.)* исчезла The verb **исчезнуть** also means *to disappear, vanish*. The past tense forms are: **исчез, -ло, -ла; -ли.**

16 Володе стало скучно. *Volodya became bored.* Стало, from the verb **стать**: *to become* can also be used in an impersonal construction, as here.

17 Ему надоел этот разговор о незнакомых людях. *He was tired of this conversation about people he didn't know. (To him was boring this conversation about unknown people.)* ему надоел The verb **надоеть** means *to tire, bore, annoy*, and it is often used colloquially in this construction to express *to be tired, 'fed up' with something*. Note that the verb agrees with the thing which is boring, and the person is in the dative.

PART 2

18 Сколько сегодня градусов? *What's the temperature today? (How many today degrees?)* Сколько градусов?: *how many degrees?* is a common way of asking what the temperature is in Russian.

19 Ой, я не привыкла к такой жаре. *Oh, I'm not used to such heat.* Я тоже не привык. *I'm not used to it either.* привыкла, привык к This is the past tense of the verb **привыкнуть**: *to become accustomed to*, and is used like a short adjective. It is always followed by **к** and the dative.

20 Правда, я чуть не умерла. *Really, I was almost dying.* Чуть не with a verb expresses *to nearly or almost do something, e.g. я чуть не опоздал на поезд: I nearly missed the train.*

21 Но я тебя спас. *But I saved you.* спас Note the past tense forms of the verb **спасти**: **спас, -лó, -á; -й.**

22 Да, ведь ты чуть не умерла от этой жары. *Yes, you said you were nearly dying from the heat.*

Но ведь не ты привёл меня в это кафе. Я тебя привела. *But after all it wasn't you who brought me into this café. I brought you.*

а ведь The word **ведь**, like **разве**, is used for emphasis, and can be translated in different ways.

20 b привёл, привела These are from the verb **привести** which is the second verb you have met meaning *to bring*. In Part 1 (N3) you saw **Официант принёс мороженое** and from this you can see that the verb **принести** has the sense of *carrying*, and is usually used for bringing *things*. **Привести** is usually used for bringing people, in the sense of *lead or escort*.

23 Ну, хорошо, ты сама себя спасла. *Well, all right, you saved yourself.* сама себя Note the use of the emphatic pronoun **сам**, and the reflexive pronoun **себя**. The Russian means literally: *you yourself saved yourself*.

24 Не только себя, но и тебя. *Not only myself, but you too.* И can be used as another word for *also, too*. Note where it comes in this sentence.

25 Прошу прощения, но вас зовут Вика, и мы, кажется, знакомы. *I beg your pardon, but your name is Vika, and I think we know each other.*

a Прошу прощения Literally, *I ask your forgiveness*. This is an extremely polite way of saying *I'm sorry*, or *I beg your pardon*.

b Кажется is a very colloquial word for *it seems*, or *I think*. Note where it comes in this phrase.

c знакомы This is a short adjective meaning *acquainted*, from the verb **знакомить**.

26 Прежде всего, здравствуй! *First of all, hello!* прежде всего This is a phrase meaning *first of all, first and foremost*.

27 Познакомься, пожалуйста, с моим другом. *Please meet my friend. (Become acquainted, please, with my friend.)*

Познакомься You met this verb in Lesson 8 (10a). Note this use of it in the imperative.

28 Очень приятно. *It's very nice to meet you.* This is an alternative to **очень рад** as a polite reply after being introduced to someone.

29 Я привёз профессору Виноградову главу моей диссертации. *I brought Professor Vinogradov a chapter of my thesis.* привёз So far you have met two verbs *to bring*: **принести** and **привести**, both of which mean to bring when the person concerned, whether carrying or leading, is *on foot*. When the bringing is being done *by vehicle*, another verb is used: **привезти**. This verb is used for conveying a person or a thing. The imperfective aspects of these verbs are **приносить, приводить** and **привозить**. **Привезти** is used

here because Victor is bound to have come to Leningrad by some means of transport.

- 30 Он прочёл твою работу? *Has he read your work?*
 прочёл This is from прочесть, which is an alternative perfective aspect of читать to прочитать, which you met in L9, 13a.
- 31 Дал мне несколько советов. Они мне очень помогли. *He gave me some advice. It helped me very much.*
 несколько советов The word совет: advice exists in the singular, but is often found in the plural.
- 32 Не будем говорить о делах. *But don't let's talk shop. (. . . about business.)*
- 33 Ты знаешь, что Наташа вышла замуж? *Did you know that Natasha has got married?*
 вышла замуж In Lesson 3 you met the verb жениться which means to get married, of a man. Выйти замуж means to get married, of a woman.
- 34 Замуж вышла? За кого же? За аспиранта-физика. *Got married? To whom? To a postgraduate physicist.* Note that выйти замуж is followed by за and the accusative (which will usually look like the genitive since bridegrooms are masculine animates).
- 35 А у Ларисы Ивановой дочка уже совсем выросла. *And Larissa Ivanova's daughter is already quite big.*
 Ивановой Feminine surnames ending in -ина or -ова are declined as feminine adjectives, except in the accusative, where they take the noun ending -y.
- 36 Видишь, как быстро время проходит. *You see how quickly time passes.*
 Видишь is used in conversation in the same way as знаешь and понимаешь.

PART 3

- 37 Просто водитель такси сначала привёз меня не на Рижский вокзал, а на Казанский. *Simply the taxi driver took me first not to Riga station, but to Kazan station.* Note that привезти really means to convey, and can sometimes mean take, as well as bring.

На экскурсии в Эрмитаже On a trip to the Hermitage

What happens

While in Leningrad, Volodya and Vika intend to visit some of the museums and art galleries, and today they go to the Hermitage. There is so much to see there, they find they will have to come three days running in order to see even a small part of the Hermitage's treasures!

In Part 2 Volodya and Vika are discussing other museums they would like to go to. Vika advises Volodya to go to the museum on the history of Leningrad. She then asks when they can go to the Russian Museum, another art gallery in Leningrad, but dedicated to Russian art only. She also asks Volodya if he has been to Repino, a village named after the Russian artist, Repin. The house in which he worked has been turned into a museum.

In Part 3 there are three dialogues: in the first, Sonya and Yury are discussing going to the museum at Pushkin's former flat; in the second, Vera asks Natasha when she would have some time to meet her brother; and in the third, Maria Ivanovna bumps into Nikolai Petrovich, whom she hasn't seen for a long time.

New words in this lesson

больше more
 восхищаться (1, imp.) to be carried away, be 'mad about'
 голландский Dutch
 дворец palace
 живой live, living
 икона icon
 итальянский Italian
 мальчик boy
 мастер master
 материалы material, exhibits
 музей museum
 музей-квартира Пушкина the museum of Pushkin's flat

мысль (f.) idea
 небольшой small
 невозможно impossible
 оборона defence
 памятник statue
 познакомить (2, p.) to introduce
 послезавтра the day after tomorrow
 простота simplicity
 Рембрандт Rembrandt
 Репин Repin
 Репино Repino
 Русский музей the Russian Museum
 сильный strong
 скромность (f.) modesty

Смольный Smolny
 советовать (1, imp.) to advise
 сразу straight away
 студент student
 сходить (2, imp.) to go down
 Третьяковская галерея the
 Tretyakovskaya Gallery
 узнать (1, p.) to recognise
 Финляндский вокзал Finland
 station
 французский French

художник-импрессионист
 Impressionist (painter)
 царский tsar's
 школа school

прекрасная мысль! good idea!
 произвести впечатление to make an
 impression
 больше всего above all, more than
 anything else
 уже не no longer

Notes

PART 1

- 1 На экскурсии в Эрмитаже. (*On an excursion in the Hermitage.*)
- 2 Володя и Вика очень интересуются ленинградскими музеями. *Volodya and Vika are very interested in the Leningrad museums.*
- a интересуются To remind yourself of the use of the verb интересоваться, look back at Lesson 8 (2a).
- b ленинградскими Adjectives in the instrumental plural end in -ими or -ыми. See Appendix 4 under Adjectives.
- c музеями Nouns in the instrumental plural end in -ями or -ами. See Appendix 4 under Nouns.
- 3 Раньше Эрмитаж был царским дворцом, а теперь это музей. *Formerly the Hermitage was the Tsar's palace, but now it is a museum.*
 был царским дворцом In a statement using the verb быть in the past tense, the nouns and adjectives following it are sometimes in the instrumental. The instrumental is used to describe a temporary state, something which was true only for a limited period of time, and may not now be so. A clear example of this is seen in the sentence above, as the Hermitage was formerly the Tsar's palace, but is no longer.
 The nominative is used to express a permanent fact, e.g. Иван был брат Сони.
- 4 Первый раз Володя был здесь, когда ещё был маленьким мальчиком. *The first time Volodya was here [was] when he was still a little boy.* Note again the use of the instrumental, as explained in N3.

- 5 Когда он был студентом, он восхищался картинами художников-импрессионистов. *When he was a student he was mad about the pictures of the Impressionists.*
- a восхищаться The verb восхищаться means to be very enthusiastic about, to be delighted with, and is followed by the instrumental, in the same way as интересоваться and любоваться.
- b художников-импрессионистов (painters-Impressionists) Note again the combining of two nouns by means of a hyphen.
- 6 А теперь ему больше всего нравятся картины итальянских мастеров. *But now he prefers the pictures of the Italian masters.*
 ему больше всего нравятся. Больше всего: more than everything else, above all, used in combination with нравиться means to like most of all, to prefer.
- 7 Она целыми часами может стоять у картин Рембрандта. *She can stand for hours on end by Rembrandt's pictures.* Note order.
 целыми часами Learn целыми часами as an expression meaning for hours on end, for hours at a time.
- 8 Наши герои не знают, в какой зал пойти сначала. *Our heroes don't know which room to go into first.* Note order.
- 9 Наверное, им надо будет прийти в Эрмитаж ещё завтра и послезавтра. *They'll probably have to come to the Hermitage again tomorrow, and the day after tomorrow.* Note order.
 им надо будет they will have to . . . The future tense of impersonal expressions with надо, нужно, можно, нельзя etc., is formed by adding будет.
- 10 Но ведь это только небольшая часть Эрмитажа! *But really that is only a small part of the Hermitage!* Note again the use of ведь for emphasis.

PART 2

- 11 Да, я очень советую тебе сходить туда. *Yes, I very much advise you to go down there.*
- a я советую тебе Note that the verb советовать is followed by the dative.
- b сходить The verb сходить: to go down has a similar colloquial use to the English.
- 12 Но сам Ленинград—его дома, памятники, улицы, площади—живая история. *But Leningrad itself—its buildings, monuments, streets and squares—is living history.*

- 21 13** Но в музее на меня произвели очень большое впечатление материалы об обороне Ленинграда. *But in the museum, the exhibits on the defence of Leningrad made a very great impression on me.* Note order.
- a** на меня произвели очень большое впечатление The expression произвести впечатление на, followed by a noun or pronoun in the accusative (which may look like the genitive), means *to make an impression on* somebody. The thing which is making the impression is the subject, and the verb must agree with it.
- b** материалы Although the singular word материал does exist in Russian, it is more commonly found in the plural, and is a collective word meaning *information, material* on something or, as here, *exhibits*.
- 14** А иконы в Третьяковской галерее ты видела? *And have you seen the icons in the Tretyakovskaya Gallery?*
Третьяковской галерее The Tretyakovskaya Gallery is in Moscow, and is dedicated to the work of Russian artists of the Russian and Soviet periods.
- 15** Конечно, мы часто ходим с моими друзьями в Третьяковскую галерею. *Of course, my friends and I often go to the Tretyakovsky Gallery.*
- a** мы . . . с моими друзьями Note again that мы . . . с моими друзьями means *I and my friends*.
- b** часто ходим Note this very clear example of the use of the indefinite form of a 'going' verb.
- 16** Там стоит прекрасный памятник Ленину. *A fine statue of Lenin stands there.* Note order.
- a** памятник You have met the word памятник meaning a *monument*, or a *historic building*. It can also mean a *statue*.
- b** Ленину Note that in Russian it is a statue *to* someone, i.e. the dative is used.
- 17** А мне больше нравится памятник Ленину у Смольного. *But I prefer the statue of Lenin at Smolny.*
у Смольного. Смольный is the commonly used abbreviation of the *Smolny Institute*, in Leningrad, which was the headquarters of the Central Committee of the Petrograd Soviet during the Bolshevik Revolution in 1917. Naturally, it is now a historic building and houses a museum dedicated to Lenin.
- 18** Я была в Смольном, в музее Ленина, и на меня очень сильное впечатление произвела скромность и простота Ленина-

- человека. *I've been to Smolny, to the Lenin Museum, and I was deeply impressed by the humility and simplicity of Lenin as a person.*
- a** на меня очень сильное впечатление произвела . . . This expression was discussed in 13a. Note that different adjectives can be used with it: большое above, or сильное, as here, which means *strong*.
- b** Ленина-человека Literally *Lenin the man*. Note again the two nouns joined by a hyphen.

PART 3

- 19** Прекрасная мысль. *That's a splendid idea.* Learn this as a colloquial phrase.
- 20** Послезавтра тоже невозможно. *The day after tomorrow is also impossible.*
Невозможно is the opposite of можно and means *impossible* or *it is impossible*. Note that нельзя is also the opposite of можно, but has the meaning of *must not*.
- 21** Сразу с работы я должна поехать в гости. *Straight from work I must go to visit [someone].*
- 22** Простите, я вас не узнал. *Excuse me, I didn't recognise you.*
узнал is from узнать, the perfective form of знать, and can also mean *to get to know, learn*.
- 23** Теперь он уже не студент. *Now he's no longer a student.*
Он уже давно врач. *He's been a doctor for a long time.* Note the use of уже in both these sentences, and particularly that уже не means *no longer*.
- 24** Скоро его дочка будет студенткой. *Soon his daughter will be a student.*
будет студенткой In N3 it was mentioned that after быть in the past tense, where the statement is true for a limited period of time, the instrumental is used. The instrumental is *always* used with the future tense of быть since a statement in the future can never have the force of an established fact.
- 25** Она ещё учится. Но скоро она будет инженером. *She's still studying. But soon she will be an engineer.* Here is another example of the point explained in N24. Note that there is no feminine form of the word инженер, and so it has its normal masculine ending even though here it is referring to a female.

Разговоры по телефону Telephone conversations

What happens

In this lesson we hear first of all what Volodya and Vika have managed to see of Leningrad and the surrounding area. Today they have been to Pushkin and Pavlovsk, and stayed much longer than they intended. On his return to Leningrad, Volodya remembered that he wanted to ring up his friend, Sergei. Volodya doesn't have the right change for the telephone, so he asks a passer-by if she can give him change for twenty kopeks. Sergei isn't at home, but his mother takes a message for Volodya. Vika wants to telephone her parents, who live in Pitsunda, in Georgia, and so she has to book the call through the intercitty service.

In Part 3 there are three dialogues: in the first, Kolya rings up Vera, who isn't at home, but has left a message for him; in the second, Irina asks a foreigner about his trip to the Soviet Union; in the third, Fyodor asks Grisha if he's free to go to the theatre with him that evening.

New words in this lesson

вернуться (1, p.) to return
вспомнить (2, p.) to remember
мать (f.) mother
междугородная inter-city,
long distance
монета coin
назад ago
ноль (m.) zero, '0'
оказаться (1, p.) to turn out to be
Павловск Pavlovsk
передать (1, p.) to pass on
(a message)
Петродворец Petrodvorets
поблизости nearby
поговорить (2, p.) to have a word
полчаса (m.) half an hour
после after
предполагать (1, imp.) to intend,
propose
приятель (m.) friend
пробыть (p.) to be

прохожая passer-by (female)
Пушкин Pushkin
справочное enquiries
срочно urgently
станция telephone exchange
суметь (1, p.) to manage,
succeed
телефон-автомат call-box
телефонистка operator (female)
тому назад ago
тут here
где здесь поблизости . . . ? is there
a . . . near here?
набрать номер to dial a number
позовите, пожалуйста, Сергея
please may I speak to Sergei?
(please call Sergei)
что ему передать? can I give him a
message? (what shall I pass on to
him?)

Notes

PART 1

- 1 **Разговоры по телефону** (*Conversations on the telephone.*)
по телефону Note this use of the preposition **по**. *On the telephone* or *by telephone* is always **по телефону**.
- 2 **Володя и Вика приехали в Ленинград пять дней назад, и за это время они сумели побывать в Эрмитаже, в Русском музее и в Петродворце.** *Volodya and Vika arrived in Leningrad five days ago, and in that time they have managed to visit the Hermitage, the Russian Museum and Petrodvorets.*
 - a **пять дней назад** To express a certain time ago, the word **назад** is used after the length of time.
 - b **за это время** Learn this as a phrase meaning *in that time*, or *during that time*.
 - c **Петродворец** *Petrodvoretz*, literally *Peter's palace*, is situated a few miles out of Leningrad. The park contains a beautiful cascade of fountains and statues.
- 3 **Сегодня они были в Пушкине и Павловске.** *Today they've been in Pushkin and Pavlovsk.*
 - a **Пушкин** *Pushkin* was formerly called **Царское село**: *the Tsar's village*, and was renamed after the poet Pushkin (1799-1837), who went to school there.
 - b **Павловск** *Pavlovsk* is another interesting place to visit outside Leningrad. Here, too, there is a beautiful palace and estate, named after Tsar Paul.
- 4 **Они предполагали поехать туда часа на три-четыре, а провели там целый день.** *They intended to go there for three or four hours, and spent the whole day there.*
 - a **предполагали** Do not confuse the verb **предполагать**: *to intend, propose to do something* with **предлагать**: *to propose*, as in **предлагать тост**.
 - b **провели** The verb **провести** means *to spend* time, and the time spent must be in the accusative.
- 5 **Когда они вернулись в Ленинград, Володя вспомнил, что он срочно должен позвонить своему приятелю Сергею.** *When they returned to Leningrad, Volodya remembered that he must urgently ring up his friend Sergei.* Note the position of **срочно**: *urgently, quickly*. **приятелю** This is yet another word for *friend*, *pal*. It denotes a less emotional attachment than **друг**, but more than **товарищ** or **знакомый**.

- 22** 6 **Вот телефон-автомат.** *Here is the call-box.*
телефон-автомат The Russian word **автомат** means any kind of automatic machine which works when coins are dropped into it. The ticket machine in a bus is also an **автомат**. Here **телефон-автомат** is a public telephone with a coin-box.
- 7 **Володя опустил монету и набрал номер.** *Volodya dropped in a coin and dialled the number.*
- 8 **Однако Сергея не оказалось дома.** *However, it turned out that Sergei wasn't in.* Note order.
Сергея не оказалось дома The verb **оказаться** means *to turn out, happen*, and it is often used in colloquial speech in this impersonal form. **Сергея** is in the genitive because it is a negative statement (compare with **его не было дома**).
- 9 **Он будет через два-три часа.** *He'll be [in] in two or three hours.*
 There is no need to repeat **дома** here as it is still understood from the sentence before.
- 10 **Когда они вернулись домой, Вика решила позвонить своим родителям на Пицунду.** *When they returned home, Vika decided to ring up her parents in Pitsunda.*
на Пицунду Note that this is in the accusative, as in Russian a call is always said to be made *to* a place.
- 11 **Сначала она позвонила на станцию и заказала разговор.** *First she rang the exchange and ordered the call.*
 а **станцию** The word **станция** is also used for a *telephone exchange*.
 б **заказала разговор** It is still normal practice in the Soviet Union to book trunk calls through the intercity exchange.

PART 2

- 12 **А сейчас сколько времени?** *And what's the time now?* This is an alternative way of asking the time to **Который час?**
- 13 **Значит, мы пробыли здесь уже шесть с половиной часов!** *That means we've been here six and a half hours already!*
пробыли The prefix **про-** is sometimes added to a verb to indicate that the action is continuous over a length of time.
- 14 **Да, с двенадцати до половины седьмого.** *Yes, from twelve till half past six.*
 а **с двенадцати до половины** Note this use of the prepositions **с** and **до**, both followed by the genitive, in expressions of time.

- б **с двенадцати** All numbers which end in **-ь** decline like a feminine noun ending in **-ь**, and thus have a genitive in **-и**. In some numbers the **-и** is stressed, including the numbers 5–10 and 20, e.g. **пяти́, восьми́, двадцати́**. Note also the following genitive forms: **часу́** (from **час**: *one o'clock*); **двух, трёх, четырёх** (from **два, три, четыре**). From *one o'clock to two o'clock* is **с часу́ до двух**; and from *three o'clock to four o'clock* is **с трёх до четырёх**.
- 15 **Да, мне нужно позвонить.** *Yes, I have to make a phone-call.*
- 16 **А где здесь поблизости телефон-автомат?** *And where is there a call-box near here?* Note order.
где здесь поблизости . . . ? This is a useful phrase for you to learn. It means *Where is the nearest . . . ?* or *Where is there a . . . near here?*, and can be used in different situations, e.g. **Где здесь поблизости остановка автобуса? Где здесь поблизости ресторан?**
- 17 **Позовите, пожалуйста, Сергея.** *Please call Sergei.* Learn this phrase as it is the standard way of asking for someone to be called to the telephone.
- 18 **Часа через два-три.** *In about two to three hours.* Note again the reversal of the usual order to denote uncertainty.
- 19 **А что ему передать?** *And what shall I tell him?* This is another phrase commonly used in telephone conversations. It is equivalent to the English *Can I take a message?* The verb **передать** means *to pass on* something, and the person to whom the message is passed on is in the dative.
- 20 **Передайте, пожалуйста, что звонил Володя Иванов и просил его позвонить завтра утром.** *Tell him, please, that Volodya Ivanov rang and asked him to ring tomorrow morning.* Note order.
звонил Note that the imperfective aspect is used here as Volodya's action has not been completed—he hasn't spoken to Sergei.
 Compare these two examples:
Я ему позвонил вчера. : *I rang him up yesterday (i.e. and spoke to him);*
Я ему звонил много раз вчера. : *I rang him several times yesterday (and did not manage to speak to him).*
- 21 **А он ваш телефон знает?** *And does he know your telephone [number]?* In colloquial speech **телефон** is sometimes used as an abbreviation for *telephone number*.

- 22** Да, после девяти. *Yes, after nine.*
После is a preposition meaning *after*, and is always followed by the genitive.
- 23** Хорошо, я передам. *All right, I'll pass it on.*
я передам Note that **передать** conjugates like **дать**.
- 24** Это справочное? *Is that Enquiries?*
справочное This is really an abbreviation of **справочное бюро**, which means an *Enquiry office*, or *desk*. Here it is equivalent to the Directory Enquiries.
- 25** Как позвонить на междугородную? *How do I get through to the intercity service?*
междугородную This is another commonly used abbreviation. Note again the use of **на** and the accusative.
- 26** Ждите. Позвоним через полчаса. *Wait. We'll call you in half an hour.*

PART 3

- 27** Нет, Веры нет дома. Она просила вам передать, что придёт в девять часов. *No, Vera isn't at home. She asked me to tell you that she'll come in at nine o'clock.*
- 28** Пожалуйста, звоните с девяти до десяти. *Please ring between nine and ten. (From nine to ten.)*
- 29** Я приехал две недели тому назад. *I arrived two weeks ago.*
Тому назад is another possible way of saying *ago*. See also N2a.
- 30** Не знаю точно. Я хочу поговорить об этом с моими друзьями. *I don't know exactly. I want to have a word about it with my friends.*
поговорить The prefix **по-** has a limiting influence on certain verbs, in that it sometimes means the action will be done just for a short time. Here **поговорить** means *to have a word, have a short discussion about something*.

Неожиданные трудности Unexpected difficulties

What happens

Volodya and Vika want to go and visit Vika's parents in Pitsunda, but unfortunately it is getting near the end of Vika's vacation. She decides to write to the dean of her faculty and ask for permission to return to university a week late. They both have a lot to do before leaving Leningrad, and they spend the day arranging their departure from Leningrad and their arrival in Pitsunda.

In Part 3 there are three dialogues: in the first, Valery and Alik are discussing when to go to the museum; in the second, Ivan Ivanovich asks a typist if she can finish some work for him by Friday; in the third, Inna is asking Zakhar about his plans for his summer holiday.

New words in this lesson

август August
апрель (m.) April
весенний spring (adj.)
всё-таки all the same
гостеприимство hospitality
гостиница hotel
декабрь (m.) December
декан dean
дождь (m.) rain
задача problem
занятия studies
заявление application, notice
июль (m.) July
июнь (m.) June
к, ко by
личный personal, private
лично personally
май (m.) May
март March
машинистка typist
написать (l, p.) to write
неожиданный unexpected
ноябрь (m.) November
обещать (l, imp.) to promise
октябрь (m.) October

относиться к (2, imp.) to be disposed towards
письмо letter
план plan
поблагодарить (2, p.) to thank
послать (l, p.) to send
постараться (l, p.) to try
появляться (l, imp.) to appear
разрешение permission
сентябрь (m.) September
симпатичный sympathetic, nice
сможу (l, p.) to be able
становиться (2, imp.) to become
тепло warm
трудность (f.) difficulty
трудный difficult
уверен, -а sure
учебный год academic year
цветок (pl. цветы) flower
февраль (m.) February
число date
январь (m.) January

во-первых firstly

23 во-вторых secondly
в-третьих thirdly
это зависит от it depends on
идёт дождь it rains, it is raining
иметь в виду to have in mind
как правило as a rule

мне всё равно it's all the same to me
он хорошо ко мне относится he is
well disposed towards me
по крайней мере at least
решить задачу to solve a problem

Notes

PART 1

- 1 Володя с Викой приехали в Ленинград двадцать третьего августа, а сегодня уже двадцать восьмое. *Volodya and Vika arrived in Leningrad on the twenty-third of August, and today is already the twenty-eighth.*

DATES

Look first at the second date in this sentence, as it is in the nominative: **двадцать восьмое**. You will see that dates in Russian are expressed by the ordinal number with the neuter ending (to agree with **число**: *date* which is usually omitted).

To express *on* a certain date, the genitive is used: **двадцать третьего августа**. More examples of dates will be found in Appendix 3.

The month always goes into the genitive. Here is a list of months, all of which are masculine: **январь, февраль, март, апрель, май, июнь, июль, август, сентябрь, октябрь, ноябрь, декабрь**. Months do not have capital letters in Russian.

- 2 Через три дня должны начаться занятия в университете. *In three days studies at the university are supposed to begin.*
Note the order and use of **должен**.
- 3 Но не стоит ехать на Кавказ только на один день. *But it's not worth going to the Caucasus just for one day.*
a не стоит Learn **не стоит** as an expression meaning *it's not worth* . . .
b на Кавказ The word **Кавказ** covers the area around the range of mountains known as the Caucasus, and includes Georgia, Armenia and Azerbaidjan.
- 4 Теперь всё зависит от Вики. *Now it all depends on Vika.*
всё зависит от Learn **всё зависит от**, followed by the genitive, as an expression meaning *it all depends on* . . .
- 5 Декан знает Виду лично и хорошо к ней относится. *The dean knows Vika personally and is favourably disposed towards her.*
хорошо к ней относится The verb **относиться к**, followed by the

dative, means *to be disposed towards someone*, or *to treat someone*, and is found with an adverb such as **хорошо** or **плохо**.

- 6 У Володи и Вики много других дел. *Volodya and Vika have got a lot of other things to do.*
- 7 Они должны поблагодарить дедушку за гостеприимство, сообщить маме Вики день их приезда и послать письмо другу Володи. *They must thank Grandfather for his hospitality, notify Vika's mother of the day of their arrival and send a letter to Volodya's friend.*
- a поблагодарить дедушку за гостеприимство The verb **поблагодарить** is followed by the accusative of the person being thanked, and **за** with the accusative for the thing.
- b сообщить Note that the verb **сообщить**, unlike the English *notify* or *inform* someone *of* something, takes an object in the accusative, and does not need a word for *of*. The person being informed is in the dative.

PART 2

- 8 Какой сегодня день? *What day is it today?*
Сегодня четверг. *Today's Thursday.*
- 9 А какое сегодня число? *And what is today's date?*
Сегодня двадцать восьмое августа. *Today is the twenty-eighth of August.* Learn these pairs of question and answer, as they are useful models.
- 10 Сколько же времени мы можем провести на Пицунде? *But how much time can we spend in Pitsunda?*
же The use of **же** for emphasis was discussed in L14, N9.
- 11 Летом—в июне, июле—как правило, очень жарко, в ноябре, декабре, январе часто идёт дождь, но уже в марте появляются весенние цветы, в апреле уже можно купаться, а в мае становится совсем тепло. *In summer—in June and July—as a rule it's very hot; in November, December, and January it often rains; but by March the spring flowers appear, in April it's possible to bathe, and in May it becomes quite warm.*
- a как правило This corresponds exactly to the English phrase *as a rule*.
- b идёт дождь *To rain* in Russian is expressed by the noun for *rain*: **дождь** (m.) and the verb **идти**.
- c становится The verb **становиться** is the imperfect aspect of **стать**. Make a special effort to learn this pair of verbs as one is reflexive, and the other isn't.

- 23** 12 Это, конечно, интересный рассказ, но что же мы всё-таки будем делать? *That, of course, is an interesting tale, but all the same what are we going to do?* Note the position of **всё-таки**: *all the same* in this sentence.
- 13 Я уверена, что нам стоит провести на Кавказе по крайней мере неделю. *I'm sure it's worth our while to spend at least a week in the Caucasus.* Note order.
- a **нам стоит** You have already learnt that **не стоит** means *it's not worth*, and **стоит** means *it is worth*. Note that these expressions can be used with a personal pronoun in the dative.
- b **по крайней мере** This is an expression meaning *at least*, or *at the very least*.
- 14 Да, задача! Надо постараться её решить . . . *Yes, it's a problem! We must try to solve it . . .*
решить Note this further use of the verb **решить**: *to solve a problem*.
- 15 Знаешь что? *You know what?* This is a very colloquial exclamation, as it is in English.
- 16 Но у нас есть ещё и много других дел. *But we've still got lots of other things to do.* The insertion of **и** in the middle of this sentence makes it more emphatic.
- 17 Что ты имеешь в виду? *What do you have in mind?*
ты имеешь в виду The expression **иметь в виду** means *to have or bear in mind*.
- 18 Во-первых, нам надо поблагодарить дедушку за гостеприимство. *Firstly, we must thank Grandfather for his hospitality.*
во-первых Learn the words for *firstly*, *secondly* and *thirdly* as they occur in this and following sentences.
- 19 Во-вторых, мама обещала заказать тебе гостиницу на Пицунде. *Secondly, Mum promised to book you a hotel in Pitsunda.*
заказать The verb **заказать**: *to order*, *book* takes a direct object in the accusative, and the person for whom the thing is booked is in the dative.

PART 3

- 20 По-моему, нам стоит пойти утром, но вообще мне всё равно, всё зависит от тебя. *I think it would be worth our while going in the morning, but really it's all the same to me, it all depends on you.*

мне всё равно Learn this as a colloquial expression meaning *it's all the same to me*.

- 21 Вы можете сделать эту работу к пятнице? *Are you able to finish this work by Friday?*
к The preposition **к** in expressions of time means *by*.
- 22 Нет, эта работа нужна мне четырнадцатого. *No, I need this work on the fourteenth.*
- 23 К сожалению, мы не сможем вам помочь. *Unfortunately we won't be able to help you.*
a **сможем**. **Смочь** is the perfective aspect of **мочь** and conjugates in the same way.
b **помочь** The verb **помогать** (1), and its perfective **помочь** (which conjugates like **мочь**) are followed by the dative.

Вика и Володя пишут письма Vika and Volodya write letters

What happens

This lesson consists of three letters, which we hope will help you, should you ever wish to write letters in Russian. Part 1 is a long letter written by Volodya to his friend Sasha, telling him about what has been happening in his personal life.

Part 2 is a letter from Vika to her Dean of Faculty at the University, asking him if it would be possible for her to come back to university a week late.

Part 3 is a formal application to the Dean for his permission for Vika to return late.

New words in this lesson

благодаря thanks to
важный important
вероятно probably, it is likely
весьма extremely
в течение for, in the course of, during
глубокоуважаемый dear (deeply respected)
для for
долгий long
женат married
женильба marriage
защищать (I, imp.) to defend
из-за because of
крепкий strong
курс course
лететь (2, imp.) to fly
милый dear
мнение opinion
молчание silence
мягкий soft, weak
надеяться (I, imp.) to hope
назад back
найти (I, p.) to find
намерение intention
настоящий actual
невеста fiancée

нетерпение impatience
обнимать (I, imp.) to embrace
обратиться (2, p.) to turn
обстоятельство circumstance
объявить (2, p.) to announce
ответ answer
отказать (I, p.) to refuse
открытка postcard
писать (I, imp.) to write
подробно in detail
посылать (I, imp.) to send
потому что because
право a right
предложение suggestion
привет regards, greetings
прилететь (2, p.) to arrive by air
просьба request
сомнение doubt
стараться (I, imp.) to try
стать (I, p.) begin
так как as, since
тот, то, та же the same, that very
требовать (I, imp.) to demand
уважать (I, imp.) to respect
ужасный terrible
уметь (I, imp.) to be able

учить (2, imp.) to teach
характер nature, character
хотя although
чтобы in order to
шум row

в настоящее время at the present time
всё вышло прекрасно everything turned out splendidly
всё не мог [I] just couldn't
в связи с этим in connection with this
в течение недели for a week

крепко тебя обнимаю with love from (I embrace you warmly)
мне не хотелось I didn't want
нам пришлось we had to
несмотря на то, что in spite of the fact that
позвольте allow me
по семейным обстоятельствам for family reasons
с глубоким уважением yours sincerely (with deep respect)
передай привет regards to

Notes

PART 1

- 28 августа 1971 года, г. Ленинград Note the Russian custom of writing the date and place of origin of a letter in the top right-hand corner. The abbreviation г. Ленинград stands for город Ленинград.
- Милый Саша! Dear Sasha. Note that it is usual to put an exclamation mark after addressing someone at the beginning of a letter.
- Я вернулся в Москву в начале августа и всё не мог найти времени для того, чтобы написать тебе обо всём подробно. I returned to Moscow at the beginning of August and just could not find the time to write to you about everything in detail.
а всё не мог. Всё is used here to give greater emphasis.
б для того, чтобы The word чтобы means in order to, and must always be used to introduce a clause with the meaning in order to. It is followed by an infinitive. Here it would be best to learn the whole construction: для того, чтобы. Тот is used here in a similar way as in L18, N22 (тому, что).
- Вероятно, я скоро буду женат. It's likely that I shall soon be married.
Женат is a short adjective meaning married, and can only be used of a man.
- В тот же вечер я объявил родителям о своём намерении жениться. On that same evening I announced to my parents my intention to get married.

- 24 a** В тот же вечер *On that same evening or that very evening.* The combination of **тот** and **же** makes the Russian expression for *the same, the very*, and **тот** always agrees with the noun it's with.
- b** я объявил The verb **объявить**: *to announce, declare*, must be followed by the preposition **о**.
- 6** Из-за этого начался ужасный шум. *Out of that a terrible row started.*
из-за этого The preposition **из-за** means *out of, because of*, and is followed by the genitive.
- 7** Хотя мне уже двадцать пять лет, мама всё время старается учить меня, как надо жить. *Although I'm twenty-five years old, Mum tries all the time to teach me how to live.*
Всё время in colloquial speech means *all the time, still*. This sentence could also be translated as: *Mum never stops trying . . . or Mum keeps on trying . . .*
- 8** Она стала требовать, чтобы я поехал с Викой в Ленинград, потому что там живёт дедушка. *She started to demand that I go with Vika to Leningrad, because Grandfather lives there.*
- a** требовать, чтобы. **Чтобы** is also used in clauses following certain verbs of *wishing, requesting, demanding*, and so on. **Требовать**: *to demand* is one of them, as is **хотеть**, e.g. **Я хочу, чтобы ты это сделал**: *I want you to do this.*
- b** чтобы я поехал Note that after this construction the verb is in the past tense.
- c** потому что These two words together mean *because*.
- 9** Предложение весьма странное! *An extremely odd suggestion!* Note order.
- 10** Я очень уважаю дедушку, но его мнение о моей женитьбе для меня не очень важно, так как у меня нет сомнения, что это моё личное дело. *I very much respect Grandfather, but his opinion of my marriage is for me not very important, as I have no doubt, that it is my own private business.*
так как These two words together mean *since, as* (when introducing a clause).
- 11** Однако, благодаря своему мягкому характеру я не умею защищать свои права. *However, thanks to my weak nature I am unable to defend my rights.*
благодаря своему мягкому характеру. **Благодаря** means *thanks to, due to*, and is followed by the dative.

- 12** В конце концов нам пришлось поехать в Ленинград. *In the end we had to go to Leningrad.*
нам пришлось This is another way of expressing *to have to*. The 3rd person singular forms of the verb **приходиться**, and its perfective **прийтись**, are used in impersonal expressions with the dative of the person involved. There are four possible forms:
приходится (present)
приходилось (past imperfective)
and
придётся (future)
пришлось (past perfective)
- 13** Несмотря на то, что сначала мне не хотелось ехать, всё вышло прекрасно, и завтра мы летим из Ленинграда к родителям Вики на Кавказ, а оттуда назад в Москву. *In spite of the fact that at first I didn't feel like going, everything turned out splendidly, and tomorrow we are flying from Leningrad to Vika's parents in the Caucasus, and from there back to Moscow.*
- a** несмотря на то, что Learn this construction for *in spite of the fact that*.
- b** мне не хотелось *I didn't feel like or I didn't want*. This is another impersonal expression, and is found in the past (**хотелось**) and the present (**хочется**). As usual, the person is in the dative. Here are a couple more examples:
Мне хочется пить: *I am thirsty*;
Ему хотелось потанцевать: *he felt like dancing*.
- c** всё вышло прекрасно In colloquial speech the verb **выйти** can be used to mean *to turn out*.
- 14** С Кавказа обязательно пошлю тебе открытку. *From the Caucasus I shall definitely send you a post card.*
- a** обязательно Note this use of **обязательно**, i.e. expressing *promising to do something*.
- b** пошлю Note the conjugation of the verb **послать**:
- | | |
|------------|------------|
| я пошлю | мы пошлём |
| ты пошлешь | вы пошлёте |
| он пошлёт | они пошлют |
| она пошлёт | |
- 15** Напиши мне, пожалуйста, о себе. Как ты живёшь? Что у тебя нового? *Please write to me about yourself. How are you? What's new with you?*
- 16** С нетерпением жду ответа. *I await your reply with impatience.*

24 17 Крепко тебя обнимаю. *I embrace you warmly.*

18 Передай привет твоим родителям. *My regards to your parents.*
(*Pass on regards to . . .*)

All the phrases in Notes 15–18 occur frequently in letters and are very useful.

PART 2

19 Глубокоуважаемый Алексей Григорьевич! *Dear Aleksei Grigorievich! (Deeply-respected . . .)* This is the usual way of addressing a superior, or a person one does not know well, in a formal or business letter.

20 В настоящее время по семейным обстоятельствам я должна находиться в течение недели вместе с моими родителями.
At the present time, for family reasons, I have to stay for a week with my parents.

a по семейным обстоятельствам *Due to family circumstances, or for family reasons.*

b в течение недели. В течение, followed by the genitive, is often used in expressions of time, and means *for, during, in the course of*.

21 В связи с этим позвольте обратиться к Вам с просьбой разрешить мне начать занятия в университете 8 сентября 1971 года. *In connection with this allow me to turn to you with a request to permit me to start my studies at the university on 8th September, 1971.*

a в связи с этим *in connection with this, in view of this.*

b позвольте, разрешить Both the verbs *позволить* and *разрешить* mean *to allow, permit*.

c Вам Note that here **Вам** has a capital letter. **Вы**, in its various cases, has a capital letter in formal written applications and polite letters.

d обратиться к Вам с просьбой Learn the way of saying *to turn to someone with a request*.

22 Я посылаю Вам заявление и очень надеюсь, что Вы мне не откажете. *I am sending you an application and very much hope that you will not refuse.*

a Посылать (1) is the imperfective of *послать* (N14b).

b откажете This is from the verb *отказать*: *to refuse, deny*. It conjugates like *сказать* (L9, T2).

23 Поздравляю Вас с началом нового учебного года, желаю крепкого здоровья и успехов в работе. *I greet you at the beginning of the new academic year, and wish you good health and success in your work.*

24 С глубоким уважением *Yours sincerely. (With deep respect.)*
See N19. This is the way to finish off a letter in the same circumstances.

PART 3

25 от студентки 4-го курса *from 4th-year student* Note that in Russian it is *student of the 4th course*. (4-го is an abbreviation of *четвёртого*.)

26 Look carefully at HOW AN ADDRESS IS WRITTEN IN RUSSIAN: it is arranged in the opposite way to an address in English, i.e. starting with the town (and the postal area—**В-234**), and ending with the person to whom the letter is addressed, in the dative. The person's Christian name and patronymic follows his surname.

Перед отъездом из Ленинграда Before departure from Leningrad

What happens

It's time for Vika and Volodya to leave Leningrad; autumn is setting in and the weather has suddenly become much cooler. It will be good to get to the Black Sea, where it will still be warm. Today Vika and Volodya are finishing off all the things they have to do before their departure: they have to go to the post office, where Vika sends a telegram to her mother, and Volodya posts a letter to his friend.

In Part 3 there are three dialogues: in the first, a foreign tourist is buying stamps in a post office; in the second, Maria Petrovna is deciding whether to travel by tube or bus; and in the third, Igor and Zhenya are trying to fix a convenient time for them both to meet.

New words in this lesson

авиа by air	моложе younger
авиапочтой by air mail	небо sky
бланк form	ниже lower
ближе nearer	нуль (m.) zero
быстрее faster	отъезд departure
выход exit	перед before
выше higher	подниматься (1, imp.) to rise
гораздо much	позже later
дерево (pl. деревья) tree	получить (2, p.) to receive
длинный long	почта post office; the post
дороже dearer	почтовый ящик post-box
если if	простой simple, ordinary
жёлтый yellow	ручка pen
закончить (2, p.) to finish	серый grey
зелёный green	синий dark blue
значение meaning, significance	слово word
конверт envelope	солнечный sunny
коричневый brown	срочный urgent
короче shorter	старше older
космонавт cosmonaut	телеграфистка telegraphist (female)
лист (pl. листья) leaf	Франция France
лучше better	холодный cold
марка stamp	хуже worse
меньше less, smaller	чем than

ящик box
как лучше ехать? which is the best way to go?

ночью at night
это не имеет значения that doesn't mean anything, that's irrelevant

Notes

PART I

- 1 Перед отъездом из Ленинграда. Before departure from Leningrad. перед The preposition перед means before, in front of, and is followed by the instrumental.
- 2 Вчера в Ленинграде день был тёплый и солнечный, а сегодня погода стала хуже. Yesterday in Leningrad it was a warm and sunny day, but today the weather got worse. Note order. хуже worse This is the comparative of плохой: bad. Learn these words carefully as they are so different.
- 3 На улицах меньше людей, в парках пусто. On the streets [there were] fewer people, in the parks [it was] empty.
a меньше Here this is the comparative of мало: a few, a little and means fewer, less. It is followed by the genitive. It can also be the comparative of маленький (small), and mean smaller.
b Людей is the genitive of люди.
- 4 Листья на деревьях становятся жёлтыми, небо серым. The leaves on the trees are getting yellow, and the sky grey. становятся жёлтыми, . . . серым After the verbs становиться and стать: to become, get, adjectives and nouns are in the instrumental.
- 5 Дни стали короче, а ночи длиннее. The days had become shorter, and the nights longer. короче, длиннее Most adjectives have comparatives ending in -ее or -е. Many adjectives, like длинный simply have their adjectival ending removed and -ее added—длиннее. Adjectives with stems ending in -к, -т or -тк change these consonants to -ч and add -е, короткий—короче. A full explanation of the formation of comparatives will be found in Appendix 4, under Adjectives.
- 6 Сегодня днём температура поднималась только до десяти градусов выше нуля. Today in the daytime the temperature rose only to ten degrees above zero. выше нуля. Выше is the comparative of высокий: high, tall and literally means higher. Thus выше нуля means higher than zero. No word for than is needed in Russian if the word following the comparative is in the genitive (нуля).

- 25** 7 На берегу Чёрного моря сейчас гораздо лучше. *On the Black Sea coast now it is much better.*
 a Гораздо must always be used for *much* with comparatives.
 b лучше *better* This is the comparative of *хороший*. It is another irregular one (like *плохой—хуже*), so learn it carefully.
- 8 Они идут на почту. *They go to the post office.*
 на почту The word *почта* can mean *the post office*, or, in more general terms, *the post*. Note that the preposition *на* is used with it.

PART 2

- 9 Да, сегодня холоднее, чем вчера. *Yes, today's colder than yesterday.*
 холоднее, чем вчера In N6 you learnt that no word for *than* is needed if the word following the comparative is put into the genitive. However, *чем* means *than* and it is always used when the word following the comparative does not decline (*вчера*).
 With most nouns the comparative can be expressed in either way, i.e. with the genitive and no word for *than*; or with *чем* and the nominative. You will see examples of both methods in this lesson. Note that *чем* is always preceded by a comma.
- 10 Сейчас не знаю, а ночью было два градуса ниже нуля. *Now I don't know, but in the night it was two degrees below zero.*
 Ниже is the comparative from *низкий*: *low*, and thus means *lower*. All adjectives with stems ending in *-г*, *-д* and *-ж* end in *-же* in the comparative. For examples see Appendix 4 under *Adjectives*.
- 11 Володя, как лучше сообщить маме о нашем приезде? *Volodya, how [can we] best inform Mum of our arrival? (how best to inform ... ?)*
 как лучше Note this further use of *лучше*. *Как лучше ... ?* means *how best to do something*, or *what is the best way of doing something*.
- 12 Я тебя спрашиваю. Ты старше меня. *I'm asking you. You're older than me.*
 Старше или моложе—это не имеет значения. *Older or younger—that doesn't mean anything.*
 a старше, моложе These are the comparatives *older* and *younger*, from *старый* and *молодой*. Note that to be older, or younger, *than* someone is expressed by the genitive (here *меня*).
 b это не имеет значения Literally *that has no significance*. Learn it as a phrase.

- 13 Почта от нас далеко? *Is the post office far from us?*
 от нас далеко Note that *distance away from* someone or something is expressed by *далеко от* and the genitive.
- 14 Почта дальше, чем «Гастроном», и ближе, чем аптека. *The post office is further than the 'Gastronom', and nearer than the chemist's.*
 Дальше, which you have already met, is the comparative of *далёкий*; ближе is the comparative of *близкий*. Note also the use of *чем* and the nominative.
- 15 Для простого письма или для авиа? *For an ordinary letter or for air [mail]?*
 авиа Note also that *авиа* on an envelope means *by air*.
- 16 Нет, больше; пять конвертов, пожалуйста. *No, more; five envelopes, please.*
 Больше is the opposite of *меньше*, and, like *меньше*, is the comparative both of an adverb and an adjective. Here it is the comparative of the adverb *много*: *much*, *a lot* and means *more*. It is also the comparative of *большой* and means *bigger*.
- 17 Покажите, пожалуйста, какие марки у вас есть по четыре копейки. *Show me, please, what stamps you've got at four kopeks.*
 по четыре копейки This use of the preposition *по* is the same as you met in Lesson 15, i.e. to indicate the value of things (*яблоки по сорок копеек*).
- 18 Дайте, пожалуйста, две синие и одну жёлтую. *Give me, please, two blue [ones] and one yellow [one].* Note that the word *марка* is omitted in this sentence, but that the numbers and adjectives still agree with it.
- 19 Простую или срочную? *Ordinary or express?* Telegrams can be sent at either of these two rates in the USSR.
- 20 Сегодня, не позже семи вечера. *Today, not later than seven in the evening.*
 a Позже is the comparative of *поздний*.
 b семи After a comparative, numbers also go into the genitive.
 c вечера Note that here *in the evening* is expressed by the genitive—*вечера*, and not *вечером*.

PART 3

- 21 А если вы хотите послать авиапочтой, это дороже. *But if you want to send it by air mail, that's dearer.*

- 25 а** авиапочтой. Авиа, which you met in N15, is a commonly used abbreviation of авиапочтой.
- б** дороже This is the comparative of дорогой: *dear, expensive*.
- 22** Дайте мне, пожалуйста, две зелёные по десять копеек, одну красную за шесть копеек и одну коричневую за четыре копейки. *Give me, please, two green ones at ten kopeks, one red one for six kopeks and one brown one for four kopeks.*
- за шесть копеек When only one stamp is being bought for a certain amount, the preposition **за** is used instead of **по**.
- 23** Это гораздо быстрее. *It is much faster.*
- Быстрее is the comparative of быстро: *quickly* and the adjective быстрый: *quick, fast*.

Приезд в гостиницу Arrival at the hotel

What happens

In this lesson Volodya checks in at the hotel in Pitsunda where he is to stay while they visit Vika's parents. The receptionist asks him what kind of room he requires, and Volodya settles for a single room with bath, and a view of the park. On his floor Volodya is met by the *dezhurnaya* (literally *the lady 'on duty'*—a well-known figure in Soviet hotels, who sits in the corridor and looks after the keys and the guest's welfare). The *dezhurnaya* tells Volodya all about the hotel.

In Part 3 there are two dialogues: in the first, a hotel guest is asking the *dezhurnaya* about the foreign tourists who come to the hotel; in the second, the receptionist is asking a guest how long he intends to stay.

New words in this lesson

администратор receptionist
американец an American
американский American
английский English
англичанин Englishman
библиотека library
ботинок boot, shoe
ванная bath, bathroom
вид view
встречаться (1, imp.) to meet
(one another)
группа group
дежурная *dezhurnaya* (lady 'on duty'
in hotel)
довольно quite
записаться (1, p.) to sign on
ключ key
костюм suit
листок form
месяц month
мир world
настольный теннис table tennis
недавно recently
немец a German
не . . . ни not a

нигде nowhere
никогда never
никто no-one
номер hotel room
одновременно at once, simultaneously
отдыхающий holiday-maker
парикмахерская hairdresser
пляж beach
погладить (2, p.) to press
позавтракать (1, p.) to have breakfast
поздный late
поиграть (1, p.) to play
пользоваться (1, imp.) to use,
make use of
постирать (1, p.) to wash, launder
построить (2, p.) to build
починить (2, p.) to mend
приезжающий new-comer
проводить (2, p.) to accompany
продавать (1, imp.) to sell
продолжать (1, imp.) to continue
расположен, -о, -а situated
рубашка shirt
согласиться (2, p.) to agree
сувенир souvenir

теннис tennis
удачный successful
француз Frenchman
химчистка dry-cleaner's
холл public room
часы watch
шахматы chess

японец a Japanese
японский Japanese

Володе некогда было Volodya had
no time for
как раз just, exactly, that's just it
подумайте! fancy that! just think!

Notes

PART I

- 1 Гостиница расположена на самом берегу моря. *The hotel is situated right on the sea shore.*
на самом берегу моря To remind yourself of this use of **самый**, look back at L11, N12.
- 2 Володе здесь сразу очень понравилось. *Volodya immediately liked it here very much.*
Володе . . . понравилось Note this impersonal use of **понравиться**.
- 3 Он никогда не жил в таком красивом месте. *He has never stayed in such a beautiful place.*
никогда не Never is expressed in Russian by a double negative.
- 4 Володя подошёл к администратору и сказал, что ему должны были заказать номер. *Volodya went up to the receptionist and said that a room should have been booked for him.* Note order.
- a ему должны были заказать номер Look carefully at this construction. Literally it means *for him they should have booked a room*. The third person plural without **они** is often used to express an impersonal statement, or something where the subject is left vague, e.g. *Говорят, что он скоро будет женат: It is said, or They say, that he is getting married soon.*
- b номер In Lesson 22 you met **номер** as *number*, when referring to a telephone number. It is also used for a room number in a hotel, and in colloquial usage has come to mean a *hotel room* itself.
- 5 Администратор попросил Володю заполнить листок для приезжающих, и предложил Володе номер на одного с ванной и телефоном. *The receptionist asked Volodya to fill in a form for people arriving, and offered Volodya a single room with bath and telephone.*
- a листок для приезжающих In the USSR a guest arriving at a hotel must fill in a registration form.

- b номер на одного This is an abbreviation of **номер на одного человека**: *a room for one person*.
- 6 На этаже Володю встретила дежурная. *On the floor Volodya was met by the dezhurnaya*. Note the order, and that **дежурная** is the subject of this sentence. The inversion of subject and object create the same effect as the passive voice in the English translation.
- 7 Она открыла ему номер. *She opened his room for him*. Note order.
- 8 Рассказала о том, где находится столовая, парикмахерская, где можно починить часы или ботинки, где продают сувениры. *She told him where the dining-room was situated, and the hairdresser's, where to get a watch or shoes mended, where souvenirs were sold*. Note that the reported speech here is in the present tense.
- a о том, где Here is another example of this use of **о том**. The verb **рассказать** must be followed by **о** and the locative, so **о том** fulfils this requirement before **где**.
- b Часы is the plural of **час**: *hour* and it is the word for a *clock* or *watch*.
- c где продают сувениры Here is another example of the use of the third person plural discussed in N4a.
- 9 Потом она говорила, что в этом месяце на Пицунде не было ни одного дождя. *Then she said that during that month in Pitsunda there hadn't been a single [drop of] rain.*
ни одного дождя Literally *not a single rain*. In Russian *not a single* is expressed by **ни** and part of **один, одно, -а** in the appropriate gender and case, here note the genitive after the negative. Here is another example with **ни один** in the dative.. **Я этого не сказал ни одному человеку**: *I didn't tell a single person*.
- 10 англичане, американцы, японцы, немцы, французы . . .
Englishmen, Americans, Japanese, Germans, Frenchmen . . .
- a In Russian these words do not have a capital letter, nor do adjectives denoting nationality. Only the country itself has a capital (**Англия, Франция**).
- b англичане An *Englishman* is **англичанин**, and the few masculine nouns which end in **-анин** or **-янин** form the plural by changing the final syllable **-ин** to **-е**. See also Appendix 4, N17 on masculine nouns.
- 11 Но Володе некогда было продолжать этот разговор. *But Volodya had no time to continue this conversation.*
Володе некогда было *Volodya had no time* or *Volodya didn't have time*. This is a colloquial expression, with the dative of the

person involved. Do not confuse **некогда** with **никогда** (*never*) in N3.

PART 2

- 12 **Номер на одного или на двоих?** *A single or double room?*
номер на двоих Learn **номер на двоих** as the way of saying *a double room*.
- 13 **С видом на море?** *With a view of the sea?*
на море Note that here the preposition **на** is used, with the accusative: *a view on to something*.
- 14 **Как раз сегодня приехали одновременно английские, американские и японские туристы.** *Just today English, American and Japanese tourists arrived at once.* Note order.
Как раз is a colloquial expression meaning *just, exactly*. On its own it means *that's just it, that's it exactly*.
- 15 **Подумайте! Ещё год назад никто не знал о таком месте, как Пицунда.** *Just think! Only a year ago nobody knew of such a place as Pitsunda.*
a **Подумайте!** This is a colloquial exclamation meaning *just think!* or *fancy that!*
b **никто не** A double negative is used with **никто**: *no-one*.
- 16 **Да, а теперь все считают, что нигде нет места для отдыха лучше, чем Пицунда.** *Yes, and now they all consider that nowhere is there a place for a holiday better than Pitsunda.*
нигде нет Note that a double negative is also used with **нигде**: *nowhere*.
- 17 **Скажите, а где можно записаться на экскурсии?** *Tell me, where can I sign on for excursions?*
записаться на The verb **записаться**, followed by **на** or **в** means *to put one's name down, enrol, sign on for something*.
- 18 **Так слушайте! Гостиницу построили совсем недавно.** *Then listen! The hotel was built quite recently.* Note again the use of the third person plural without **они**.
- 19 **Два года назад на этом месте ещё ничего не было.** *Two years ago there was nothing on this spot.* Note order, and double negative with **ничего**.
- 20 **У нас всё есть в гостинице. И парикмахерская, и химчистка. Здесь вам и рубашки постирают, и костюм погладят.** *We've got everything in this hotel. A hairdresser's and a drycleaner's. Here they*

will wash shirts for you, and press a suit. Note the use of **и** for emphasis in these sentences.

- 21 **А какие у нас холлы прекрасные. Можно и в шахматы поиграть, и в настольный теннис.** *And what lovely public rooms we've got! You can play chess, and table tennis.*
в шахматы, в настольный теннис *To play a game of some sort is expressed in Russian by играть в and the accusative. Поиграть means to have a game of.*
- 22 **Только туристам всё некогда этим пользоваться: встанут, позавтракают и идут на пляж до позднего вечера.** *Only the tourists never have time to make use of it: they get up, have breakfast and go on to the beach until late evening.*
a **туристам всё некогда этим пользоваться** This is the same construction as that discussed in N11.
b **этим пользоваться** The verb **пользоваться**: *to use, make use of* is followed by the instrumental.

PART 3

- 23 **Да, довольно много. Вчера от нас уехала группа английских туристов, сегодня к нам приехали немцы, а завтра должны приехать японские туристы.** *Yes, rather a lot. Yesterday a group of English tourists left us, today some Germans arrived, and tomorrow some Japanese tourists are supposed to be arriving.*
от нас уехала, к нам приехали Note the prepositions used with the verbs **уехать** and **приехать**, when they mean *going away from* and *coming towards* people.
- 24 **А американские туристы у вас бывают?** *And do American tourists ever stay with you?* Note this use of **бывать**.
- 25 **К сожалению, точно не знаю. Это зависит не только от меня.** *Unfortunately, I don't know exactly. It doesn't depend only on me. (It depends not only on me.)*

На пляже On the beach

What happens

Volodya and Vika are now relaxing in Pitsunda. They are taking full advantage of the sunshine after the cool weather in Leningrad, and are sunbathing on the beach. Volodya is content to lie on the sand and close his eyes, but Vika prefers to sit up and look at the other people on the beach. She hears some foreign girls playing volley-ball, and Volodya suggests that they join them, but Vika is reluctant to do so, as her English is not as good as it used to be. Vika gets bored and asks Volodya to think of something to do. They decide to go swimming, and Vika tells Volodya of how she nearly drowned as a child.

In Part 3 there are three dialogues: in the first, Andrei Petrovich is asking after Pavel Terentievich's health; in the second, Fyodor Kuzmich tells Maria Petrovna that her son is very like her; and in the third, a stranger stops a student to ask her if she speaks English.

New words in this lesson

американка American woman, girl
англичанка Englishwoman, girl
бок side
бояться (2, imp.) to be afraid
волейбол volley-ball
где-то somewhere
глаз (pl. глаза) eye
грудь (f.) chest
девочка little girl
детство childhood
закрывать (1, imp.) to close
играть (1, imp.) to play
иностранка foreigner (female)
иностраннй foreign
казаться (1, imp.) to seem
какой-то some (or other)
когда-нибудь ever, at any time
когда-то at one time
купальный костюм swimming costume

лечь (1, p.) to lie down
ложиться (2, imp.) to lie down
мяч ball
надеть (1, p.) to put on
незнакомец stranger
нога leg
обгореть (2, p.) to burn
одет, -а dressed
переодеться (1, p.) to change
песок sand
плавать (1, imp.) to swim
по-английски in English
повернуться (1, p.) to turn over
по-немецки in German
по-французски in French
похож, -е, -а; -и like, resembling
придумать (1, p.) to think up
простудиться (2, p.) to catch a cold
рассматривать (1, imp.) to examine, scrutinize

рука arm
снимать (1, imp.) to take off
спина back
тонуть (1, imp.) to be drowning
утонуть (1, p.) to drown
учить (2, imp.) to learn
француженка French woman, girl
холод cold (noun)
что-нибудь something, anything

что-то something (or other)
язык language

играть в мяч to play ball
сейчас right away
скорее quickly, hurry up and . . .
с тех пор since then
хочется one wants
я надеюсь на это I hope so

Notes

PART 1

- 1 **Хочется скорее надеть купальный костюм и лечь загорать.**
One wants to hurry up and put on one's swimming costume and lie down and get tanned.
а **хочется** Note the impersonal use of **хочется**. Here it corresponds to the English *one wants* or *you want*.
б **скорее** This is the comparative of **скоро**: *quickly, soon*, and is used in colloquial speech in a similar way to the English expression *hurry up and . . .*
с **Лечь** means *to lie down*, in the same way as **сесть** means *to sit down*.
- 2 **Володя ложится на песок и закрывает глаза.** *Volodya lies down on the sand and closes his eyes.*
ложится. **Ложиться** is the imperfective form of **лечь** (N1c). Note that, like **сесть** and **садиться**, one is reflexive and the other isn't.
- 3 **А Вика не может лежать так.** *But Vika can't lie like that.*
Лежать means *to lie* or *be lying*, just as **сидеть** means *to sit* or *be sitting*. Note carefully when to use this verb, and when to use those mentioned in N2.
- 4 **Она рассматривает людей на пляже: кто что делает, кто как одет, кто на кого похож.** *She examines the people on the beach: who is doing what, who is dressed how, who resembles who.* Note order.
а **кто на кого похож** *To resemble* or *be like someone* is expressed by **быть похож на** and the accusative. **Быть** is, of course, usually omitted in the present tense. **Похож** is a short adjective and must agree with the subject. For a further example see N8.

- 27** 5 Вика учила английский язык, и она немножко говорит по-английски. *Vika used to learn English, and she speaks a little English.*
- a Английский язык means *the English language*, and this full form must be used when *studying* or *teaching* a language is being discussed.
- b говорит по-английски *To speak English* is говорить по-английски, and to express *speaking, understanding, reading* a language, this form is used.
Be careful to use the correct form: a good guide to follow is to try and substitute *in English* for *English* in the sentence in question. If it still makes sense, use the *по-* form, which really means *in* the language.
- 6 Какая-то девочка что-то говорит по-французски. *Some little girl is saying something in French.* Note order.
- a какая-то, что-то The addition of the suffix *-то* on to both of these words has given them an element of vagueness. *Какая-то девушка* means *some girl or other*, and *-то* can be added to any part of *какой* in this way, e.g. *Мы пообедаем в каком-то ресторане:* *We'll have dinner in some restaurant or other.*
- b Что-то means *something or other*.
- 7 Вике кажется, что она где-то раньше видела эту девочку. *It seems to Vika that she's seen that little girl somewhere before.*
где-то See N6a and b above. *Где-то* means *somewhere, or somewhere or other*.
- 8 Или она очень похожа на дочку подруги Вики? *Or is she very like the daughter of a friend of Vika's?*
она очень похожа на . . . See N4a.
- 9 Она просит Володю рассказать что-нибудь. *She asks Volodya to talk to her about something.*
что-нибудь This is another word for *something*, but is even more vague, and can sometimes be translated as *anything*.
THE SUFFIXES *-то* AND *-нибудь*
The suffix *-нибудь*, like *-то* (N6a), can be added to any interrogative pronoun (the most common being *кто, что, где, как, какой*) to form indefinite pronouns. Of the two suffixes, *-то* is the more specific, *-нибудь* the more general. Compare the following examples: *Я рассказал ей что-то о работе:* *I told her something about the work* (i.e. the speaker knows exactly what he told her), and *Расскажи нам что-нибудь о вашей поездке:* *Tell us something about your trip* (i.e. we know nothing about it and are keen to hear anything).

- 27** 10 Снимай скорее свою рубашку. *Hurry up and take your shirt off.*
скорее See N1b.
- 11 Повернись на бок или на спину. *Turn over on to your side or back.*
на бок или на спину Note the use of the accusative here as motion is involved, also the stress on *на*. This occurs sometimes with common words, where *на* and the word have almost become a phrase.
- 12 А что мне делать с руками и ногами? *And what shall I do with my arms and legs?* Note order.
что мне делать . . . ? This is a colloquial way of saying *what shall I do?*, *what can I do?*
- 13 Слышишь, кто-то играет в мяч? *Do you hear someone playing ball?*
Играть в мяч means *to play ball*, or *to play with a ball*.
- 14 Да, в волейбол. Это какие-то иностранки. *Yes, volley-ball. It's some foreign girls.*
какие-то See N6a.
- 15 Я когда-то хорошо плавала, а теперь не знаю. А ты когда-нибудь тонул? *Once I used to swim well, but I don't know now. But have you ever [nearly] drowned?*
- a когда-то, когда-нибудь Note the use here of the suffixes *-то* and *нибудь*. *Когда-то* is used in the first sentence because it is a fact that at a particular time Vika was a good swimmer, and means *once, at one time*. *Когда-нибудь* means *ever, at any time*.
- b тонул In English we have to add the word *nearly* because we know that Vika was not in fact drowned. In Russian the imperfective aspect is sufficient to show that the action was not completed.
- 16 А я в детстве тонула и с тех пор немножко боюсь воды. *I nearly drowned as a child and since then have been a little afraid of the water.* Note order.
- a в детстве Literally *in childhood*.
- b С тех пор means *from that time on*, or *since then*. If the time continues right up to the present (as here), the present tense must be used.
- c боюсь воды *To be afraid of something* is expressed by *бояться* and the genitive.
- 17 Я тоже на это надеюсь. *I hope so too.* Learn this as a phrase.

- 18 **Наверное, вы где-то простудились.** *You must have caught a cold somewhere.* Note order.
- 19 **Вам нужно надеть что-нибудь тёплое.** *You should put on something warm.*
- 20 **Да, глаза у него мои. Но говорят, что он похож и на мужа.** *Yes, he's got my eyes. But they say he's also like my husband.* Note order, and use of **и**.
- 21 **Да, что-то есть.** *Yes, there is something.*
- 22 **Да, конечно. Ведь он русский.** *Yes, of course. After all, he is Russian.*

В кино At the cinema

What happens

This evening Volodya and Vika are going to the cinema, to see 'War and Peace'. They often go to the cinema and have seen some of the classics of the Soviet screen many times. Volodya likes war films, while Vika prefers films about contemporary life. Some Soviet films, particularly the screen versions of classics of Russian literature, enjoy popularity all over the world. Vika's favourite actor is Mikhail Ulyanov. Volodya admires Innokenty Smoktunovsky who played the lead in the Soviet film of 'Hamlet'.

In Part 2 Volodya and Vika are getting ready to go to the cinema. They have not bought the tickets in advance, and Vika is afraid they may be sold out. However, they are lucky. After the film Vika asks Volodya if he enjoyed it. Volodya is very enthusiastic, but Vika didn't like it at all.

In Part 3 there are three dialogues: in the first, Nina suggests going to the theatre; in the second, Kolya says Nina doesn't need her coat; in the third, Misha and Yura find that all the tickets have been sold.

New words in this lesson

актёр actor
 артист artiste
 будто as if
 бы conditional particle (see note 3)
 верить (2, imp.) to believe
 возможность (f.) possibility
 действительно really
 детский сеанс children's performance
 Достоевский Dostoyevsky
 дружба friendship
 жалеть (1, imp.) to regret
 изменить (2, p.) to change
 Иннокентий Смоктуновский
 Innokenty Smoktunovsky
 касса box office
 кино cinema

кинорежиссёр film director
 кинотеатр cinema
 литературное произведение literary work
 литературный literary
 любимый favourite
 Малый театр the Maly Theatre
 медленно slowly
 мешать (1, imp.) to disturb
 Михаил Ульянов Mikhail Ulyanov
 надевать (1, imp.) to put on
 одеваться (1, imp.) to get dressed,
 dress up
 очередь (f.) queue
 пальто (indec.) overcoat
 популярный popular

28 последний last
 продан sold out
 произведение work, production
 прохладный chilly
 пьеса play
 рассказ story
 рассуждать (*l, imp.*) to discuss
 режиссёр director
 роман novel
 сеанс performance
 сравнение comparison
 сыграть (*l, p.*) to play
 Толстой Tolstoy
 фильм film
 Чехов Chekhov
 Шекспир Shakespeare
 Шолохов Sholokhov
 экран screen
 экранизация screening, screen version

будто, как будто as if
 все билеты проданы all the tickets are sold
 в каком кинотеатре идёт «Война и мир»? at which cinema is 'War and Peace' showing?
 за последние годы in recent years

Notes

PART 1

- Он много раз смотрел такие классические советские фильмы, как «Броненосец Потёмкин», «Октябрь», «Иван Грозный». *He has seen many times such classic Soviet films as 'Battleship Potyomkin', 'October', and 'Ivan the Terrible'.*
 такие . . . , как Note the Russian construction for *such . . . as . . .*
- За последние годы на экранах появилось много интересных фильмов. *In recent years many interesting films have appeared on the screens.* Note order.
 За последние годы is a phrase meaning *in recent years* or *during the last few years*.
- И Володя с удовольствием посмотрел бы ещё раз такие

я не надеюсь на это I don't hold out any hope, I'm not counting on it

Баллада о солдате Ballad of a Soldier
 братья Карамазовы The Brothers Karamasov
 Броненосец Потёмкин The Battleship Potyomkin
 Война и мир War and Peace
 Гамлет Hamlet
 Дама с собачкой The Lady with the Little Dog
 Девять дней одного года Nine Days of One Year
 Дикая собака Динго Wild Dog Dingo
 Доживём до понедельника We'll live until Monday
 Дом и хозяин House and Host
 Иван Грозный Ivan the Terrible
 Летят журавли The Cranes are flying
 Отец солдата Father of a Soldier
 Правда—хорошо, а счастье лучше Truth is Good, but Happiness is Better
 Твой современник Your Contemporary
 Тихий Дон Quiet flows the Don

фильмы о войне, как «Баллада о солдате», «Летят журавли» или «Отец солдата». *And Volodya would willingly see again such war films as 'Ballad of a Soldier', 'The Cranes are flying' or 'Father of a Soldier'.*
 посмотрел бы The conditional is very simple in Russian, as it consists of the past tense plus the word **бы**.

- А Вике больше нравятся фильмы о современной жизни: «Девять дней одного года», «Твой современник», «Доживём до понедельника». *But Vika prefers films about contemporary life: 'Nine Days of One Year'. 'Your Contemporary', 'We'll live until Monday'.*
- Во всём мире очень популярны советские экранизации литературных произведений. *Soviet screen versions of literary works are very popular all over the world.* Note order.
 во всём мире Learn **во всём мире** as a phrase for *all over the world, throughout the world*.
- С большим успехом идут «Дама с собачкой» по рассказу Чехова, «Тихий Дон» по роману Шолохова, «Братья Карамазовы» по роману Достоевского. *'The Lady with the Little Dog' after a story by Chekhov, 'Quiet flows the Don' after Sholokhov's novel, 'The Brothers Karamazov' after Dostoyevsky's novel, all run with great success.* Note order.
- идут The verb **идти** is used to express *to be on, to be running* of a film or play, e.g. **Что сегодня идёт в кино?:** *What's on at the cinema today?*
- по рассказу, по роману Note the use of the preposition **по** to express *after, or based on*.
- Это он сыграл роль Гамлета в советском фильме по пьесе Шекспира. *It was he who played the role of Hamlet in the Soviet film of Shakespeare's play.*
 Сыграть is the perfective aspect of **играть**. Note the vowel change.

PART 2

- Если бы ты заранее купил билеты, нам не нужно было бы торопиться. *If you had bought the tickets in advance, we wouldn't have had to rush.*
 Если бы ты купил . . . , нам не нужно было бы . . . Here is another example of the conditional. After a sentence beginning with **если бы**, the second part of the sentence is always conditional too, and must have **бы**.

28 9 Да, жалею, что не купил. *Yes, I regret that I didn't buy them.*

10 А если все билеты проданы, что мы тогда будем делать? *And if all the tickets are sold out, what shall we do then?* Note the position of **тогда**.

11 Смотри, у кассы—очередь. Значит, билеты ещё есть. *Look, there's a queue at the box-office. That means there are still some tickets.* Note **order**.

12 Если бы я был режиссёром, я не изменил бы ничего в фильме. *If I were a director, I wouldn't change anything in that film.* This is a conditional sentence, similar to that in N8. Note that if the verb **быть** is used in a conditional (*If I were . . .*), the word, or words, following it must be in the instrumental. This applies whether the verb is in the past tense, as here, or in the future (**будешь** in N13).

13 Ты рассуждаешь, как будто ты когда-нибудь будешь кинорежиссёром. *You are discussing it as if one day you're going to be a film director.*
Когда-нибудь, when referring to the future, means *one day, some day*.

14 А ты в такую возможность не веришь? *And you don't believe in such a possibility?* Note **order**.
To believe in something is expressed by **верить в** and the accusative.

15 Наверное, мне мешало сравнение с романом Толстого. *No doubt I was disturbed by comparing it with Tolstoy's novel. (No doubt, to me was disturbing the comparison . . .)*

16 И артисты, по-моему, могли бы играть лучше. *And the artistes, in my opinion, could have acted better.*
могли бы Note again the use of the conditional.

17 Если погода будет плохая, можем пойти посмотреть. *If the weather's bad, we can go and see it.* This sentence is a straightforward conditional, within the realm of possibility, and therefore does not need **бы**. Note that when the statement as a whole refers to the future, the verbs must be in the future (here **будет** and **пойти**). Learn this point carefully, as it is not the same in English.

18 В Большом—«Война и мир», в Малом—«Правда—хорошо, а счастье лучше» . . . *At the Bolshoi—'War and Peace', at the Maly—'Truth is good, but happiness is better' . . .*

в Малом *The Maly* is another old Moscow theatre, and is situated in the same square as *the Bolshoi*.

19 Для того, чтобы идти в театр, надо одеваться. *In order to go to the theatre one has to dress up.*

20 Правда? А что мне надеть? *Really? And what shall I put on?*
что мне надеть? Note this impersonal construction.

21 Ты спрашиваешь меня, будто тебе пять лет. *You're asking me as if you were five years old.*
будто You have already met **как будто** for *as if*. **Будто** is merely an abbreviation of this, and is sometimes used as an alternative.

22 Я не надеюсь на это. *I don't hold out much hope for it, or I'm not counting on it.* This is the negative of **я надеюсь на это**, which you met in Lesson 27. Learn this, too, as a colloquial phrase.

Поездка в горы A trip into the mountains

What happens

While in the Caucasus, Volodya and Vika decide to take a trip into the mountains and visit Lake Ritsa. It is a breathtaking journey along narrow mountain roads, with mountains towering above them on all sides. They spend some time by the lake, then set off on the way back. Suddenly the driver pulls up: on the other side of the road some friends of his are having a picnic. They invite Volodya and Vika to join them. Volodya and Vika are shy at first, but are persuaded by the warm welcome of an old man who explains that hospitality to strangers is a tradition in their land.

In Part 3 there are three short dialogues: in the first, Kolya is looking for a letter he has mislaid; in the second, a hostess is inviting her guest to the table; in the third, a stranger to Moscow is asking a local inhabitant about the restaurants.

New words in this lesson

Америка America
«Арагви» 'Aragvi'
везде everywhere
вместо instead
внутри inside
вопрос question
Восток the East
восточный eastern
впереди in front
всякий every, any
голубой light blue
гора mountain
гостеприимный hospitable
грузин a Georgian
гулять (I, imp.) to go for a walk
даже even
дорога road
закон law
Западная Европа Western Europe
запрещён, -ё, -а forbidden

источник spring
Крайний Север the Far North
лес wood
между between, among
над over
называться (I, imp.) to be called
напротив opposite
народ nation, people
«Националь» 'Nationale'
неудобно uncomfortable
никак in no way
обратный путь way back, return journey
озеро Ритца Lake Ritsa
остановить (2, p.) to stop
откуда from where, whence
отовсюду from everywhere
охота hunting, shooting
пикник picnic
под under

позади behind
пообедать (I, p.) to have a meal, dine
посидеть (2, p.) to sit for a little while
потерять (I, p.) to lose
поэтому because of this, that's why
приезжая newcomer (female)
примерно approximately
присоединиться (2, p.) to join
против against
путь (m.) way, road
разрешён, -ё, -а allowed
самый most, the most
случиться (2, p.) to happen
стесняться (I, imp.) to be shy

традиция tradition
уважаемый respected
устроить (2, p.) to arrange,
organise
честный honest
чистый clean
чувство feeling

добро пожаловать! welcome!
никак не могу I just can't
они вкусно пообедали they dined well
(deliciously)
прошу к столу come to the table

Notes

PART 1

- 1 Дорога всё время идёт между гор. The road goes all the time between mountains.
между гор The preposition между: between is followed by the instrumental when describing the stationary position of something. The genitive, however, is used with между in a few set phrases, of which между гор is one.
- 2 Посмотришь вокруг—горы, впереди тебя, позади тебя. You look around—there are mountains, in front of you and behind you.
а посмотришь Note that the 2nd person singular form of a verb, without ты, can be used in an impersonal, general sense, as in English.
b впереди, позади Both of these prepositions are followed by the genitive.
- 3 И над головой—только голубое небо. And above your head—just blue sky.
над головой The preposition над: above, over is usually followed by the instrumental.
- 4 Володя и Вика гуляли в лесу, катались на катере по озеру, вкусно пообедали в ресторане. Volodya and Vika went for a walk in the forest, went for a trip on a pleasure-boat on the lake, had a good meal in a restaurant.
a в лесу. Лес is a masculine noun which ends in -ý in the locative.
b по озеру Note this use of the preposition по. A trip along, or on a river would also be expressed by по: по реке.

- 29 5** Но вот пора и в обратный путь. *But it's time to be on the way back.* Note order. This sentence is very colloquial and defies literal translation, and is best learnt by heart.
обратный путь. Путь has many meanings including *way, journey.* The colloquial phrase **в путь!** means *let's be off!*, *let's be on our way!*, and **по пути** means *on the way*, e.g. **по пути домой:** *on the way home.* The adjective **обратный** means *return, back.* Thus **обратный путь** means *return journey, way back.*
- 6** Наши герои проехали несколько километров, и вдруг водитель, вместо того, чтобы ехать дальше, остановил машину. *Our heroes had covered several kilometres, when suddenly the driver, instead of going further, stopped the car.*
- a** проехали The prefix **про-** on verbs was mentioned in Lesson 22, N13, where we said that it indicated an action continuous over a length of time. Here you will see that it can also refer to an action continuous over some distance.
- b** Вместо того, чтобы followed by the infinitive is the construction for *instead of doing something.*
- 7** Напротив, прямо под открытым небом какая-то компания устроила пикник. *Opposite, right in the open air, a group of people had got up a picnic.*
- a** под открытым небом Literally, *under the open sky.* This is the usual phrase for *in the open air.*
- b** устроила The verb **устроить** also means *to arrange, organise.*
- 8** Они приглашают Володю и Вику к столу. *They invite Volodya and Vika to join them. (. . . to the table.)*
- 9** Наши герои—не против, но они стесняются. *Our heroes are not against it, but they are shy.*
не против. Против is a preposition, followed by the genitive, meaning *against.* It is used in colloquial speech, however, to express *being against something.*
- 10** Старый грузин подходит к ним и объясняет, что гостеприимство—закон народов Востока. *An old Georgian comes up to them and explains that hospitality is a law with the peoples of the East.*
Грузин is a male inhabitant of **Грузия:** *Georgia.* A female Georgian is **грузинка.**
- 11** Гость в горах—самый уважаемый человек. *A guest in the mountains is a most respected person.*
самый уважаемый This is a superlative adjective, and is formed

by adding **самый**, in the same way as *most* is added in English. **Самый** declines like a normal adjective, and must agree with the adjective and noun it is with, e.g.
Он купил самую дорогую книгу.: *He bought the most expensive book.*

- 12** Поэтому и люди живут здесь до ста лет. *That is why people here live to be a hundred years old.* Note order.
до ста лет Literally, *until a hundred years.* **До** must be followed by the genitive, and **ста** is the genitive of **сто.**

PART 2

- 13** Но я всё-таки хочу получить ответ. *But all the same I'd like to receive an answer.* Note the position of **всё-таки.**
- 14** Ты когда-нибудь был в горах? *Have you ever been in the mountains?*
Нет, никогда не был. *No, I've never been.* Note the use here of **когда-нибудь** and **никогда.**
- 15** Тогда я просто не могу объяснить тебе это чувство. *Then I'm simply unable to explain the feeling to you.* Note order.
- 16** А почему озеро называется Ритца? *And why is the lake called Ritsa?*
называется The verb **называться** means *to be called, or to be named*, and can be used of people or things. The construction with the verb **звать** (**Как вас зовут?**, etc.) is usually used only with people.
- 17** А что находится дальше за озером? *And what is there further on, beyond the lake?*
за The preposition **за**, when followed by the instrumental, sometimes means *beyond.*
- 18** Хотите присоединиться к ним? *Would you like to join them?*
Присоединиться к, followed by the dative, means *to join.*
- 19** Я—за. *I'm for or I'm in favour.*
за The preposition **за** can also be used in colloquial speech to mean *for, in favour.* In this sense it is the opposite of **против** (N9).
- 20** Нет, лучше вы подойдите к ним а мы посидим здесь, внутри. *No, [it would be] better [if] you go up to them, and we'll sit here for a moment, inside.*

- 29** **a** **лучше вы подойдите** Note this use of **лучше**, to express *it would be better if*.
- b** **посидим** It has already been mentioned that the prefix **по-** on a verb has a limiting effect. Here **посидим** means *to sit for a moment, to sit for a short while*.
- 21** **К нам отовсюду приезжают: и из Москвы, и из Ленинграда, и с Крайнего Севера, и с Дальнего Востока, и из Западной Европы и даже из Америки.** *People come to us from all over: from Moscow, from Leningrad, from the Extreme North, from the Far East, from Western Europe and even from America.*
- a** **приезжают** Note again the use of the 3rd person plural in a general sense.
- b** **и** Note again the use of **и** for emphasis.
- 22** **Не стесняйтесь, прошу к столу.** *Don't be shy, please come to the table.*
Прошу к столу. This is the usual phrase with which a host invites his guests to the table.
- 23** **Мы много слышали о восточном гостеприимстве, но нам неудобно.** *We've heard a lot about Eastern hospitality, but we feel uncomfortable.*
нам неудобно Note this impersonal expression. **Нам неудобно** means *we feel uncomfortable, awkward, or not at ease*.
- 24** **Мы в горах рады всякому гостю, если он честный человек, конечно.** *We in the mountains are pleased to see every guest, if he is an honest man, of course.*
- a** **рады всякому гостю** *To be pleased, glad to see someone or about something*, is expressed by the person or thing being put in the dative.
- b** **всякому.** **Всякий** means *each, every*, and declines like a normal adjective (with a stem ending in **-к**).
- 25** **Добро пожаловать!** This is an expression meaning *Welcome!*

PART 3

- 26** **Никак не могу найти письмо от Лены.** *I just can't find the letter from Lena.*
Никак means *not in any way, not any how*. What this sentence really means is: *I just can't find the letter however hard I try, or whatever I do.*

- 27** **Может быть, оно под столом?** *May be it's under the table?*
под столом. **Под**, followed by the instrumental, means *under, beneath*. It is the opposite of **над** (N3).

Прощание Farewells

What happens

The time has come for Volodya and Vika to leave Pitsunda and return to Moscow. They are at Vika's parents' home, waiting for the taxi that will take them to the airport. It is too late to talk about anything very serious, and Vika's father entertains them with a tale about a very heavy suitcase he once had. Vika's mother is fussing about whether they've got the tickets, and whether they'll be in time for the 'plane. The car arrives and Vika's father suggests they have a drink to cheer them on their way. They all sit down quietly for a moment, according to an old Russian custom, before saying their farewells and departing.

In Part 3 there are two short dialogues: in the first, someone returns to a restaurant to ask the commissionaire if he has found his briefcase there; in the second, Zina tells Olga that her suitcases will be too heavy for her to carry.

New words in this lesson

вещь (f.) thing
возможно possible
выпить (l, p.) to drink
голос voice
дорога journey
достаточно enough
забывать (l, imp.) to forget
зачем why
иногда sometimes
лёгкий light
например for example
нести (l, imp.) to carry
обижать (l, imp.) to insult, offend
однажды once, one day
опаздывать (l, imp.) to be late
оставлять (l, imp.) to leave
портфель (m.) briefcase
посетитель (m.) visitor

прощание leavetaking, parting
прощаться с (l, imp.) to say
goodbye to
пустяк trifle, nonsense
самолёт aeroplane
случай (m.) event
счастливый happy
терять (l, imp.) to lose
тяжело heavy, difficult (adverb)
тяжёлый heavy, difficult
чемодан suitcase
швейцар hall porter, commissionaire

будь умницей! be a good girl!
в следующий раз next time
не за что not at all, don't mention it
ну что ж well then

Notes

PART 1

- 1 Прощание Literally *leavetaking, parting*.
- 2 Здесь же родители Вики. *Here too are Vika's parents.*
Же here is used in a similar way to тоже.
- 3 Прощаться всегда тяжело. *Saying goodbye is always difficult.*
Прощаться means *to take one's leave, say goodbye*.
- 4 Возможно, они не успели поговорить обо всём. Но теперь уже поздно говорить о чём-нибудь серьёзном. *It's possible that they have not managed to talk about everything. But now it's already too late to talk about anything serious.*
о чём-нибудь серьёзном
Here you see -нибудь added to the locative form of что. Remember that the suffixes -то and -нибудь can be added to что or какой in any case. Note that the adjective here is also in the locative.
- 5 Поэтому они разговаривают о всяких пустяках. *That is why they are chatting about all kinds of unimportant things.*
а о всяких пустяках Literally, *all kinds of trifles*. Learn it as an expression for *a lot of nonsense, rubbish*.
б всяких Note that всякий, which you met in Lesson 29 as *each, every*, can also mean *all kinds of*.
- 6 Андрей Николаевич, отец Вики, рассказывает, как у него однажды был очень тяжёлый чемодан. *Andrei Nikolayevich, Vika's father, tells of how he once had a very heavy suitcase.*
Однажды means *once, once upon a time*. Note where it comes in this sentence.
- 7 Нет, Володя никогда ничего не теряет. *No, Volodya never loses anything.* Note the three negatives here, and the position of the verb, i.e. after them.
- 8 Володя и Вика прощаются с Андреем Николаевичем и его женой. *Volodya and Vika say goodbye to Andrei Nikolayevich and his wife.*
прощаются с *To say goodbye to someone, or take one's leave of someone* is expressed by *прощаться с* and the instrumental.

PART 2

- 9 Время прошло очень быстро. *The time has passed very quickly.*
прошло Note that the verb пройти is used to express *time passing*.

- 30** 10 Я заказал машину на пять часов. *I ordered the car for five o'clock.* на пять часов To express ordering something for a certain time, the preposition **на** is used, with the accusative.
- 11 Ну что ж, это хорошо. *Well then, that's fine.* It would be best to learn this as a phrase.
- 12 Вика, зачем ты меня обижаешь? *Vika, why do you insult me?* обижаешь This is a fairly light-hearted, colloquial use of the verb **обижать**: to offend, hurt, insult.
- 13 Да, в этом случае ты права. Но сейчас ты можешь не волноваться. Вот наши билеты. *Yes, in that case you are right. But now you needn't worry. Here are our tickets.*
- a в этом случае Learn в этом случае as a phrase meaning in that case, or in this case.
- b ты можешь не волноваться Note this construction with part of мочь, не and an infinitive for you needn't.
- 14 На дорогу надо выпить. *We must have one for the road.* У меня для этого случая есть бутылка вина. *I've got a bottle of wine for this occasion.* (To the road we must drink.) Note position of для этого случая: for this occasion.
- 15 Нет, нет, перед дорогой надо посидеть немного, подумать о том, что оставляешь, куда и зачем едешь, что берёшь с собой. Тогда дорога будет счастливой. *No, no, before a journey you must sit down for a moment, and think about what you are leaving, where and why you are going, what you are taking with you. Then the journey will be happy.* дорога Note that дорога can mean journey, as well as road, way.
- 16 Будьте здоровы, Володя. *I wish you good health, Volodya.* (Be healthy.)
- 17 Не за что. *Not at all* or *Don't mention it.* This is often said in reply to спасибо.
- 18 А ты, Вика, будь умницей. *And you, Vika, be a good girl.*
- a будь This is the 2nd person singular imperative of **быть**. Будьте (N16) is the 2nd person plural form.
- b умницей. Умница means a clever girl, or a sensible girl, from the adjective умный: clever.
- 19 Всего тебе самого доброго! *All the very best to you!* Note order.
- 20 Хорошо, приедем и сразу напишем. *All right, [when] we arrive, we'll write straight away.* Note order and future tense.

- 30** 21 Нет, у нас достаточно времени. *No, we've got enough time.* достаточно времени. Достаточно: enough, sufficient is followed by the genitive.

PART 3

- 22 И не теряйте его в следующий раз. *And don't lose it again.* (And don't lose it next time.) в следующий раз This is a phrase meaning next time.
- 23 Саша будет провожать меня. *Sasha is going to see me off.*

Glossary of grammatical terms*

- accusative** the *case* taken by *nouns* when they are *objects*, and by *nouns* following certain *prepositions*, particularly those denoting motion.
- adjective** a word which describes or qualifies a *noun*, e.g. 'big', 'usual', 'yellow'.
- adverb** a word which describes a *verb* or an *adverb* in the following ways: *manner*, e.g. 'quickly'; *degree*, e.g. 'very quickly'; *time*, e.g. 'now'; *place*, e.g. 'there'.
- animate** any living creature or creature that has been alive is animate, thus the following are animate *nouns*: 'girl', 'dog', 'foreigner', 'corpse'. Animate *nouns* in Russian are either *masculine* or *feminine*.
- article** small word used with a *noun*, i.e. 'the', 'a', 'some'. There is no article in Russian.
- aspect** in Russian, the *verb* has two aspects, *imperfective* and *perfective*.
- case** the Russian language has six cases which are used by *nouns*, *pronouns*, and *adjectives*. They are: *nominative*, *accusative*, *genitive*, *dative*, *instrumental*, and *locative*.
- clause** a sentence may consist of one or several clauses. Each clause has its own *subject*, *verb*, and *object*.
- cardinal numbers** numbers as used in counting, i.e. 'one', 'two', 'three', etc.
- conditional** a *tense* used to express condition or possibility, e.g. 'If I *were* rich, I *would* buy a car'.
- comparative** a form of *adjective* used for comparing, e.g. 'lower', 'better', 'worse'.
- conjugate** *verbs* conjugate by changing their endings according to their *person*.
- conjugation** Russian verbs have two conjugations, i.e. two different ways of *conjugating*. These are known as the 1st and 2nd conjugations.
- conjunction** a word used for joining two *clauses* of a sentence, e.g. 'and', 'but'.
- dative** a *case* taken by *nouns* and *pronouns* after certain *prepositions*, and where the meaning in English would be 'to' or 'for', e.g. 'give *her* the book (give the book *to her*)'.
- declension** the noun from *decline*.
- decline** *nouns*, *pronouns*, and *adjectives* decline by changing their endings according to their *case*.
- definite** a few Russian *verbs* of motion have *indefinite* and *definite* forms as well as *imperfective* and *perfective*. The definite form is used for describing a specific occasion.

*Italics indicate that the word is included in this glossary.

- diminutive** a short or affectionate form of someone's name, e.g. 'Victoria—**Vicky**'. Also a *noun* with a *suffix* to make it mean a small version of an object, e.g. 'book—**booklet**'.
- feminine** feminine *nouns* in Russian are used for both people and objects. An *adjective* describing a feminine *noun* must take a feminine ending in order to agree.
- gender** Russian nouns have three genders: *masculine*, *feminine*, and *neuter*.
- genitive** a *case* taken by *nouns* and *pronouns* after certain *prepositions*, and where the meaning in English would be 'of', e.g. '**grandfather's** shoes' ('the shoes **of grandfather**').
- imperative** a form of the *verb* used in the second *person* when asking or telling someone to do something, e.g. 'Please **sit down**', and in the first *person plural* to suggest doing something, e.g. '**let's go home**'.
- imperfective** nearly all Russian *verbs* have an imperfective and a *perfective* form. The imperfective is used for a continuous or repeated action, and for expressing the present *tense*.
- impersonal** expressions using an impersonal construction are those which do not relate to any particular person or object, e.g. 'it's cold today, one never knows'.
- inanimate** something which does not, and cannot, have life is inanimate, e.g. 'house', 'spring', 'play'. Inanimate *nouns* in Russian can be of any *gender*.
- indeclinable** a few Russian *nouns* of foreign origin do not *decline* at all; they are indeclinable. An *adjective* agreeing with an indeclinable *noun*, however, *declines* in the normal way.
- indefinite** a few Russian *verbs* of motion have *indefinite* and *definite* forms as well as *imperfective* and *perfective*. The indefinite form is used to express a habitual or general action.
- infinitive** a *verb* is an infinitive before it has been *conjugated*. *Verbs* are nearly always referred to in the infinitive, e.g. 'to walk', 'to have', 'to know'.
- instrumental** a *case* taken by *nouns* and *pronouns* after certain *prepositions* and where in English they are preceded by 'with', e.g. 'cut **with a knife**'.
- interjection** a short, exclamatory word used to introduce a sentence, or to express surprise, pain, etc., e.g. 'oh', 'ah', 'well', 'so'.
- interrogative** a *pronoun* or *adverb* used in asking a question; e.g. 'who?', 'why?', 'where?'.
- intransitive** intransitive *verbs* are those which have no *object* because they make sense by themselves, e.g. 'he is walking', 'she speaks'.

masculine masculine *nouns* in Russian are used for both people and objects. An *adjective* describing a masculine *noun* must take a masculine ending in order to agree.

negative negative expressions generally have the word 'no' or 'not' in them in English, e.g. 'I don't know', 'there isn't any water'.

neuter neuter *nouns* in Russian are only used for *inanimate* things. *Adjectives* agreeing with neuter *nouns* must take neuter endings.

nominative the *case* used for naming a *noun* or *pronoun*. The *subject* of a sentence is always in the nominative *case*.

noun a word which is a name, e.g. 'man', 'house', 'winter', 'heat', 'idea', 'Moscow', 'Ivan' etc. In Russian the *noun* is found in six different *cases*, and has three *genders*.

object the word or phrase which normally follows the *verb* in an English sentence, e.g. 'he has a book', 'I ate a piece of cake', 'she has bought a few small things'. The *verb* 'to be' can have no object because the words following the *verb* must be the same as the *subject*, e.g. 'he is a student'; 'he' and 'a student' are the same. Anything not governed by the *verb* is not an object, e.g. 'he sings in the bath'; 'in the bath' does not tell us what is being sung, and is therefore not the object of 'sings'.

ordinal numbers numbers used as *adjectives* to describe order, i.e. 'first', 'second', 'third', etc.

perfective nearly all Russian *verbs* have an *imperfective* and a perfective form. The perfective is used to describe a single specific action, and for expressing the future *tense*.

person there are three singular and three plural persons to the *verb*, as follows: *I do*—first person sing., *you do*—second person sing., *he, she, it does*—third person sing.; *we do*—first person plural, *you do*—second person plural, *they do*—third person plural.

positive the opposite of *negative*.

possessive adjective an *adjective* formed from a *pronoun* and expressing possession, e.g. 'my', 'his', 'our', 'ours'.

prefix a particle added to the beginning of a word, usually in order to modify its meaning, e.g. 'cook/overcook', 'do/undo'. In Russian prefixes are commonly used in this way, and for changing an *imperfective verb* into a *perfective verb*.

preposition a word expressing place or motion, e.g. 'under', 'beside', 'to', 'up'.

pronoun pronouns are used to replace *nouns*, and they behave in exactly the same way as *nouns*. There are two sorts; personal pronouns, i.e. 'I', 'you', 'he', 'she', etc., and relative pronouns such as 'who' and 'which', e.g. 'the man who is singing'.

reflexive a reflexive *verb* in Russian is one which has the suffix *-ся* (or *-сь*). It is sometimes the intransitive form of a transitive verb, i.e., when the action is referring back to the subject. Compare these two English sentences: 'The mother washes the child.' and 'I wash every morning'. In the first sentence 'washes' is transitive because it has an object ('the child'). In the second, 'I wash' is intransitive, and referring back to the subject (it really means 'I wash myself').

The latter verb, 'to wash oneself', is in Russian a reflexive verb.

relative clause a minor *clause* in a sentence which refers to the *subject* or *object* and is introduced by a *relative pronoun* or an *adverb*, e.g. 'there is a shop where you can buy books', 'the girl who lives in that flat has a dog'.

reported speech a *clause* or *clauses* in a sentence reporting what someone has said, e.g. 'she asked me whether I lived with my parents'.

stem that part of a *noun*, *verb*, or *adjective* which does not change when declining or conjugating.

subject the word or phrase which generally precedes the *verb* in English, i.e. the doer of the action; e.g. 'we will go for a walk', 'that old man is sitting down'.

suffix a particle added to the end of a word.

superlative a form of adjective which expresses 'most', e.g. 'biggest', 'smallest', 'most beautiful'.

tense the Russian *verb* has three tenses; past, present, and future.

transitive verbs which can take an *object* are transitive, e.g. 'I like films', 'she is wearing a coat'.

verb a word which expresses doing, having, or being, e.g. 'he plays tennis', 'she is very tall', 'I think they live in a flat'.

Appendices

Note on appendices

The appendices have, as far as possible, been based on the vocabulary in the course. However, it has sometimes been necessary to include words not in the course. Such words are followed by a translation in brackets. Any word you do not understand, which does not have a translation beside it, should be looked up in the Russian-English alphabetical vocabulary.

Guide to appendices

Appendix 1	<i>Page</i>
Notes on pronunciation and spelling	213
Appendix 2	
Russian Christian names and diminutives in the course	216
Appendix 3	
Cardinal numbers	217
Ordinal numbers	218
Telling the time	219
Days of the week	221
Months of the year	221
Dates	221
Age	222
Appendix 4 (Grammatical summary)	
Verbs	223
Nouns	234
Adjectives	242
Adverbs and impersonal expressions	249
Other types of adjectives and pronouns	251
Prepositions	254

Appendix 1

Notes on pronunciation and spelling

The sounds on the recording of the alphabet are the standard values of Russian letters when they are pronounced individually. When letters are combined with others in words their sounds change, and this is a summary of the most common changes.

1 Stressed and unstressed vowels

In Russian one syllable in each word is stressed more than the others. In Russian the stress is more emphatic than in English. The stressed syllable, as compared with the unstressed, is articulated with much greater force and is therefore lengthened. Hence the pronunciation of vowels is affected by stress in the following ways:

- a Vowels on which the stress falls are pronounced clearly and distinctly, and they are given their full value as on the recording of the alphabet.

Note that the letter *ě* is always stressed, no matter what its position in the word.

- b Unstressed vowels are fainter and less drawn out. As less time and care is spent on their pronunciation they tend to lose some of their value and become less distinct, sometimes sounding like another vowel altogether.

Here is a brief guide to the most obvious changes in the pronunciation of vowels when they are unstressed.

The vowel *o* is the vowel most affected by its position in the word:

- i) in the syllable preceding the stressed syllable it is pronounced like a faint Russian *a*:

окно́	window	Москва́	Moscow
она́	she	оно́	it

- ii) in all other unstressed syllables (such as two syllables before the stress or after the stress), it is pronounced even more faintly, more like the unstressed *er* sound in the English word *after*:

молоко́	milk	ме́сто	place
хорошо́	good		

The vowels *e* and *я* are shorter when they are in unstressed syllables and often sound more like a faint *и*:

2 Voiced and unvoiced consonants

Russian consonants can be paired off into two groups:

voiced: б в г д ж з
unvoiced: п ф к т ш с

a Voiced consonants are pronounced unvoiced in the following circumstances:

i) at the end of a word:

сад (*garden*) sounds as сат;
дуб (*oaktree*) sounds as дуп;

ii) before the unvoiced consonants п, ф, к, т, ш, с, х, ц, ч and щ:

все (*all*) sounds as фсе;
ложка (*spoon*) sounds as лóшка;

Note that common prepositions such as в and над are from this point of view considered as part of the following word. Thus в саду́ (*in the garden*) sounds as фсаду́.

iii) In лёгкий (*light*) and мягкий (*soft*) the г is pronounced as х.

b The unvoiced consonants с, к, т are pronounced as з, г and д respectively before the voiced consonants б, д, ж and з. Thus сделать (*to do*) sounds as зделать and вокза́л (*railway station*) as вога́л.

3 Hard and soft vowels

Russian vowels can also be paired off into two groups:

hard: а э ы о у
soft: я е и ё ю

The first group leave the preceding consonant hard. The second group have a 'softening' effect on the preceding consonant. Most consonants are affected in this way, although it is most marked in т, д and л. Take for example the two words пол (*floor*) and поле́ (*field*): in пол the л is hard; while in поле́ the л is soft, having been softened by the soft vowel е.

The consonants ж, ш and ц are permanently hard, and cannot be softened by these vowels. The consonants ч and щ, on the other hand, are always soft.

4 Spelling rules which affect pronunciation

- i) The letters к, г, х, ж, ч, ш and щ cannot be followed by ы, я and ю. These are replaced by и, а and у respectively. But note that и after ж and ш is pronounced as ы.
- ii) The letter ц cannot be followed by я and ю. It can, however, be followed by both и and ы. Note that и after ц is pronounced just like ы.
- iii) The letters к, г, х, ж, ч, ш, щ and ц are nearly always followed by the vowels а, е, и, о and у.

5 Other notes on pronunciation

- i) In что (*what, that*) and что́бы (*in order to*) ч sounds as ш.
- ii) In конечно́ (*of course*) ч is also pronounced ш.
- iii) Г is pronounced as в in the genitive endings -ого and -его, and in the words его́ (*his*) and сегодня́ (*today*).
- iv) Сч sounds as шч, e.g. in the word сча́стье (*happiness*).
- v) Occasionally a consonant is silent, as is the д in по́здно (*late*), and the л in со́лнце (*sun*).
- vi) In normal Russian speech many patronymics are abbreviated by the omission of the penultimate syllable, thus Ива́нович is pronounced Ива́н'ич, and Ива́новна—Ива́н'на.

Appendix 2

Russian Christian names and diminutives in the course

Алексáндр	Кíра <i>dim.</i> Кири́лл
Алексéй	Кири́лл
Алёша <i>dim.*</i> Алексéй	Ко́ля <i>dim.</i> Никола́й
А́лик	Константи́н
А́лла <i>dim.</i> Алби́на	Ла́ра <i>dim.</i> Ла́риса
Анато́лий	Ла́риса
Андре́й	Лев
А́нна	Ле́ва <i>dim.</i> Лев
Бори́с	Ле́на <i>dim.</i> Еле́на
Вале́рий	Леони́д
Ва́ля <i>dim.</i> Вале́рий and Вале́рия	Ма́рина
Ва́ня <i>dim.</i> Ива́н	Ма́рита
Васи́лий	Ма́рия
Ва́ся <i>dim.</i> Васи́лий	Ма́ша <i>dim.</i> Ма́рия
Ве́ра	Михаи́л
Ви́ка <i>dim.</i> Викто́рия	Ми́ша <i>dim.</i> Михаи́л
Ви́ктор	Ната́ша <i>dim.</i> Ната́лья
Викто́рия	Никола́й
Влади́мир	Ни́на
Воло́денька <i>dim.</i> Влади́мир	О́льга
Воло́дя <i>dim.</i> Влади́мир	О́ля <i>dim.</i> О́льга
Вячесла́в	Па́вел
Гри́ша <i>dim.</i> Григо́рий	Пе́тр
Дми́трий	Пе́тя <i>dim.</i> Пе́тр
Еле́на	Са́ша <i>dim.</i> Алексáндр
Же́ня <i>dim.</i> Евге́ний and	Светла́на
Евге́ния	Серге́й
Жо́ра <i>dim.</i> Гео́ргий	Серё́жа <i>dim.</i> Серге́й
Заха́р	Степа́н
Зи́на	Тамáра
Ива́н	Та́нечка <i>dim.</i> Татъя́на
И́горь	Та́ня <i>dim.</i> Татъя́на
И́нна	Та́я <i>dim.</i> Тайсса
Ири́на	То́ля <i>dim.</i> Анато́лий
Ка́тенька <i>dim.</i> Кате́рина	Фёдор
Кате́рина	Ю́ра <i>dim.</i> Ю́рий
Ка́тя <i>dim.</i> Кате́рина	

**dim.*: diminutive of

Appendix 3

1 Cardinal numbers

1	оди́н (одно́, одна́)	30	три́дцать
2	два (две)	40	со́рок
3	три	50	пятьдеся́т
4	четы́ре	60	шестьдеся́т
5	пять	70	се́мьдеся́т
6	шесть	80	во́семьдеся́т
7	се́мь	90	девяно́сто
8	во́семь	100	сто
9	де́вять	200	двéсти
10	де́сять	300	три́ста
11	оди́ннадцать	400	четы́реста
12	двена́дцать	500	пятьсо́т
13	трина́дцать	600	шестьсо́т
14	четы́рнадцать	700	се́мьсо́т
15	пятна́дцать	800	восе́мьсо́т
16	шестна́дцать	900	девяты́со́т
17	се́мьна́дцать	1000	ты́сяча
18	восе́мьна́дцать		
19	девяты́на́дцать		
20	два́дцать		

Examples of compound	21	два́дцать оди́н
cardinal numbers	32	три́дцать два
	479	четы́реста се́мьдеся́т де́вять

The declension of оди́н

	masculine	neuter	feminine	plural
Nom.	оди́н as Nom. or Gen.	одно́	одна́	оди́н as Nom. or Gen.
Acc.		одно́	одну́	
Gen.		одногó	одной	оди́нх
Dat.		одному́	одной	оди́нм
Instr.		оди́нм	одной	оди́нми
Loc.		одно́м	одной	оди́нх

The use of cardinal numbers in the nominative and accusative cases:

- a Numbers ending in forms of оди́н agree in gender and case with the following adjective and noun, which, however, are always in the singular.

Он купил двадцать одну новую книгу.: *He bought 21 new books.*

- b Два, две (f.), три, четыре, and all compound numbers whose last component is one of these words, are followed by a noun in the genitive singular. However, if the noun is masculine or neuter, the adjective with it takes the genitive plural.

сто три иностранных туриста: *103 foreign tourists*

If the noun is feminine, the adjective generally takes the nominative plural.

две большие страны: *2 big countries*

- c All other numbers take the genitive plural of both noun and adjective.

двенадцать больших столов: *12 big tables*

2 Ordinal numbers

1st	первый	15th	пятнадцатый
2nd	второй	16th	шестнадцатый
3rd	третий	17th	семнадцатый
4th	четвёртый	18th	восемнадцатый
5th	пятый	19th	девятнадцатый
6th	шестой	20th	двадцатый
7th	седьмой	30th	тридцатый
8th	восьмой	40th	сороковой
9th	девятый	50th	пятидесятый
10th	десятый	60th	шестидесятый
11th	одиннадцатый	70th	семидесятый
12th	двенадцатый	80th	восемидесятый
13th	тринадцатый	90th	девяностый
14th	четырнадцатый	100th	сотый

Examples of compound ordinal numbers

21st	двадцать первый
42nd	сорок второй
117th	сто семнадцатый

The use of ordinal numbers:

- a Ordinal numbers are adjectives, and must agree with the noun they are with, in the same way as other adjectives. In compound numbers only the last word (the only one with an adjectival ending) declines.

Он приедет на двадцать пятом поезде.: *He'll arrive on train No. 25.*

- b Most ordinal numbers decline like ordinary -ый adjectives. A few, namely второй, шестой, седьмой, восьмой and сороковой, decline like молодой, thus retaining the stress on the last syllable. Третий is an exception, as you will see below.

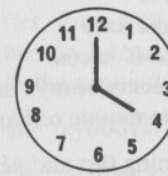
	masculine	neuter	feminine	plural
Nom.	третий as Nom.	третье	третья	третьи as Nom.
Acc.	as Gen.	третье	третью	as Gen.
Gen.	третьего		третьей	третьих
Dat.	третьему		третьей	третьим
Instr.	третьим		третьей	третьими
Loc.	третьем		третьей	третьих

3 Telling the time

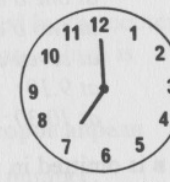
- a The hour follows the usual rule of genitive singular or plural after numbers:



час

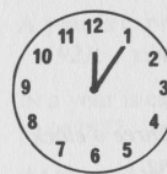


четыре часа

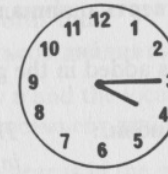


семь часов

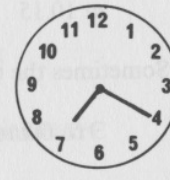
- b From the hour until the half hour, the ordinal number of the next hour is used, in the genitive:



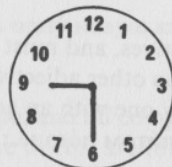
пять минут первого



четверть пятого

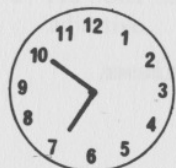


двадцать минут восьмого

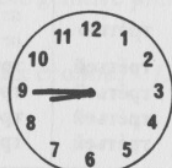


половина десятого

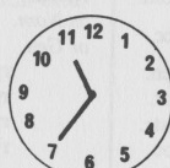
- c After the half hour and until the next hour, **без** is used with the cardinal number. The word following **без** must go into the genitive. The genitive ending of all numbers ending in **-ь** is **-и**, and it is sometimes stressed (**пяти́, десяти́, двадцати́**). The word **минут** is usually omitted in times with **без**.



без десяти́ семь



без четы́рти де́вять



без двадца́ти пяти́
оди́ннадца́ть

- d AT a time:

at what time?:	в ко́тором ча́су?
at one o'clock:	в час
at two o'clock:	в два́ часа́
at seven o'clock:	в се́мь часо́в
at 9.10:	в де́сять мину́т де́сятого
at 10.30:	в по́лови́не о́днна́дцатого

в is omitted in times containing **без** and **четы́рть**:

at 6.40	без двадца́ти се́мь
at 1.45	без четы́рти два
at 3.55	без пяти́ четы́ре
at 10.15	четы́рть о́днна́дцатого

- e Sometimes the time of day is added in the genitive:

Это бы́ло в три часа́ но́чи.:	That was at three o'clock in the morning.
Он прие́хал в четы́ре часа́ дня.:	He arrived at four o'clock in the afternoon.

From midnight, up to about 4 a.m., use **но́чи**.
From about 4 a.m. onwards, use **утра́**.
From midday, up to about 6 p.m., use **дня́** (*in the afternoon*).
From about 6 p.m. onwards, use **вече́ра**.

- f Approximation of times is made by inversion. Note the position of the preposition:

at about three o'clock: **часа́ в три**

4 Days of the week

The days of the week, beginning with Sunday, are:

воскре́сенье, понеде́льник, вто́рник, сре́да, четве́рг,
пя́тница, суббо́та.

Note also: on Wednesday: **в сре́ду** (**в** + acc.)
on Thursday: **по четве́ргам** (**по** + dat. pl.)

5 Months of the year

The months, which are all masculine, are:

янва́рь, фе́вра́ль, ма́рт, apréль, ма́й, ию́нь, ию́ль, áвгуст,
се́нтябрь, о́ктя́брь, но́ябрь, де́кабрь.

6 Dates

- a A date, at the top of a letter, for instance, is expressed by the neuter form of the ordinal number (to agree with **число**: date, which is omitted) and the month in the genitive:

Saturday, 22nd April: суббо́та, два́дцать второ́е apréля

- b ON a date is expressed by the genitive of the ordinal number:
on the 7th of November: се́дмого́ но́ября
on Monday, the 19th of June: в понеде́льник,
де́вятна́дцатого́ ию́ня

- c A year is expressed in words thus:

1921: ты́сяча де́вяты́х двáдцать пе́рвый год

- d IN a year is expressed by **в** and the locative:

in 1837: в ты́сяча во́семьсо́т три́дцать се́дмо́м году́

- e At the end of a date the year is in the genitive:

15th February, 1973: пята́дцатое́ фе́враля́, ты́сяча де́вяты́х се́мьдеся́т тре́тьего́ го́да

7 Age

Сколько вам лет?

How old are you?

Мне двадцать один год.

I'm 21.

Ему шестнадцать лет.

He is 16.

Мне было сорок четыре года.

I was 44.

Сестре будет восемь лет.

My sister will be 8.

Appendix 4

Grammatical summary

Verbs

General remarks

- 1 There are two conjugations of verbs in Russian. The most common infinitive endings of the first and second conjugation are **-ать** and **-ить** respectively. However, the infinitive ending is no sure guide to conjugation, so it is best to learn each verb with its conjugation.
- 2 Most Russian verbs have two forms: imperfective and perfective aspects (for notes on the use of the two aspects, see L3, N17a and L9, N8). Remember that the present tense is expressed by the present tense of the imperfective aspect, whereas the 'present tense' of the perfective aspect expresses the future (the perfective future).
- 3 Remember that **ты** can only be used when addressing a friend, relative or child. When addressing one person whom you do not know well, or more than one person, use **вы**.
- 4 A useful rule to remember is that the stress on the 1st person singular is always on the same syllable as on the infinitive, even if the stress shifts in other persons.

Present and perfective future tenses

First conjugation

Verbs of the first conjugation can have the following personal endings:

-ю (or -у), -ешь, -ет, -ем, -ете, -ют (or -ут)
or -у (or -ю), -ёшь, -ёт, -ём, -ёте, -ут (or -ют)

- a The most common way of forming the present tense of a first conjugation verb is to remove the **-ть** from the infinitive and add **-ю, -ешь, -ет, -ем, -ете, -ют**.
The stress remains on the same vowel as in the infinitive throughout the present tense of such a verb.
Reflexive verbs of this type have the same endings, but add **-ся** after a vowel, and **-ся** after a consonant.

дѣлать	собираться
я дѣлаю	я собираюсь
ты дѣлаешь	ты собираешься
он/она дѣлает	он/она собирается
мы дѣлаем	мы собираемся
вы дѣлаете	вы собираетесь
они дѣлают	они собираются

Verbs ending in **-ять** (*except* **стоять** and **бояться**) and first conjugation verbs ending in **-еть** also conjugate in this way, e.g. **гулять, надеяться, уметь**.

Verbs ending in **-овать** and **-евать** can be included here, as they take the same endings, although the stem is abbreviated:

чувствовать—я чувствую, ты чувствуешь

The only exception is **здороваться** (*to greet*), which is not abbreviated: **здоровуюсь, здороваешься**.

Within the remaining first conjugation verbs there are several variations:

- b Verbs with consonant changes in their stems.** First conjugation verbs ending in **-ать**, with the stem of the infinitive ending in **с, х, з, к**, and sometimes **т**, change this consonant throughout the present tense, before adding the endings **-у, -ешь, -ет, -ем, -ете, -ут**. The consonant changes are as follows: **с** and **х** to **ш**; **з** to **ж**; **к** and **т** to **ч**.

писать	сказать
я пишу́	я скажу́
ты пишешь	ты скажешь
он/она пишет	он/она скажет
мы пишем	мы скажем
вы пишете	вы скажете
они пишут	они скажут

Examples of other verbs affected in this way are:

махать (*to wave*)—машу́, машешь
плакать (*to cry*)—плачу́, плачешь
прятать (*to hide*)—прячу́, прячешь

Exceptions are **кусать** (*to bite*)—кусаю́, кусаешь; and **сосать** (*to suck*)—сосу́, сосёшь.

Note the change of stress in those verbs (such as **писа́ть, сказа́ть**), where the stress is on the ending in the infinitive. In verbs where the stress is on the stem (**пла́кать, прятать**), it remains on the stem throughout the present tense. These consonant changes in first conjugation verbs affect the present tense and the imperative.

- c First conjugation verbs with stressed endings.** Some first conjugation verbs with the stress on the ending in the infinitive retain the stress on the ending throughout the present tense. Many monosyllabic verbs also have stressed endings.

идти́	жить
я иду́	я живу́
ты идёшь	ты живёшь
он/она идёт	он/она живёт
мы идём	мы живём
вы идёте	вы живёте
они идут	они живут

The most common verbs of this type will be found in the alphabetical list of irregular verbs at the end of this section on verbs. This is because many of them have consonant changes or other irregularities.

Second conjugation

Verbs of the second conjugation have the following personal endings:

-ю (or -у), -ишь, -ит, -им, -ите, -ят (or -ат)

- a** The most common way of forming the present tense (or future, if the verb is the perfective aspect) is to remove the last three letters from the infinitive and add **-ю, -ишь, -ит, -им, -ите, -ят**:

говорить
 я говорю́
 ты говоришь
 он/она говорит
 мы говорим
 вы говорите
 они говорят

- b Verbs with stems ending in **ж, ч, ш** and **щ**. If the stem ends in **ж, ч, ш** or **щ**, add **-y** and **-at** for 1st person singular and 3rd person plural respectively:

молча́ть
я молчу́
ты молчи́шь
он/она́ молчи́т
мы молчи́м
вы молчи́те
они́ молча́т

- c Verbs with consonant changes in their stems. Verbs of the second conjugation ending in **-ить** and **-еть**, with the stem of the infinitive ending in **д, з, с, ст** and **т**, change these consonants in the 1st person singular of the present tense *only*, and the ending is then **-у**. The consonant changes are as follows: **д** and **з** to **ж**; **с** to **ш**; **ст** to **щ**; **т** to **ч** (or **щ**, see below). Note that there is a change of stress in some verbs of this type:

сиде́ть	проси́ть
я сижу́	я прошу́
ты сиди́шь	ты про́сишь
он/она́ сиди́т	он/она́ про́сит
мы сиди́м	мы про́сим
вы сиди́те	вы про́сите
они́ сидя́т	они́ про́сят

Examples of other verbs affected in this way are:

вози́ть (to convey)—**вожу́, вóзишь**
плати́ть (to pay)—**плачу́, пла́тишь**
блесте́ть (to shine)—**блещу́, блестя́шь**

In perfective verbs ending in **-тить**, whose imperfective ends in **-щать**, e.g. **посети́ть** (to visit; *imp.* **посеща́ть**), **т** changes to **щ** instead of **ч**: **я посещу́, ты посети́шь**.

- d Verbs which insert **л**. Verbs of the second conjugation ending in **-ить** and **-еть**, with the stem of the infinitive ending in **б, п, в, ф** and **м**, insert the letter **л** before the ending of the 1st person singular of the present tense *only*:

люби́ть—**я люблю́, ты люби́шь**
спать —**я сплю́, ты спи́шь**

The imperfective future tense

The future tense of imperfective verbs is formed by the future tense of **быть** and the infinitive:

рабо́тать
я бу́ду рабо́тать
ты бу́дешь рабо́тать
он/она́ бу́дет рабо́тать
мы бу́дем рабо́тать
вы бу́дете рабо́тать
они́ бу́дут рабо́тать

Its use is discussed in L12, N4.

The past tense

The ways in which the past tense is formed are not affected by conjugation or aspect. The endings change not by person, but by gender and number.

- a In verbs whose infinitive ends in a vowel followed by **-ть**, remove the **-ть** and add **л** (*m.*), **-ло** (*n.*), **-ла** (*f.*) and **-ли** (*pl.*):

деле́ть—**дела́л, дела́ло, дела́ла, дела́ли**

Watch out for a change of stress in the feminine of some verbs:

жи́ть—**жил, жи́ло, жи́ла, жи́ли**

- b Verbs ending in **-ть** or **-ти** following a consonant. If the present (or perfective future) tense stem ends in **д** or **т**, remove the last three letters from the infinitive and add **-л**. A preceding **е** may change to **ё** in the masculine only.

сестя́ (сяд-)**—сел, се́ло**

Note also:

идти́—**шёл, шло**
есть—**ел, ёло**

If the present (or perfective future) stem does not end in **д** or **т**, remove the **-ть** or **-ти** from the infinitive for the masculine form, which will not have an **л**. The **л** will be present in the other genders. A preceding **е** may change to **ё** in the masculine.

везти́ (вез)—**вёз, везло́** (to convey)
спасти́ (спас)—**спас, спасло́**

- c Verbs ending in **-чь**. Remove the **-чь** and add the **г** or **к** from the present (or perfective future) tense stem: **мочь (могу́)—мог, могло́**. A preceding **е** may change to **ё** in the masculine.

лечь (лягу́)—лёг, легло́
течь (теку́)—тёк, текло́ (to flow)

The imperative

1 The second person, singular and plural

The stem of the imperative is formed from the 3rd person plural of the present (or perfective future) tense, by removing the last two letters.

- a To stems ending in a vowel, add **-й** for the singular, and **-йте** for the plural. If the imperative is of more than one syllable, its stress will be the same as in the 1st person singular of the present (or perfective future) tense:

чита́ть (они́ чита́ют) чита́- (я чита́ю): чита́й, чита́йте
сто́ять (они́ сто́ят) сто- (я стою́): стой, сто́йте

- b To stems ending in more than one consonant, add **-и** and **-ите**. The stress will be the same as in the 1st person singular of the present (or perfective future) tense, so that the ending will sometimes be stressed:

ко́нчить (они́ ко́нчат) конч- (я ко́нчу): ко́нчи, ко́нчите
нача́ть (они́ начну́т) начн- (я начну́): начини́, начини́те
жда́ть (они́ ждут) жд- (я жду́): жди́, жди́те

- c To stems ending in a single consonant:

- i) add stressed **-й**, **-йте** if the 1st person singular of the present (or perfective future) tense is stressed on the ending:

писа́ть (они́ пи́шут) пиш- (я пишу́): пиши́, пиши́те
брати́ (они́ беру́т) бер- (я беру́): бери́, бери́те

- ii) add **-ь**, **-ьте** if the 1st person singular of the present (or perfective future) tense is stressed on the stem:

отве́тить (они́ отве́тят) ответ- (я отве́чу): отве́ть, отве́ьте
бы́ть (они́ бу́дут) буд- (я бу́ду): будь, бу́дьте

- d **Reflexive verbs**. The same rules apply for reflexive verbs. **-сь** is generally added to the reflexive, except for singular forms ending in **-й** and **-ь**, to which **-ся** is added:

верну́ться—верни́сь, верни́тесь
боя́ться—бойся́, бойте́сь

e Other forms

- i) Verbs ending in **-авать** take **-авай**, **-авайте**:

встава́ть—встава́й, встава́йте

- ii) The verb **пить** has **пей**, **пейте**. Also **лить** (to pour)—**лей**, **-те**; **бить** (to beat)—**бей**, **-те**; and compounds, e.g. **выпить**—**выпей**, **-те**.

- iii) The verbs **ехать** and **поехать** have the common form **поезжай**, **-те**. Compounds of this verb also have a common form, e.g. **приезжа́ть/прие́хать**—**приезжай**, **-те**.

- iv) The verb **дать** has **дай**, **-те**. Its compounds have similar endings.

- v) The verb **есть** has **ешь**, **-те**. Its compounds have similar endings.

2 The first person plural

The first person plural of the imperative ('let us . . .') is expressed by the 1st person plural of the perfective future tense, i.e. of the perfective aspect only, without **мы**; or the same preceded by **давай**:

спр́осим or **дава́й спр́осим**

Both these forms are singular forms, in that they are used when speaking familiarly to one person only. When speaking to one person you don't know well, or to more than one person, add **-те** as follows:

спр́осимте or **дава́йте спр́осим**

Verb list

We have included in the following list common verbs which may present difficulties to the student at first.

Of the present, or future, tense we have generally given the 1st and 2nd persons singular, and the 3rd person plural only. In such cases the remaining persons follow the 2nd person singular in style of ending and stress.

In the past tense, where the stress remains constant, we have given masculine and neuter only; where there is a change of stress, we have given all genders.

For the plural form of the imperative, add **-те**.

A few verbs in this list have their conjugation marked 'irregular'. This is because they do not conjugate in the present (or future) tense entirely like a 1st or 2nd conjugation verb, and should be carefully learnt.

<i>Infinitive</i>	бежать (<i>to run</i>) <i>irreg., imp., def.</i>	
<i>Present</i>	бегу́, бежишь, бегу́т	
<i>Past</i>	бежа́л, бежа́ло	
<i>Imperative</i>	беги́	
<i>Infinitive</i>	брать 1, <i>imp.</i>	
<i>Present</i>	беру́, берёшь, беру́т	
<i>Past</i>	бра́л, бра́ло, бра́ла; бра́ли	
<i>Imperative</i>	бери́	
<i>Infinitive</i>	быть 1, <i>imp.</i>	also забыть
<i>Future</i>	бу́ду, бу́дешь, бу́дут	
<i>Past</i>	бы́л, бы́ло, бы́ла; бы́ли	
<i>Imperative</i>	будь	
<i>Infinitive</i>	везти́ 1, <i>imp., def. (to convey)</i>	also compounds, e.g.
<i>Present</i>	везу́, везёшь, везу́т	привезти́
<i>Past</i>	вёз, везло́	
<i>Imperative</i>	вези́	
<i>Infinitive</i>	вести́ 1, <i>imp., def. (to lead)</i>	also compounds, e.g.
<i>Present</i>	веду́, ведёшь, веду́т	привести́
<i>Past</i>	вёл, вело́	
<i>Imperative</i>	веди́	
<i>Infinitive</i>	взять 1, <i>p.</i>	
<i>Future</i>	возьму́, возьмёшь, возьму́т	
<i>Past</i>	взя́л, взя́ло, взя́ла; взя́ли	
<i>Imperative</i>	возьми́	
<i>Infinitive</i>	вставать 1, <i>imp.</i>	also давать,
<i>Present</i>	встаю́, встаёшь, встаю́т	продава́ть and
<i>Past</i>	встава́л, встава́ло	узнава́ть (<i>to</i>
<i>Imperative</i>	встава́й	recognise)
<i>Infinitive</i>	дать <i>irreg., p.</i>	also compounds, e.g.
<i>Future</i>	дам, дашь, даст, да́дим, да́дите, даду́т	продать (<i>p., to sell</i>)
<i>Past</i>	да́л, да́ло, да́ла; да́ли	
<i>Imperative</i>	дай	
<i>Infinitive</i>	ездить 2, <i>imp., indef.</i>	
<i>Present</i>	ёзжу, ёздишь, ездят	
<i>Past</i>	ёзди́л, ёзди́ло	
<i>Imperative</i>	ёзди	

<i>Infinitive</i>	есть <i>irreg., imp.</i>	also compounds, e.g.
<i>Present</i>	ем, ешь, ест, е́дим, е́дите, е́дят	съесть (<i>p., to eat</i>)
<i>Past</i>	ел, ёло	
<i>Imperative</i>	ешь	
<i>Infinitive</i>	ехать 1, <i>imp., def.</i>	also compounds, e.g.
<i>Present</i>	еду́, едешь, едут	поехать, уехать
<i>Past</i>	еха́л, еха́ло	
<i>Imperative</i>	поезжа́й	
<i>Infinitive</i>	жить 1, <i>imp.</i>	
<i>Present</i>	живу́, живёшь, живу́т	
<i>Past</i>	жи́л, жи́ло, жи́ла; жи́ли	
<i>Imperative</i>	живи́	
<i>Infinitive</i>	занять 1, <i>p.</i>	
<i>Future</i>	займу́, займёшь, займу́т	
<i>Past</i>	за́нял, за́няло, за́няла; за́няли	
<i>Imperative</i>	займи́	
<i>Infinitive</i>	идти́ 1, <i>imp., def.</i>	also compounds, e.g.
<i>Present</i>	иду́, идёшь, иду́т	пойти́, войти́
<i>Past</i>	шёл, шло	
<i>Imperative</i>	иди́	
<i>Infinitive</i>	класть 1, <i>imp. (to put)</i>	
<i>Present</i>	кладу́, кладёшь, кладу́т	
<i>Past</i>	кла́л, кла́ло	
<i>Imperative</i>	клади́	
<i>Infinitive</i>	лечь 1, <i>p.</i>	
<i>Future</i>	лягу́, ляжешь, лягут	
<i>Past</i>	ле́г, легло́	
<i>Imperative</i>	ляг	
<i>Infinitive</i>	мочь 1, <i>imp.</i>	
<i>Present</i>	могу́, можешь, могут	
<i>Past</i>	мог, могло́	
<i>Imperative</i>	not used	
<i>Infinitive</i>	мыть 1, <i>imp. (to wash)</i>	also закрыть (<i>p., to</i>
<i>Present</i>	мою́, моёшь, моют	close), открыть
<i>Past</i>	мы́л, мы́ло	
<i>Imperative</i>	мой	
<i>Infinitive</i>	начать 1, <i>p.</i>	
<i>Future</i>	начну́, начнёшь, начну́т	
<i>Past</i>	нача́л, нача́ло, нача́ла; нача́ли	
<i>Imperative</i>	начни́	

<i>Infinitive</i>	нести 1, <i>imp.</i> , <i>def.</i>	also compounds, e.g.
<i>Present</i>	несу́, несёшь, несу́т	принести́
<i>Past</i>	нёс, несло́	
<i>Imperative</i>	неси́	
<i>Infinitive</i>	петь 1, <i>imp.</i> (to sing)	also compounds, e.g.
<i>Present</i>	пою́, поёшь, пою́т	спеть
<i>Past</i>	пел, пёло	
<i>Imperative</i>	пой	
<i>Infinitive</i>	пить 1, <i>imp.</i>	also compounds, e.g.
<i>Present</i>	пью́, пьёшь, пьют	выпить
<i>Past</i>	пил, пи́ло, пи́ла; пи́ли	
<i>Imperative</i>	пей	
<i>Infinitive</i>	поднять 1, <i>p.</i> (to raise, lift)	
<i>Future</i>	подниму́, поднёшь, подниму́т	
<i>Past</i>	по́днял, по́дняло, по́дняла́; по́дняли	
<i>Imperative</i>	подними́	
<i>Infinitive</i>	понять 1, <i>p.</i> (to understand)	
<i>Future</i>	пойму́, поймёшь, пойму́т	
<i>Past</i>	по́нял, по́няло, по́няла́; по́няли	
<i>Imperative</i>	пойми́	
<i>Infinitive</i>	послать 1, <i>p.</i>	
<i>Future</i>	пошлю́, пошлёшь, пошлю́т	
<i>Past</i>	посла́л, посла́ло	
<i>Imperative</i>	пошли́	
<i>Infinitive</i>	расти́ 1, <i>imp.</i> (to grow)	also вырасти
<i>Present</i>	расту́, растёшь, расту́т	
<i>Past</i>	рос, росло́, росла́; росли́	
<i>Imperative</i>	расти́	
<i>Infinitive</i>	сесть 1, <i>p.</i>	
<i>Future</i>	сяду́, сядёшь, сядут	
<i>Past</i>	сел, се́ло	
<i>Imperative</i>	сядь	
<i>Infinitive</i>	стать 1, <i>p.</i>	also встать and
<i>Future</i>	ста́ну, ста́нешь, ста́нут	надеть (надёну,
<i>Past</i>	стал, ста́ло	etc.)
<i>Imperative</i>	стань	
<i>Infinitive</i>	умереть 1, <i>p.</i>	also запереть (to
<i>Future</i>	умру́, умрёшь, умру́т	lock)
<i>Past</i>	у́мер, у́мерло, умерла́; у́мерли	
<i>Imperative</i>	умри́	

<i>Infinitive</i>	хотеть <i>irreg.</i> , <i>imp.</i>	
<i>Present</i>	хочу́, хочешь, хочет, хоти́м, хоти́те, хотят	
<i>Past</i>	хотёл, хотело́	
<i>Imperative</i>	none	
<i>Infinitive</i>	чу́ствовать 1, <i>imp.</i>	also all verbs ending
<i>Present</i>	чу́ствую, чу́ствуешь, чу́ствуют	in -овать and -евать
<i>Past</i>	чу́ствовал, чу́ствовало	except здоро́ваться
<i>Imperative</i>	чу́ствуй	(здоро́ваюсь, etc.)

Nouns

A How to recognise the gender of nouns

Masculine

- a All nouns ending in a consonant.
- b All nouns ending in **-й**.
- c Some nouns ending in **-ь**.

There are a few rules to help you determine the gender of nouns ending in **-ь**. The following are masculine:

- i) All nouns (denoting persons) with the suffix **-тель** or **-арь**.
 - ii) Names of months.
 - iii) Names of male animals, *except* **лошадь** (horse) and **мышь** (mouse).
 - iv) Names of towns, *except* **Казань**, **Астрахань**, **Тверь**.
- d Some nouns ending in **-а** and **-я**. These include diminutives of masculine nouns and male Christian names.
 - e The few nouns ending in **-ий**.

Examples

стол, дом, человек
чай, герой

водитель, читатель (reader)
секретарь (secretary, m.)
январь, июль
медведь (bear), гусь (goose)

Севастополь

мужчина, юноша (youth)
дедушка
Алеша, Володя
пролетарий (proletarian),
санаторий (sanatorium)

Neuter

- a All nouns ending in **-о** or **-е**.
- b All nouns ending in **-ие**, **-ье** or **-ёе**.
- c All nouns ending in **-мя**.
- d All indeclinable nouns of foreign origin denoting inanimate objects, *except* **кофе** (m.).
- e The word **дитя** (child) is neuter.

окно, море
здание, воскресенье,
питьё (drink)
время, имя
кинó, кафе, такси, пальто,
метро, шоссе (highway)

Feminine

- a Most nouns ending in **-а** or **-я** (with the exception of those masculine nouns mentioned in note d above).
- b All nouns ending in **-ия**.
- c Some nouns ending in **-ь**. The following are feminine:
 - i) Names of rivers and countries.
 - ii) Nouns ending in **-жь**, **-чь**, **-шь**, **-щь**.
 - iii) Nouns ending in **-сть**, *except* **гость**.
 - iv) Abstract nouns (many of which have the suffixes **-ость** and **-есть**).

девушка, квартира, тётя,
неделя, Москва

станция, декларация

Сибирь, Обь
ночь, помощь (help)
часть, новость (news)
жизнь, честность, высь
(height), любовь (love),
скорость (speed),
ненависть (hatred),
тяжесть (weight),

Adjectives as nouns

- 1 Sometimes in Russian an adjective may be used as a noun. Here is an example using the adjective **больной** (ill, sick):

Больной пошёл к врачу.: *The sick man went to the doctor's.*

- 2 A number of adjectives have come into common usage as nouns:

рабочий, столовая, передняя (hall), **ванная**

They are declined as adjectives.

B How to decline nouns

Russian vowels can be divided into two groups: 'hard' and 'soft'; and each 'hard' vowel has a 'soft' equivalent:

hard: а э ы о у
soft: я е и ё ю

As a general rule, nouns of all genders fall into two categories: 'hard' and 'soft'—'soft' nouns taking the 'soft' vowel equivalent to the 'hard' vowel in the ending of the 'hard' noun.

Masculine

	'hard'		'soft'
	1	2	3
		singular	

Nom.	заво́д	води́тель	геро́й
Acc.	заво́д	води́теля	геро́я
Gen.	заво́да	води́теля	геро́я
Dat.	заво́ду	води́телю	геро́ю
Instr.	заво́дом	води́телем	гербе́м
Loc.	заво́де	води́теле	гербе́е

plural

Nom.	заво́ды	води́тели	геро́и
Acc.	заво́ды	води́телей	геро́ев
Gen.	заво́дов	води́телей	геро́ев
Dat.	заво́дам	води́телям	геро́ям
Instr.	заво́дами	води́телями	геро́ями
Loc.	заво́дах	води́телях	геро́ях

Notes on masculine nouns

- 1 The accusative of masculine animate nouns is the same as the genitive; that of inanimate nouns is the same as the nominative. This applies to both singular and plural. Remember this point when you are using the words above as models for other masculine nouns.
- 2 Masculine nouns ending in **-а** and **-я** are declined like feminine nouns.
- 3 Some masculine nouns, of types 1 and 2, drop the **о** or **е** from the last syllable of the nominative singular throughout their declension: **оте́ц, отца́, отцу́; день, дня, дню.**
- 4 There are a few masculine nouns which end in **-ий**, e.g. **пролетáрий** (*proletarian*), **санато́рий** (*sanatorium*), and some personal names, e.g. **Васи́лий, Вале́рий**. These decline like a neuter noun ending in **-ие** (see model of **здáние** under neuter nouns), except in the accusative (see note 1 above).
- 5 A few masculine nouns signifying divisible matter have a genitive in **-у** or **-ю**, which is used (as an alternative to the normal genitive) in an expression of quantity, especially when *part* of the whole is indicated. This is known as the *partitive genitive* (see L6, N39). The most common nouns having a special partitive genitive are **чай, са́хар** (*sugar*), **сыр, снег** (*snow*), **наро́д**:

ча́шка ча́ю: *a cup of tea*; **мно́го наро́ду:** *a lot of people*
but **це́на ча́я:** *the price of tea*; **во́ля наро́да:** *the will of the people*.

- 6 When the noun ends in **ж, ц, ч, ш** or **щ**, the instrumental is **-ом** if the stress is on the end, **-ем** if the stress is not on the end:

бага́ж—багажо́м, оте́ц—отцо́м but **това́рищ—това́рищем.**

- 7 The instrumental of masculine nouns ending in **-ь** of one syllable, or more than one syllable with the stress on the last syllable, is **-ём**: **дождь—дожде́м; янва́рь—январе́м.**

- 8 Some masculine nouns of group I have the locative ending **-у́**, or **-ю́**, (always stressed) after the prepositions **в** and **на**, but normal endings after other prepositions:

о са́де: *about the garden*, but **в саду́:** *in the garden*.

Other common words which take **-у́** are **лес, год, уго́л, бе́рег, пол** (*floor*), **мост, аэропо́рт**. **Край** takes **-ю́**.

- 9 After **г, к, х, ж, ч, ш** and **щ**, the vowel **ы** must be replaced by **и**. Therefore the nominative plural of masculine nouns ending in these consonants is **-и** (except for those which belong to the group discussed in note 10 below): **парк—па́рки.**

- 10 Some masculine nouns take the ending **-а́** or **-я́** (always stressed) in the plural: **дом—дома́; учи́тель—учите́ля́** (*teacher, -s*). The most common of these are: **бе́рег, век** (*century*), **вече́р, го́лос, го́род, лес, мех, глаз, о́стров** (*island*), **па́спорт, по́езд, сче́т.**

- 11 A few nouns have two plurals, denoting different meanings:

лист	ли́сты	sheet (of paper)	ли́стья	leaves
хлеб	хле́бы	loaves	хлеба́	corn

Take care not to confuse the following plurals: **цветы́** is the plural of **цвето́к** (*flower*); **цвета́** is the plural of **цвет** (*colour*).

- 12 Some masculine nouns end in **-ья** in the nominative plural, and some change their stems before this ending: **сын—сынове́я, друг—дру́зья́**. These nouns vary in the genitive plural: those which have a stressed ending in the nominative plural end in **-ей**; those in which the ending is unstressed end in **-ев**. Compare the declension of **бра́тья** (*pl. of брат*) and **сынове́я**:

Nom.	бра́тья	сынове́я	(NB по ь)
Acc. and Gen.	бра́тьев	сынове́й	
Dat.	бра́тьям	сынове́ям	
Instr.	бра́тьями	сынове́ями	
Loc.	бра́тьях	сынове́ях	

- 13 Nouns ending in **ж, ч, ш** and **щ** take **-ей** in the genitive plural: **това́рищ—това́рищей; нож—ноже́й.**

- 14 The genitive plural of nouns ending in **ц**, where the stress is not on the final syllable, is **-ев**; where the stress is on the final syllable, it is **-ов**:

ме́сяц—ме́сяцев but **оте́ц—отцо́в**

- 15 A few masculine nouns have a genitive plural the same as the nominative singular. The most common are **раз, глаз, во́лос** (*hair*) — gen. pl. **волос, солда́т** and **челове́к**. Note that **челове́к** is only used after numerals and the words **ско́лько, сто́лько** (*so many*) and **неско́лько**; elsewhere the genitive plural of **челове́к** is **люде́й** (see note 16 below).

16 The following masculine nouns have irregular plurals:

nominative singular		nominative plural	genitive plural
господи́н	<i>Mr.</i>	господа́	госпо́д
сосе́д	<i>neighbour</i>	сосе́ди	сосе́дей
че́рт	<i>devil</i>	че́рти	чёрте́й
челове́к	<i>man, person</i>	люди́	люде́й
ребёнок	<i>child</i>	дети́	детёй

Today **дети́** is generally accepted as the plural of **ребёнок**. The singular form **дитя́** (*n.*) exists but is less commonly used. The plural form **ребя́та** also exists and is widely used colloquially with the meaning 'lads', 'fellows', and does not necessarily imply children. The names of the young of many animals end in **-ёнок** (or **-онок**). Their nominative plural ending is **-ята** (**-ята**) and the genitive plural is **-ят** (**-ят**).

17 Masculine nouns ending in **-анин** or **-янин** have irregular nominative and genitive plurals:

англича́нин	(<i>Englishman</i>)	англича́не	англича́н
крестья́нин	(<i>peasant</i>)	крестья́не	крестья́н
гражда́нин	(<i>citizen</i>)	гражда́не	гражда́н

18 The masculine noun **пу́ть** is declined as a feminine noun ending in **-ь** (see model of **часть** under feminine nouns), except in the instrumental singular, which is **путём**. The endings are all stressed.

Neuter

	'hard'		'soft'			-мя type
	1	2	3	4		
			singular			
Nom.	ме́сто	мо́ре	зда́ние	вре́мя		
Acc.	ме́сто	мо́ре	зда́ние	вре́мя		
Gen.	ме́ста	мо́ря	зда́ния	вре́мени		
Dat.	ме́сту	мо́рю	зда́нию	вре́мени		
Instr.	ме́стом	мо́рем	зда́нием	вре́менем		
Loc.	ме́сте	мо́ре	зда́нии	вре́мени		

plural

Nom.	ме́ста	мо́ря	зда́ния	вре́мена
Acc.	ме́ста	мо́ря	зда́ния	вре́мена
Gen.	ме́ст	мо́рей	зда́ний	вре́мен
Dat.	ме́стам	мо́рям	зда́ниям	вре́менам
Instr.	ме́стами	мо́рями	зда́ниями	вре́менами
Loc.	ме́стах	мо́рях	зда́ниях	вре́менах

Notes on neuter nouns

- After **г, к, х, ж, ч, ш, щ** and **ц**, the vowel **я** must be replaced by **а** and the vowel **ю** by **у**. This rule affects some nouns of type 2 in the genitive and dative singular, and in all cases in the plural except the genitive: **со́лнце** (*sun*), gen. s. — **со́лнца**, dat. s. — **со́лнцу**, etc.
- Neuter nouns ending in **-ье** and **-ёе** are declined like **мо́ре**, retaining the **ь** before the ending. Those ending in **-ёе** have stressed endings, while those in **-ье** have unstressed endings, and their locative ending may be either **-е** or **-и**. The genitive plural ending is usually **-ий**. One common noun ending in **-ье**, **пла́тье** (*dress*) has the genitive plural **пла́тьев**.
- A few neuter nouns have a plural ending of **-ья**, e. g. **перо́** (*pen*), **де́рево**. The endings are the same as for a masculine noun with an unstressed **-ья** ending (see note 12 on masculine nouns): **дерёвья**, **дерёвьев**, **дерёвьям**, **дерёвьями**, **дерёвьях**.
- Some neuter nouns with stems ending in two or more consonants have an **о** or **е** inserted between the last two consonants in the genitive plural: **окно́** — **о́кон**. The most common are **письмо́** — **пи́сем**, **число́** — **чи́сел**, **кольцо́** (*ring*) — **коле́ц**, **се́рдце** — **се́рдце́**, **полоте́нце** (*towel*) — **полоте́нце́**. Note that neuter nouns ending in **-здо**, **-ско**, **-ство**, **-сто** form their genitive without inserting anything, e.g. **ме́сто** — **мест**, **чу́ство** — **чувств**.
- A few neuter nouns, including some diminutives ending in **-ко**, end in **-и** in the nominative plural: **ябло́ко** — **ябло́ки**, **око́шко** (*small window*) — **око́шки**, **плечо́** (*shoulder*) — **плечи́**, **коле́но** (*knee*) — **колени́**, **у́хо** (*ear*) — **у́ши** (gen. **уше́й**).
- Note the following plurals: **не́бо** — **небеса́**, **чу́до** (*wonder*) — **чудеса́**.
- The noun **дитя́** (*child*) is neuter. In modern Russian it is used in the singular in the nominative and accusative cases only. It is commonly used in the plural, however, as the plural of **ребёнок** (see also note 16 on masculine nouns). Its declension in the plural is **дети́**, **детёй**, **детям**, **детьми́**, **детях**.

Feminine

	'hard'		'soft'		-ь type
	1	2	3	4	
			singular		
Nom.	маш <u>и</u> на	нед <u>е</u> ля	ста <u>н</u> ция	ча <u>с</u> ть	
Acc.	маш <u>и</u> ну	нед <u>е</u> лю	ста <u>н</u> цию	ча <u>с</u> ть	
Gen.	маш <u>и</u> ны	нед <u>е</u> ли	ста <u>н</u> ции	ча <u>с</u> ти	
Dat.	маш <u>и</u> не	нед <u>е</u> ле	ста <u>н</u> ции	ча <u>с</u> ти	
Instr.	маш <u>и</u> ной	нед <u>е</u> лей	ста <u>н</u> цией	ча <u>с</u> тью	
Loc.	маш <u>и</u> не	нед <u>е</u> ле	ста <u>н</u> ции	ча <u>с</u> ти	

plural

Nom.	маш <u>и</u> ны	нед <u>е</u> ли	ста <u>н</u> ции	ча <u>с</u> ти
Acc.	маш <u>и</u> ны	нед <u>е</u> ли	ста <u>н</u> ции	ча <u>с</u> ти
Gen.	маш <u>и</u> н	нед <u>е</u> ль	ста <u>н</u> ций	ча <u>с</u> т <u>е</u> й
Dat.	маш <u>и</u> нам	нед <u>е</u> лям	ста <u>н</u> циям	ча <u>с</u> тям
Instr.	маш <u>и</u> нами	нед <u>е</u> лями	ста <u>н</u> циями	ча <u>с</u> тями
Loc.	маш <u>и</u> нах	нед <u>е</u> лях	ста <u>н</u> циях	ча <u>с</u> тях

Notes on feminine nouns

- The two nouns **мать** (*mother*) and **дочь** (*daughter*) have a special declension. They are the same except that the instrumental plural of **дочь** is **дочерьмй**.

	singular	plural
Nom.	м <u>а</u> ть	м <u>а</u> тери
Acc.	м <u>а</u> ть	м <u>а</u> тер <u>е</u> й
Gen.	м <u>а</u> тери	м <u>а</u> тер <u>е</u> й
Dat.	м <u>а</u> тери	м <u>а</u> тер <u>я</u> м
Instr.	м <u>а</u> тер <u>ь</u> ю	м <u>а</u> тер <u>я</u> ми
Loc.	м <u>а</u> тери	м <u>а</u> тер <u>я</u> х

- Feminine nouns ending in **-овь** drop the **о** in all forms except the instrumental singular: **церковь**—gen. **церкви**; instr. **церковью**. In the singular the endings are the same as for other feminine nouns ending in **-ь**; in the plural the endings are: **церкви**, **-вей**, **-вам**, **-вами**, **-вах**.
- Feminine nouns ending in **-ья**, e.g. **статья** (*article*), **семья** (*family*) generally decline like **неделя**, with the **ь** being retained in every case except the genitive plural: **статей**, **семей**. See also note 6 on **семья**.
- In feminine nouns with stems ending in **г, к, х, ж, ч, ш** and **щ**, the vowel **и** replaces **ы** in the genitive singular and nominative plural: **река**—gen. s. **реки**; nom. pl. **реки**.

- After **ж, ч, ш, щ** and **ц**, the instrumental singular ends in **-ой** if the ending is stressed; **-ей** if it is unstressed: **овца** (*sheep*)—**овцой**; **птица** (*bird*)—**птицей**, **Алёша**—**Алёшей**.
- The instrumental singular of a few feminine nouns ending in stressed **-я** or **-ья** is **-ей**: **семья**—**семьей**.
- If a feminine noun is animate, the accusative plural is the same as the genitive plural.
- If the stem ends in two or more consonants, or in one consonant and **й** (**копейка**), **о, е**, or occasionally **ё**, is inserted before the last consonant in the genitive plural: **копейка**—**копеек**; **ложка**—**ложек**; **сестра**—**сестрер**; **деревня**—**деревень**; **тарелка**—**тарелок**.
- In nouns ending in **-жь, -чь** and **-шь, я** is replaced by **а** in the dative, instrumental and locative plurals: **ночь**—**ночам**, **ночами**, **ночах**.
- A few nouns ending in **-я** have a genitive plural ending in **-ей**: **тетя**—**тетей**.
- A few nouns, in addition to **мать** and **дочь**, have an instrumental plural ending in **-ьми**: **лошадь** (*horse*)—**лошадьми**.

Adjectives

Use of adjectives, long and short forms

The function of an adjective in a sentence may be *attributive* or *predicative*. A predicative adjective is one which appears in a simple sentence or clause composed of subject + verb *to be* + adjective, in that order, e.g. *the house is big, the girl is pretty* (although in Russian the verb *to be* is omitted). The predicative adjective is therefore completing the sense of the sentence, by itself providing important information. Adjectives in other types of sentences and clauses are generally attributive. Their function is to qualify a noun, and the information they add may not be the most important in the sentence, e.g. *the blue book is on the table*.

Generally, both in English and in Russian, an attributive adjective precedes the noun it qualifies, whereas a predicative adjective follows its noun.

When used attributively the Russian adjective agrees with the noun it qualifies in gender, number and case (**Я читал интересную книгу**). An exception to this rule is the adjective coming between a number (**два, две, три** or **четыре**) and a noun in the genitive singular: the adjective is in the genitive plural if the noun is masculine or neuter, and in the nominative plural if the noun is feminine (for examples, see Appendix 3). When used predicatively the adjective agrees with the noun in gender and number only, as it can only be in the nominative (**Книга очень интересная**).

Russian adjectives in their long form are generally attributive, but may also be used predicatively. Short form adjectives can only be used predicatively.

Long adjectives

Remember that an adjective must always agree with its noun, which means that when it is qualifying a masculine singular animate or a plural animate noun, the accusative is the same as the genitive; when the noun is inanimate, the accusative of the adjective is the same as the nominative (except in the feminine singular).

Normal type

A	masculine	neuter	feminine	plural
Nom.	но́вый	но́вое	но́вая	но́вые
Acc.	as Nom. or Gen.	но́вое	но́вую	as Nom. or Gen.
Gen.	но́вого		но́вой	но́вых
Dat.	но́вому		но́вой	но́вым
Instr.	но́вым		но́вой	но́выми
Loc.	но́вом		но́вой	но́вых

B Stems ending in г, к and х

(Note: these should not be confused with soft adjectives although the nominative masculine ending is **-ий**. The difference in declension from normal type A is merely due to the spelling rule that **и** replaces **ы** after **г, к** and **х**.)

	masculine	neuter	feminine	plural
Nom.	ма́ленький	ма́ленькое	ма́ленькая	ма́ленькие
Acc.	as Nom. or Gen.	ма́ленькое	ма́ленькую	as Nom. or Gen.
Gen.	ма́ленького		ма́ленькой	ма́леньких
Dat.	ма́ленькому		ма́ленькой	ма́леньким
Instr.	ма́леньким		ма́ленькой	ма́ленькими
Loc.	ма́леньком		ма́ленькой	ма́леньких

C Adjectives ending in -ой

Adjectives ending in **-ой** in the nominative masculine singular have stressed endings throughout their declension. They, too, are variants of the normal type: those with stems ending in **г, к, х, ж** and **ш** take type B endings; the remainder take type A endings. Thus **большой** and **плохой** are declined like **ма́ленький**, whereas **мясной** is declined like **но́вый**.

Soft type

	masculine	neuter	feminine	plural
Nom.	си́ний	си́нее	си́няя	си́ние
Acc.	as Nom. or Gen.	си́нее	си́нюю	as Nom. or Gen.
Gen.	си́него		си́ней	си́них
Dat.	си́нему		си́ней	си́ним
Instr.	си́ним		си́ней	си́ними
Loc.	си́нем		си́ней	си́них

	masculine	neuter	feminine	plural
Nom.	трéтий	трéтье	трéтья	трéтьи
Acc.	<i>as Nom. or Gen.</i>	трéтье	трéтью	<i>as Nom. or Gen.</i>
Gen.	трéтьего		трéтьей	трéтьих
Dat.	трéтьему		трéтьей	трéтьим
Instr.	трéтьим		трéтьей	трéтьими
Loc.	трéтьем		трéтьей	трéтьих

Mixed type

These are adjectives with unstressed endings, with stems ending in **ж, ч, ш** and **щ**.

	masculine	neuter	feminine	plural
Nom.	хорóший	хорóшее	хорóшая	хорóшие
Acc.	<i>as Nom. or Gen.</i>	хорóшее	хорóшую	<i>as Nom. or Gen.</i>
Gen.	хорóшего		хорóшей	хорóших
Dat.	хорóшему		хорóшей	хорóшим
Instr.	хорóшим		хорóшей	хорóшими
Loc.	хорóшем		хорóшей	хорóших

Short adjectives

Only adjectives of quality, and of these only those which have degrees of comparison, can have the abbreviated form.

Most qualitative adjectives may be long in form (**красівая дéвушка**) or short (**дéвушка краси́ва**).

Some adjectives have only the long form, including adjectives ending in **-ский**, adjectives of material (e.g. **деревянный**: *wooden*), most soft adjectives, **мáленький** and **большóй**. To express *big* predicatively **вели́к** can be used, which is the short form of **вели́кий**: *great*.

Adjectives of colour are rarely used in the short form.

Adjectives which must be used in the short form when they are the predicate include **вídный** (*visible*), **слýшный** (*audible*), **готóвый**, **довóльный**, **закрýтый**, **открýтый** and **покрýтый** (*covered*), e.g. **Мы готóвы.**; **Окнó закрýто.**

Рад exists only in the short form.

To form short adjectives

The masculine of most short adjectives is formed by removing the ending from the full form of the adjective: **нóвый**—**нов**. The other genders and the plural are then formed by adding the endings **-о, -а, -ы**, or **-о, -а, -и**, to the masculine. Note that there is sometimes a change of stress in the feminine: practically all adjectives of two syllables have stress on the ending in the feminine short form.

	masculine	neuter	feminine	plural
нóвый	нов	нóво	новá	нóвы
тíхий	тих	тíхо	тихá	тíхи

When the stem of an adjective ends in two consonants difficult to pronounce together, an **о, е** or **ё** is inserted between the consonants in the masculine short form only:

	masculine	neuter	feminine	plural
злой (<i>bad, evil</i>)	зол	зло	зла	злы
жáрский	жáрок	жáрко	жаркá	жáрки
стрáнный	стрáнен	стрáнно	стрáнна	стрáнны
умный (<i>clever</i>)	умён	умно́	умна́	умны́

If there is a soft sign between the last two consonants, it is replaced by **е** in the masculine short form:

довóльный	довóлен	довóльно	довóльна	довóльны
------------------	----------------	-----------------	-----------------	-----------------

also note

спокóйный	спокóен	спокóйно	спокóйна	спокóйны
------------------	----------------	-----------------	-----------------	-----------------

Note what happens in adjectives with **ё**:

тёмный (<i>dark</i>)	тёмен	темно́	темна́	тёмны
тёплый	тёпел	тепло́	тепла́	тёплы
лёгкий	лёгок	легко́	легка́	лёжки
				<i>or легки́</i>

Impersonal expressions and adverbs*

Impersonal expressions and adverbs formed from adjectives have the same ending as the neuter short form of the adjective:

тепло́	<i>it is warm or warmly</i>	Мне холо́дно.	<i>I'm cold.</i>
холо́дно	<i>it is cold or coldly</i>	Ему́ скúчно.	<i>He's bored.</i>

*Further notes on adverbs will be found later in the appendix, after this section on adjectives.

The comparative and superlative of adjectives

There are two main kinds of comparatives and superlatives of adjectives in Russian: the compound, or long form, and the short form. In their functions the compound and short comparatives may be said to correspond to the long and short forms of adjectives. If the comparative is used predicatively, it is nearly always preferable to use the short form, whereas if the comparative is used attributively, especially with a noun in a case other than the nominative, the long form must be used. The different types of superlative, however, can be used attributively or predicatively.

Compound forms

- a The compound comparative is formed with **более** (*more*) and **мéнее** (*less*), both words being indeclinable, together with the long form of the adjective to agree with the noun:

более красивая девушка:	a more beautiful girl
мéнее умный ученик:	a less clever pupil
Мы живём в более новом доме.:	We live in a newer house.

Более and менее may be used with short form adjectives:

Это дере́во ме́нее высо́ко, чем то. : This tree is less tall than that [one].

- b The compound superlative is formed with **са́мый**, which must agree with the adjective, and declines like **новый**:

са́мая краси́вая де́вушка:	the most beautiful girl
Я чита́ю са́мую интере́сную кни́гу.:	I'm reading the most interesting book.

The compound superlative can also be formed by putting the indeclinable **наиболее** (*the most*) before the long adjective:

Этот учени́к **наиболее** у́мный That pupil is the cleverest in the class.

Certain adjectives (including those ending in **-ический**) have no short forms, so the compound forms must always be used.

Short forms

- a The short comparative does not decline, and is used predicatively. It is formed in two ways:

- i) by removing the ending from the adjective, and adding **-ее** (or **-ей**, which is less common) to the stem: **но́вый**—**нове́е** (**нове́й**).

The stress on such comparatives is on the ending if the adjective is of two syllables. If the adjective is of three or more syllables, the stress remains in the same position as in the long adjective:

краси́вый—**краси́вее**.

Note the following exceptions, **холо́дный**—**холодн́ее**, **горя́чий** (*hot*)—**горяч́ее**, **весёлый**—**весел́ее**.

- ii) by changing the final consonant, or consonants, of the stem, and adding **-е**. The following adjectives form their comparative in this way:

stems ending in **г, д** and **зк** change to **ж**:

дорого́й—доро́же, молодóй—моло́же, низкий—ни́же, близкий—бли́же

stems ending in **к, т** and **тк** change to **ч**:

я́ркий (*bright*)—я́рче, бога́тый—бога́че, корóткий (*short*)—корóче

stems ending in **х** change to **ш**:

ти́хий (*quiet*)—ти́ше

stems ending in **ст** change to **щ**:

чи́стый—чи́ще

Some comparatives ending in **-е** are irregular:

большóй—больш́е	широ́кий—ши́ре (<i>wide</i>)
мáленький—мэ́ньше	глубо́кий—глуб́же
хоро́ший—лу́чше	далёкий—да́льше
плохо́й—ху́же	высо́кий—вы́ше
ста́рый—ста́рше	дешё́вый—дешё́вле (<i>cheap</i>)

Note that **больш́е** and **мэ́ньше** are also the comparatives of **мно́го** (*much*) and **мáло** (*little*), and as such they are followed by the genitive:

больш́е ма́сла: more butter

- b The short superlative is formed by adding **-ейший** or **-а́йший**. The ending **-а́йший** (always stressed) is added to adjectives with stems ending in **г, к, зк** and **х**, which in the superlative change to **ж, ч, ж** and **ш** respectively: **близкий**—**ближа́йший**, **ти́хий**—**тиша́йший**. Only adjectives which have a short comparative in **-ее** or **-е** can have this type of superlative, and not all of these. They are declined like

mixed adjectives (**новѣйший, новѣйшее, новѣйшая**).
This form is mostly used to express the absolute superlative, indicating a very high degree of a quality, and often has an emotional rather than a factual meaning:

Это красивѣйший вид.: *It's a most beautiful, or extremely beautiful, view.*

Other forms

- 1 A frequent way of expressing the superlative in Russian is to use the comparative with **всего́** (meaning *than everything*) or **всех** (*than all*):

Она́ больше всего́ любит классическую музыку.: *She likes classical music most of all (more than everything).*
Этот студѣнт умнѣе всех в класе.: *This student is the cleverest in the class (cleverer than all).*

- 2 The short declinable comparative. In addition to the forms already mentioned, there are four pairs of adjectives with short comparative forms, which decline like ordinary adjectives:

большой	большій	bigger
маленький	мѣньший	smaller
плохой	хѹдший	worse, worst
хороший	лѹчший	better, best
высокий	высший	higher, highest
низкий	низший	lower, lowest
молодой	младший	younger, youngest
старый	старший	older, oldest

Only the first pair are real comparatives, and must be used when the comparative is required as an attribute:

Мы живѣм в большем (мѣньшем) доме.: *We live in a bigger (smaller) house.*

(Более большой cannot be used.) The superlatives of these two adjectives, however, are **самый большой** and **самый маленький**. The rest can be used as comparatives or superlatives. Note that **высший** and **низший** are not used to mean *higher* and *lower* in a physical sense; for these **более высокий** and **более низкий** must be used, e.g. **более высокое здание:** *a taller building*, but **высшее образованіе:** *higher education*.

These forms are never used predicatively; the short comparative ending in **-е** must be used when a predicative is required:

Он старше и играет лучше.: *He is older and plays better.*

The short comparatives of all these eight adjectives will be found under Note ii in the section on short comparatives above.

Further information on comparatives

- 1 *Than* is expressed after a comparative in Russian in two ways:
a) by the conjunction **чем**, preceded by a comma, and the object of comparison in the nominative.

Миша старше, чем Пѣтя.: *Misha is older than Petya.*

or **b)** by the object of comparison being put into the genitive:

Он старше меня.: *He is older than me.*

With the short form of the comparative, **b** tends to be used more than **a**.

a must be used, however, with the compound comparative, and when the objects compared are not in the nominative:

Он интересуется историей больше, чем русским языком.: *He is interested in history more than in Russian.*

It is also essential to use **чем** when the object of comparison is *his*, *hers* or *theirs*:

Наша школа больше, чем их.: *Our school is bigger than theirs.*

(Наша школа больше их would mean *Our school is bigger than THEM*.)

- 2 For *much*, *far* with a comparative, the word **гораздо** must be used.

Этот поезд гораздо быстрее, чем другой.: *This train is much faster than the other [one].*

Adverbs and impersonal expressions

Many adverbs in Russian can be used as impersonal expressions, thus **холодно** can mean *coldly* or *it is cold*.

Many adverbs are identical in form to the neuter short adjective:
Озеро тихо.: *The lake is quiet.*, and **Он говорил тихо.**: *He spoke quietly.*

The main types of adverbs formed from adjectives are:

- a those identical with neuter short adjectives, mostly ending in **-о**, but occasionally in **-е**: **искренне** (*sincerely*).
- b those formed from adjectives ending in **-ский**, which end in **-и**: **фантастический**—**фантастически**, **геройский**—**геройчески** (*heroically*).
- c some of those ending in **-и** have the prefix **по-**: **по-русски**, **по-дружески** (*in a friendly way*), **по-человечески** (*humanely*).
- d some adverbs are formed by means of the prefix **по-** and the ending of the masculine dative singular: **по-новому** (*in a new way*), **по-другому** (*in another way*).

Comparatives and superlatives of adverbs and impersonal expressions

The comparatives of adverbs and impersonal expressions (of the type similar to neuter short adjectives) are the same as short comparatives of adjectives (see section on adjectives in this appendix):

Поезд идёт скорее.: *The train is going more quickly.*
Холоднее сегодня, чем вчера.: *It's colder today than yesterday.*

The superlative of an adverb is formed by using the comparative with **всех** (or **всего**):

Она танцует лучше всех.: *She dances best of all (better than all).*

or by using **наиболее** and the adverb not in the comparative:

Наиболее красиво танцевала Нина.: *Nina danced the most beautifully.*

Other types of adjectives and pronouns

Demonstrative adjectives **этот** and **тот**

	masculine	neuter	feminine	plural
Nom.	этот	это	эта	эти
Acc.	as Nom. or Gen.	это	эту	as Nom. or Gen.
Gen.	этого		этой	этих
Dat.	этому		этой	этим
Instr.	этим		этой	этими
Loc.	этом		этой	этих

	masculine	neuter	feminine	plural
Nom.	тот	то	та	те
Acc.	as Nom. or Gen.	то	ту	as Nom. or Gen.
Gen.	того		той	тех
Dat.	тому		той	тем
Instr.	тем		той	тёми
Loc.	том		той	тех

Remember that **это** is used as an indefinite pronoun, meaning *it is* or *this is*: **Что это? Это комната.**

весь

	masculine	neuter	feminine	plural
Nom.	весь	всё	вся	все
Acc.	as Nom. or Gen.	всё	всю	as Nom. or Gen.
Gen.	всего		всей	всех
Dat.	всему		всей	всем
Instr.	всем		всей	всеми
Loc.	всём		всей	всех

Всё is also the pronoun *everything*.

Все is also the pronoun *everyone, everybody*.

Possessive adjectives

мой (твой, свой)

	masculine	neuter	feminine	plural
Nom.	мой	моё	моя	мои
Acc.	as Nom. or Gen.	моё	мою	as Nom. or Gen.
Gen.	моего		моёй	моих
Dat.	моему		моёй	моим
Instr.	моим		моёй	моими
Loc.	моём		моёй	моих

наш (ваш)

Nom.	наш	наше	наша	наши
Acc.	as Nom. or Gen.	наше	нашу	as Nom. or Gen.
Gen.	нашего		нашей	наших
Dat.	нашему		нашей	нашим
Instr.	нашим		нашей	нашими
Loc.	нашем		нашей	наших

чей

Nom.	чей	чьё	чья	чьи
Acc.	as Nom. or Gen.	чьё	чью	as Nom. or Gen.
Gen.	чьего		чей	чьих
Dat.	чьему		чей	чьим
Instr.	чьим		чей	чьими
Loc.	чьём		чей	чьих

The following are all declined as adjectives: **самый, который** (relative pronoun *which, who*) **какой** and **такой**.

Personal pronouns

Nom.	я	ты	он, онó	она́	мы	вы	они́
Acc.	меня́	тебя́	его́	её	нас	вас	их
Gen.	меня́	тебя́	его́	её	нас	вас	их
Dat.	мне	тебе́	ему́	ей	нам	вам	им
Instr.	мной	тобой	им	ей	нами́	вами́	ими́
Loc.	мне	тебе́	нём	ней	нас	вас	них

After prepositions the other cases of **он, онó, она́** and **они́** are preceded by the letter **н**: **у него, от неё, с ними**.

This does not apply when **его́, её** and **их** are being used as possessive adjectives: **у его́ брата, с её сестрой**.

Nom.	—	кто	что
Acc.	себя́	кого́	что
Gen.	себя́	кого́	чего́
Dat.	себе́	кому́	чему́
Instr.	собой	кем	чем
Loc.	себе́	ком	чём

- Forms of **себя́** must be used instead of other personal pronouns if in a given clause a personal pronoun refers to the same person or thing as the subject:

Она́ всегда говори́ла о себе́.: *She was always talking about herself.*

- The pronouns **никто́** (*nobody*) and **ничто́** (*nothing*) are declined like **кто** and **что** but when used with a preposition, the latter is inserted between **ни** and **кто** or **что** and is written separately:

Мы ни о ком не говори́ли.: *We weren't talking about anyone.*

- Pronouns with suffixes **-то** and **-нибудь** are explained in L27, N9.

Prepositions

Preposition	Case taken	Meaning
без	genitive	without
благодаря	dative	thanks to
в, во	accusative	into, to (<i>motion</i>)
	locative	in, at (<i>location</i>)
вместо	genitive	instead of
вокруг	genitive	around
для	genitive	for
до	genitive	up to, to, as far as; before (<i>in expressions of time</i>)
за	accusative	at, for
	instrumental	beyond, behind; for
из	genitive	from, out of
из-за	genitive	because of
к, ко	dative	to, towards by (<i>in expressions of time</i>)
между	instrumental (in some exceptions genitive)	among, between
на	accusative	on to, to (<i>motion</i>); for
	locative	on, at (<i>location</i>)
над	accusative	above, over (<i>motion</i>)
	instrumental	above, over (<i>location</i>)
о, об, обо	locative	about, concerning
около	genitive	near, approximately
от	genitive	from, away from
перед	instrumental	before, in front of
по	accusative	at (<i>price</i>)
	dative	for; according to; along
под	accusative	under, below (<i>motion</i>)
	instrumental	under, below (<i>location</i>)
после	genitive	after
против	genitive	against, opposite
с, со	genitive	from, from off
	instrumental	with
у	genitive	at, by. Also denotes possession.
через	accusative	across, through; in, after (<i>in expressions of time</i>)

Note the following pairs of opposites in prepositions denoting motion to and from: **в—из; на—с; к—от; до—от.**

Using the Russian/English vocabulary

Abbreviations used

acc.	accusative
adj.	adjective
adv.	adverb
dat.	dative
def.	definite
f.	feminine
gen.	genitive
imp.	imperfective
indec.	indeclinable
indef.	indefinite
inf.	infinitive
instr.	instrumental
loc.	locative
m.	masculine
n.	neuter
nom.	nominative
p.	perfective
past	past tense
pers.	person
pl.	plural
sing.	singular

- 1 The number preceding each word refers to the lesson in which that word first appears, so that any doubts about the correct usage of the word can be checked from the text and notes.
- 2 Gender, plurals, etc., are only given where they are irregular.
- 3 Every verb is followed by its conjugation number and aspect, and also by the first two persons whenever the conjugation is not completely straightforward.
- 4 Prepositions are given with the case, or cases, they take.

Russian/English

A

- 1 а and, but
23 август August
25 авиа by air
25 авиапочтой by air-mail
7 автобус bus
1 автобусная остановка bus stop
22 автомат automatic machine
26 администратор receptionist
28 актёр actor
19 альбом album
29 Америка America
26 американец (*gen. американца*)
an American
27 американка an American (*female*)
26 американский American
26 английский English
26 англичанин (*pl. англичане*)
Englishman
27 англичанка Englishwoman
13 ангина tonsillitis
8 антракт interval
4 аппетит appetite
23 апрель (*m.*) April
14 аптека chemist's
14 аптекарша chemist (*femàle*)
15 арбуз water-melon
28 артист artiste
11 архитектура architecture
20 аспирант graduate student
20 аспирантура post-graduate course
20 аспирант-физик post-graduate
physicist
14 аспирин aspirin
1 аэропорт (в аэропорту) airport

Б

- 1 багаж luggage
8 балерина ballerina
8 балет ballet
16 без (+ *gen.*) without
4 белый white
8 бельэтаж dress circle
11 берег (на берегу; *pl. берега*) shore,
bank
20 беречь 1, *imp.* (берегу, бережешь)
to take care
17 беспокоить 2, *imp.* to worry
6 бефстроганов beef Stroganov
26 библиотека library

- 16 билет ticket
24 благодаря (+ *dat.*) thanks to
25 бланк form (for telegram)
25 ближе nearer
7 близко (от) near (to)
16 бог God
16 слава богу! thank God!
12 богатый rich
27 бок side
13 болен, больно, -на, -ны painful,
ill
13 болеть 1, *imp.* (болею, болеешь)
to be ill
13 болеть 2, *imp.* (болит, болят—
3rd pers. only) to ache, hurt
14 боль (*f.*) ache, pain
3 больница hospital
21 больше more; bigger
1 большой big, great
8 Большой театр the Bolshoi Theatre
6 борщ borsch
26 ботинок (*gen. ботинка*) shoe, boot
27 бояться (+ *gen.*) 2, *imp.* to be
afraid (of)

- 18 брат (*pl. братья*) brother
6 брать 1, *imp.* (беру, берёшь) to
take
20 брюнет dark-haired man
12 будет (*fut. of быть*; буду, будешь)
will be
28 будто/как будто as if, as though
12 будущий next
15 булочная baker's
6 бульон bouillon, clear soup
6 бутылка bottle
28 бы see L28, N3
9 бывать 1, *imp.* to be
25 быстрее faster
25 быстро fast, quickly
1 быть 1, *imp.* to be

В

- 2 в, во (+ *loc.*) in, at
5 (+ *acc.*) to, into
7 вагон carriage
24 важный important
1 валюта foreign currency
26 ванная bath, bathroom
1 ваш, ваше, -а; -и your, yours
введение introduction

- 3 вдруг suddenly
20 ведь after all
29 везде everywhere
28 верить 2, *imp.* to believe
22 вернуться 1, *p.* (вернётся,
вернётся) to return
18 верный true
24 вероятно probably
18 весёлый happy
23 весенний spring (*adj.*)
10 весна spring
10 весной in spring
1 весь, всё, вся; все all
24 весьма extremely
15 ветчина ham
3 вечер (*pl. вечера*) evening
14 добрый вечер good evening
3 вечером in the evening
30 вещь (*f.*) thing
12 взморье coast, seaside
3 взрослый grown-up, adult
6 взять 1, *p.* (возьму, возьмёшь)
to take
26 вид view
23 иметь в виду to have in mind
5 видеть 2, *imp.* (вижу, видишь)
to see
4 вилка fork
6 вино wine
15 виноград (*sing. only*) grapes
19 витрина shop-window
29 вкусно deliciously
6 вкусный delicious, tasty
9 вместе together
29 вместо (+ *gen.*) instead (of)
29 вместо того, чтобы (+ *inf.*)
instead of (doing)
16 внимание attention
29 внутри inside
10 во see в
6 вода water
1 водитель (*m.*) driver
6 водка vodka
18 военный war (*adj.*), military
10 возвращаться 1, *imp.* to return
10 воздух air
30 возможно possible
28 возможность (*f.*) possibility
18 война war
11 войти 1, *p.* (войду, войдёшь)
to go in, enter

- 9 вокзал main line station
14 вокруг (+ *gen.*) around
27 волейбол volley-ball
11 волнение emotion
14 волноваться 1, *imp.* to be worried
1 вон там over there
8 вообще generally
29 вопрос question
18 восемнадцатый eighteenth
18 восемнадцать eighteen
8 восемь eight
15 восемьдесят eighty
10 воскресенье Sunday
29 восток east
29 восточный eastern
21 восхищаться (+ *instr.*) 1, *imp.*
to be carried away (by), be 'mad
about'
8 восьмой eighth
1 вот here is
11 впервые for the first time
29 впереди in front
21 впечатление impression
3 врач doctor
4 время (*n.*; *gen. времени*) time
10 время года season
8 все everyone
2 всё all, everything
9 всегда always
23 всё-таки all the same
20 вскоре soon after
18 вспоминать 1, *imp.* to remember,
recall
22 вспомнить 2, *p.* to remember,
recall
7 вставать 1, *imp.* (встаю, встаёшь)
to get up
13 встать 1, *p.* (встану, встанешь)
to get up
12 встретить 2, *p.* (встречу,
встретишь) to meet
4 встретиться (с + *instr.*) 2, *p.* to
meet one another
1 встреча meeting
12 встречать 1, *imp.* to meet
26 встречаться (с + *instr.*) 1, *imp.*
to meet one another
29 всякий every, all kinds of
10 вторник Tuesday
2 второй second
23 во-вторых secondly

- 6 на второ́е for second course
6 входи́ть 2, *imp.* (вхожу́, вступи́шь)
to go in, enter
4 вчера́ yesterday
1 вы (*gen.* вас) you
19 выбра́ть 1, *p.* (выберу́, выбере́шь)
to choose
14 вывеска́ shop sign
17 выгляде́ть 2, *imp.* (выгляжу́,
выгляди́шь) to look, seem
11 вые́хать 1, *p.* (выеду́, выеде́шь)
to go out (by transport)
13 вызва́ть 1, *p.* (вызову́, вызове́шь)
to call, summon
11 вы́йти 1, *p.* (выйду́, выйде́шь)
to go out (on foot)
20 вы́йти за́муж (за + *gen.*)
to get married (to), (take a husband)
30 выпить 1, *p.* (выпью́, выпье́шь)
to drink
20 выра́сти 1, *p.* (вырасту́,
вырасте́шь) to grow up
20 высо́кий tall, high
5 высо́тное зда́ние tall building,
skyscraper
7 выста́вка exhibition
25 вы́ход exit
7 выходи́ть 2, *imp.* (выхожу́,
выходи́шь) to go out (on foot)
25 выше́ higher

Г

- 5 газе́та newspaper
28 Га́млет Hamlet
15 гастронóм grocery store
1 где where
14 где́ же wherever
27 где-то somewhere
17 геро́й hero
20 глава́ chapter
11 гла́вный main
27 глаз (*pl.* глаза́) eye
11 глубо́кий deep
24 глубо́коуважа́емый dear (deeply
respected)
2 говори́ть 2, *imp.* to talk, say, speak
12 год (в го́ду; *gen. pl.* лет) year
21 голла́ндский Dutch
13 голова́ head
14 головна́я боль headache
30 го́лос (*pl.* голоса́) voice

- 29 голу́бой light blue
29 гора́ (*acc.* го́ру; *pl.* го́ры) mountain
25 гора́здо much
13 го́рло throat
1 го́род (*pl.* города́) town
29 гостепри́имный hospitable
23 гостепри́мство hospitality
23 гости́ница hotel
17 гость (*m.*; *pl.* гости́, госте́й,
гостя́м) guest
18 бы́ть в гостя́х у to be visiting
17 приходи́ть в гости́ к to go to visit
14 гото́в, -о, -а; -ы ready
20 гра́дус degree
20 ско́лько се́годня гра́дусов?
what's the temperature today?
13 гра́дусник thermometer
15 грамм gram
13 грипπ 'flu
27 гру́дь (*f.*) chest
29 грузи́н Georgian
11 гру́ппа group
15 гру́ша pear
29 гуля́ть 1, *imp.* to go for a walk

Д

- 1 да yes
14 да не́т but no, certainly not
17 дава́й, дава́йте let's
17 дава́ть 1, *imp.* (даю́, даёшь) to give
9 давно́ a long time ago, for a long
time
29 да́же even
4 дале́ко far away
18 Да́льний Восто́к the Far East
11 да́льше further
19 дари́ть 2, *imp.* (дарю́, дари́шь)
to give, present
17 да́ть *p.* (дам, дашь, даст, да́дим,
дади́те, даду́т) to give
9 да́ча dacha (wooden country
cottage)
4 два (*m. and n.*) две (*f.*) two
20 двадца́тый twentieth
15 два́дцать twenty
12 двена́дцатый twelfth
12 двена́дцать twelve
17 две́рь (*f.*) door
15 двести́ two hundred
21 дво́рец (*gen.* дво́рица́) palace
18 двою́родный брат cousin

- 27 де́вочка little girl
2 де́вушка girl
22 де́вяно́сто ninety
9 де́вятый ninth
9 де́вять nine
19 де́вятна́дцатый nineteenth
19 де́вятна́дцать nineteen
17 де́душка (*m.*) grandfather
26 де́журная dezhurnaya
8 де́йствие act
28 де́йствительно́ really
23 де́кабрь (*m.*; *gen.* декаб́ря)
December
23 дека́н dean
1 декла́рация customs declaration
form
2 де́лать 1, *imp.* to do; make
2 де́ло (*pl.* дела́) business, matter
2 в че́м де́ло? what's the matter?
14 как тво́й де́ла? how are things?
2* де́ло в то́м, что the fact is that
20 по де́лам on business
5 де́нь (*m.*; *gen.* дня́, *pl.* дни́) day
12 дне́м in the daytime
17 де́нь ро́ждения birthday
14 де́ньги (*pl. only*; *gen.* де́нег)
money
2 дере́вня (*gen. pl.* дере́вня́)
village
25 дере́во (*pl.* дере́вья) tree
10 де́сятый tenth
10 де́сять ten
28 де́тский сеа́нс children's
performance
27 де́тство childhood
28 ди́кий wild
20 диссе́ртация thesis, dissertation
25 дли́нный long
24 для́ (+ *gen.*) for
12 дне́м in the daytime
7 до́ (+ *gen.*) to, up to
1 до́ свидания́ goodbye
29 до́бро пожа́ловать! welcome!
18 до́бродя́ goodness
4 до́брый good
8 дово́лен, дово́льно, -на; -ны
pleased
26 дово́льно quite
23 дождь (*m.*; *gen.* дождя́) rain
23 дождь и́дёт it rains, it is raining
13 до́ктор Doctor

- 24 до́лгий long
9 до́лго for a long time
1 до́лжен, должно́, -на́; -ны́ must,
has to
3 до́м (*pl.* дома́) block of flats,
house, home
1 до́ма at home
3 домо́й homeward
17 чу́вствуйте се́бя, как до́ма
make yourself at home
12 до́м о́тдыха holiday home
15 домо́ашнее хо́зяйство domestic
chores
29 доро́га road, journey
25 доро́гой dear, expensive
25 доро́же dearer
30 доста́точно enough, sufficiently
11 досто́примеча́тельность (*f.*)
'sight', attraction
10 до́чка little daughter
10 дочь daughter
11 дре́вний ancient
12 дру́г (*pl.* друзья́) friend
4 друго́й other, another
28 дру́жба friendship
3 ду́мать 1, *imp.* to think
2 ду́ша soul
2 в ду́ше at heart

Е

- 6 егó (*gen. of он*) him, it; his, its
11 е́динственный only
8 её (*gen. of она́*) her, it; hers, its
7 е́здить 2, *imp. indef.* (е́зжу, е́зди́шь)
to go (by transport)
25 е́сли if
4 е́сть is, there is
6 е́сть *imp.* (ем, е́шь, е́ст, е́дим,
е́дите, е́дят) to eat
6 я хо́чу е́сть I'm hungry
1 е́хать 1, *imp. def.* (еду́, е́де́шь)
to go (by transport)
3 е́щё still
10 е́щё раз again, once more

Ж

- 28 жа́леть 1, *imp.* to regret
17 жа́ль what a pity
20 жа́ра heat
20 жа́ркий hot
5 жда́ть 1, *imp.* (жду́, жде́шь) to wait
(for), to expect

- 14 же, ж *see* L14, N9a
 18 желать *1, imp.* to wish
 25 жёлтый yellow
 8 жена (*pl.* жёны) wife
 24 женат, -ы married (*m. only*)
 8 женщина woman
 24 женитьба marriage
 3 жениться (*на + loc.*) 2, *imp. and p.* (женюсь, женишься) to get married (take a wife)
 21 живой living, live
 11 живописный picturesque
 8 живопись (*f.*) art (painting)
 2 жизнь (*f.*) life
 2 жить *1, imp.* (живу, живёшь) to live; stay
 5 журнал magazine
- 3
- 29 за (+ *instr.*) beyond, behind
 18 (+ *acc.*) at, in, for, during
 1 за границей abroad
 13 заболеть *1, p.* to fall ill
 3 забывать *1, imp.* to forget
 5 забыть *1, p.* (забуду, забудешь) to forget
 18 завидовать (+ *dat.*) *1, imp.* (завидую, завидуешь) to envy
 23 зависеть (от) to depend (on)
 2 завод big factory, plant
 9 завтра tomorrow
 4 завтрак breakfast
 4 завтракать *1, imp.* to have breakfast
 12 загорать *1, imp.* to sunbathe
 23 задача problem
 6 заказ order
 6 заказать *1, p.* (закажу, закажешь) to order
 6 заказывать *1, imp.* to order
 29 закон law
 25 закончить 2, *p.* to finish
 27 закрывать *1, imp.* to shut, close
 14 закрыт, -о, -а; -ы closed
 6 закуска hors d'œuvre
 8 зал hall, auditorium
 11 замечательный remarkable
 15 заниматься (+ *instr.*) *1, imp.* to be occupied, busy (with)
 23 занятия (*pl.*) studies
 1 занят, -о, -а; -ы occupied

- 6 занять *1, p.* (займу, займёшь) to occupy
 29 Западная Европа Western Europe
 26 записаться *1, p.* (запишусь, запишешься) to sign on, enrol
 1 заполнить 2, *p.* to fill in, complete
 29 запрещён, запрещено, -а; -ы forbidden
 17 заранее beforehand, in advance
 17 застать дома to find in (at home)
 30 зачем what for, why
 24 защищать *1, imp.* to defend
 23 заявление application
 10 звать *1, imp.* (зову, зовёшь) to call
 10 как тебя зовут? what are you called?
 11 звон chimes
 4 звонить 2, *imp.* to ring
 8 звонок (*gen.* звонка) bell, ringing
 5 здание building
 1 здесь here
 3 здоров, -о, -а; -ы healthy
 1 здоровье health
 1 здравствуйте hello
 25 зелёный green
 10 зима winter
 10 зимой in winter
 18 знакомый acquaintance
 3 знать *1, imp.* to know
 25 значение meaning, significance
 2 значит that means
 13 зуб tooth
 13 зубной врач dentist

И

- 1 и and
 8 и . . . и . . . both . . . and . . .
 27 играть *1, imp.* to play
 27 играть в мяч to play ball
 5 идти *1, imp. def.* (иду, идёшь; *past* шёл, шло, шла, шли) to go (on foot)
 14 идти за (+ *instr.*) to go for, to fetch
 10 из (+ *gen.*) out of, from
 17 извините excuse me
 16 извиниться 2, *p.* to excuse oneself
 16 извиняться *1, imp.* to excuse oneself
 11 издали from far off, from a distance
 24 из-за (+ *gen.*) because of

- 28 изменить 2, *p.* (изменю, изменишь) to change
 21 икона icon
 6 икра caviar
 3 или or
 25 иметь *1, imp.* to have
 17 имя (*n.*; *gen.* имени) Christian name
 5 стадион имени Лёнина the Lenin stadium
 1 инженер engineer
 30 иногда sometimes
 5 иностранец (*gen.* иностранца) foreigner
 27 иностранка foreigner (*female*)
 27 иностранный foreign
 2 институт institute
 10 интересно interesting
 18 интересный interesting
 8 интересоваться (+ *instr.*) *1, imp.* (интересуюсь, интересуюсь) to be interested (in)
 19 искать *1, imp.* (ищу, ищешь) to look for
 8 искусство art, the Arts
 19 исполниться 2, *p.* to fulfil
 19 ему исполнилось 69 лет he has reached 69
 8 исполнять *1, imp.* to fulfil
 8 исполнять роль to take the rôle, play the part
 19 исправить 2, *p.* (исправлю, исправлю) to put right
 19 исправлять *1, imp.* to put right
 11 история history
 29 источник spring, source
 15 истратить 2, *p.* (истрачу, истратишь) to spend
 20 исчезать *1, imp.* to vanish
 20 исчезнуть *1, p.* (исчезну, исчезнешь; *past* исчез, исчезло, -ла; -ли) to vanish
 21 итальянский Italian
 10 их (*gen.* of они) them; their, theirs
 23 июль (*m.*) July
 23 июнь (*m.*) June

К

- 11 к, ко (+ *dat.*) towards
 23 к, ко (+ *dat.*) by
 13 к сожалению unfortunately

- 14 к счастью fortunately
 12 Кавказ the Caucasus
 11 каждый each, every
 27 казаться *1, imp.* (кажусь, кажешься) to seem, appear
 20 кажется it seems, apparently
 1 как how
 19 как? what?
 26 как раз just, exactly, that's just it
 1 какой which
 27 какой-то some, some . . . or other
 14 кальцеке kaltsex
 12 каменный stone
 14 каникулы (*pl. only*) holidays
 19 картина picture
 14 касса cash desk, box-office
 15 кассирша cashier (*female*)
 12 кататься *1, imp.* to go for a ride
 20 кафе-мороженое (*indec.*) ice-cream café
 18 качество quality
 4 каша kasha (porridge)
 2 квартира flat
 15 кило (*indec.*) kilo
 15 килограмм kilogram
 28 кино (*indec.*) cinema
 28 кинорежиссёр film director
 28 кинотеатр cinema
 5 киоск kiosk
 8 классический classical
 26 ключ key
 14 книга book
 19 книжный магазин book-shop
 11 ко *See* к
 4 когда when
 27 когда-нибудь ever, at any time
 27 когда-то at one time
 4 кого (*gen.* of кто) whom, whose
 4 колбаса sausage
 19 колокол (*pl.* колокола) bell
 11 колокольный звон bell chimes
 7 кольцевая линия circle line
 4 комната room
 18 компания company
 6 компот stewed fruit
 25 конверт envelope
 8 конец (*gen.* конца) end
 19 в конце концов in the end
 5 конечно of course
 20 кончать *1, imp.* to finish
 20 кончить 2, *p.* to finish
 6 коньяк cognac, brandy

5 копейка (*gen. pl. копейек*) kopek
 25 коричневый brown
 25 короткий short
 25 короче shorter
 25 космонавт cosmonaut
 26 костюм suit
 6 котлета cutlet
 4 кофе (*m. indec.*) coffee
 12 край (*pl. края*) region
 29 Крайний Север the Far North
 18 красавица a beauty
 18 красавица-Нева the Beautiful Neva
 11 красивый beautiful
 16 Красная стрела the Red Arrow
 6 красный red
 1 Кремль (*m.*) Kremlin
 24 крепкий strong
 24 крепко strong
 12 Крым (в Крым) the Crimea
 1 кто who
 1 куда where to?
 5 культура culture
 27 купальный костюм bathing suit
 12 купаться 1, *imp.* to bathe
 16 купе (*n. indec.*) compartment
 5 купить 2, *p.* (куплю, купишь) to buy
 15 курица chicken
 24 курс course
 4 кусок (*gen. куса*) piece

Л

2 лаборатория laboratory
 8 лебедь (*m.*) swan
 8 «Лебединое озеро» 'Swan Lake'
 7 левый left
 13 лёгкие (*n. pl.*) lungs
 30 лёгкий light
 13 лежать 2, *imp.* (лежy, лежишь) to lie
 13 лекарство medicine
 29 лес (в лесу; *pl. леса*) wood
 19 лет (*gen. pl. of год*) years
 24 летать 1, *imp. indef.* to fly
 24 лететь 2, *imp. def.* (лечy, летишь) to fly
 10 лето summer
 10 летом in the summer
 27 лечь 1, *p.* (лягу, ляжешь; *past* лёг, легло, -ла; -ли) to lie down
 20 лечь в больницу to go into hospital

20 лимонад lemonade
 25 лист (*pl. листья*) leaf
 26 листок form
 28 литературный literary
 17 лифт lift
 23 личный personal, private
 23 лично personally
 8 ложа box (in theatre)
 27 ложиться 2, *imp.* (ложyсь, ложись) to lie down
 25 лучше better
 25 как лучше ехать? which is the best way to go?
 28 любимый favourite
 5 любить 2, *imp.* (люблю, любишь) to love, like
 11 любоваться (+ *instr.*) 1, *imp.* (любyсь, любyешься) to admire
 14 люди (*pl. of человек*) people

М

15 магазин shop
 23 май (*m.*) May
 2 маленький small
 3 мало little, a little
 28 Малый театр the Maly Theatre
 21 мальчик boy
 3 мама Mum
 25 марка (*gen. pl. марок*) stamp
 23 март March
 15 масло butter
 21 мастер (*pl. мастера*) master
 21 материалы (*m. pl.*) material, exhibits
 22 мать (*f.; gen. матери, pl. матери*) mother
 2 машина car
 23 машинистка typist
 20 МГУ—Московский государственный университет MGU—Moscow State University
 28 медленно slowly
 29 между (+ *instr.*) between, among
 22 междугородная long-distance (inter-city) telephone service
 7 мелочь (*f.*) small change
 25 меньше less, smaller
 6 меню (*n. indec.*) menu
 1 место (*pl. места*) place, seat

26 месяц month
 4 метро (*indec.*) Underground
 14 мех (*pl. меха*) fur
 28 мешать (+ *dat.*) 1, *imp.* to disturb
 5 милиционер policeman
 8 милый nice, dear
 6 минеральный mineral (*adj.*)
 16 минута minute
 16 одну минуту just a minute
 7 мир peace
 26 мир world
 24 мнение opinion
 3 много (+ *gen.*) a lot (of), much, many
 5 может быть perhaps, may be
 13 можно may, is possible
 1 мой, моё, мой; мой my, mine
 18 молодежь (*f.*) youth, young people
 1 молодой young
 18 молодость (*f.*) youth, young days
 25 моложе younger
 15 молоко milk
 15 молочный отдел dairy department
 24 молчание silence
 6 молчать 2, *imp.* to be silent
 11 монастырь (*m.*) monastery
 22 монета coin
 12 море sea
 6 мороженое ice-cream
 1 Москва Moscow
 2 москвич Muscovite
 2 москвичка Muscovite (*female*)
 1 московский Moscow (*adj.*)
 12 мост (на мосту) bridge
 5 мочь 1, *imp.* (могу, можешь; *past* мог, -ло, -ла; -ли) to be able
 9 муж (*pl. мужья*) husband
 7 мужчина (*m.*) man
 21 музей museum
 8 музыка music
 3 мы we
 21 мысль (*f.*) idea, thought
 24 мягкий soft
 6 мясной meat (*adj.*)
 6 мясо meat
 27 мяч ball

Н

2 на (+ *loc.*) on, at, in
 5 (+ *acc.*) to, on to, for

4 на завтрак for breakfast
 22 набрать номер to dial a number
 14 навёрное no doubt, surely
 13 навестить 2, *p.* (навестy, навестись) to visit
 29 над (+ *instr.*) over, above
 28 надевать 1, *imp.* to put on, wear
 27 надеть 1, *p.* (надёну, надёнешь) to put on
 24 надеяться 1, *imp.* to hope
 18 на днях the other day; in a few days' time
 13 надо must, is necessary
 20 надоест *p.* (надоём, -ёшь, -ёст, -едим, -едите, -едят; *past* надоёл, -ло, -ла; -ли) to have had enough, to be 'fed up'
 22 назад ago, back
 17 называть 1, *p.* (назову, назовёшь) to call, name
 17 называть 1, *imp.* to call, name
 29 называться 1, *imp.* to be called
 24 найти 1, *p.* (найду, найдёшь; *past* нашёл, нашло, -ла; -ли) to find
 9 наконец in the end, at last
 7 налево to the left, on the left
 24 намерение intention
 23 написать 1, *p.* (напишу, напишешь) to write
 7 направо to the right, on the right
 30 например for example
 29 напротив (+ *gen.*) opposite
 29 народ people, nation
 19 народная песня folk song
 4 нас (*gen. of мы*) us
 26 настольный теннис table tennis
 24 настоящий actual
 24 в настоящее время at the present time
 4 настроение mood
 24 находить 2, *imp.* (нахожy, находишь) to find
 11 находиться 2, *imp.* (нахожyсь, находишься) to be situated
 16 начало beginning
 2 начать 1, *p.* (начну, начнёшь) to start
 12 начаться 1, *p.* (начнётся—3rd pers. only) to start
 3 начинать 1, *imp.* to start

2 наш, *на́ше, на́ша; на́ши* our, ours
 3 не not
 30 не за что not at all, don't mention it
 25 не́бо (*pl.* небеса́) sky
 21 небольшо́й small
 24 не́веста fiancée
 21 невозмо́жно impossible
 26 неда́вно recently
 10 неде́ля (*gen. pl.* неде́ль) week
 9 недово́лен, недово́льно, -а; -ы displeased
 27 незнако́мец (*gen.* незнако́мца) stranger
 20 незнако́мый unknown
 20 неизве́стный unknown
 26 некогда no time
 26 ему́ некогда́ было́ he had no time for
 13 нельзя́ must not; is impossible
 26 не́мец (*gen.* не́мца) a German
 20 небольшо́ а little
 20 неож́иданно unexpectedly
 23 неож́иданный unexpected
 15 не́сколько (+ *gen.*) several, a number of
 24 несмотр́я на то, что in spite of the fact that
 30 нести́ *1, imp. def.* (несу́, несёшь; *past* не́с, неслó, -лá; -ли́) to carry
 2 нет no
 4 нет (+ *gen.*) there isn't any
 24 нетерпéние impatience
 29 неудобно uncomfortable
 26 ни not a
 26 нигде́ nowhere
 25 ниже́ lower
 25 низкий low
 29 никак in no way
 26 никогда́ never
 26 никто́ (*gen.* никогó) no-one
 9 ничегó nothing; it's nothing, never mind
 2 но but
 2 но́вый new
 15 что у вас но́вого? what's new with you? what's your news?
 27 ногá (*acc.* но́гу, *gen.* но́ги, *pl.* но́ги, ног, ногáм) leg; foot
 4 нож (*gen.* ножа́) knife
 22 ноль (*m.*) zero, '0'

16 но́мер (*pl.* номерá) number; hotel room
 1 носильщик porter
 16 ночь (*f.*) night
 16 спо́койной но́чи! good night!
 23 ноя́брь (*m.*; *gen.* ноя́бря) November
 19 нра́вится *2, imp.* to please
 1 ну well
 14 ну́жен, ну́жно, -на́; -ны́ necessary
 13 ну́жно it is necessary
 25 нуль (*m.*; *gen.* нуля́) zero

O

2 о, об, обо (+ *loc.*) about
 27 обгорéть *2, p.* to burn
 6 обе́д lunch, dinner
 6 обе́дать *1, imp.* to have lunch or dinner, to dine
 23 обеща́ть *1, imp.* to promise
 30 обижа́ть *1, imp.* to insult, offend
 1 обмена́ть *1, p.* to change
 24 обнима́ть *1, imp.* to embrace
 24 кре́пко тебя́ обнимаю́ with love from (I embrace you warmly)
 21 оборо́на defence
 24 обрати́ться (к) *2, p.* (обращу́сь, обрати́шься) to turn (to), address oneself (to someone)
 29 о́братный back (*adj.*)
 29 о́братный путь way back, return journey
 24 обстоя́тельство circumstance
 2 общежи́тие hostel
 20 о́бщий common, mutual
 24 объя́вить (о) *2, p.* (объявлю́, объя́вишь) to announce
 16 объя́вление announcement
 7 объясни́ть *2, p.* to explain
 3 обы́чно usually
 3 обы́чный usual
 9 обяза́тельно absolutely, without fail
 14 ово́щи (*m. pl.*) vegetables
 15 ово́щной магази́н greengrocer's
 28 одева́ться *1, imp.* to get dressed, dress up
 27 оде́т, -а; -ы dressed
 4 один, одно́, одна́; оди́н one; alone
 11 одинна́дцатый eleven
 11 одинна́дцать eleven

30 одна́жды once, one day
 17 одна́ко however
 26 одновре́менно at the same time, simultaneously
 11 о́зеро (*pl.* о́зёра) lake
 22 оказа́ться *1, p.* (окажусь, ока́жешься) to turn out to be
 4 о́кно (*pl.* о́кна, *gen. pl.* о́кон) window
 16 о́коло (+ *gen.*) near
 23 октя́брь (*m.*; *gen.* октя́бря) October
 1 он (*gen.* егó) he, it
 1 она́ (*gen.* е́й) she, it
 2 они́ (*gen.* их) they
 1 оно́ (*gen.* егó) it
 30 опáздывать *1, imp.* to be late
 16 опозда́ние lateness
 16 опозда́ть *1, p.* to be late
 17 опуска́ть *1, imp.* to drop
 17 опу́стить *2, p.* (опу́шу, опу́стишь) to drop
 12 о́пять again
 10 о́сень (*f.*) autumn
 10 о́сенью in the autumn
 11 осма́тривать *1, imp.* to look round
 13 оста́вить *2, p.* to leave
 30 оставля́ть *1, imp.* to leave
 29 остано́вить *2, p.* (остановлю́, остано́вишь) to stop
 11 оста́ться *2, p.* (оста́нусь, оста́нешься) to stay, remain
 14 от (+ *gen.*) from, away from
 24 отве́т answer
 9 отве́тить *2, p.* (отве́чу, отве́тишь) to answer
 9 отвеча́ть *1, imp.* to answer
 14 отде́л department
 20 отдохну́ть *1, p.* (отдохну́, отдохне́шь) to rest, be on holiday
 5 о́тдых rest, recreation
 10 отды́хаться *1, imp.* to rest, be on holiday
 26 отды́хающий holiday-maker
 11 оте́н (*gen.* оте́н) father
 24 отка́зать *1, p.* (откажу́, отка́жешь) to refuse
 24 откры́тка post-card
 17 откры́ть *1, p.* (откро́ю, откро́ешь) to open

29 отку́да from where
 23 отно́ситься (к) *2, imp.* (отношу́сь, отнóсишься) to be disposed (towards)
 29 отовсю́ду from everywhere
 17 оторва́ть *1, p.* (оторву́, оторве́шь) to tear off
 16 отпра́вление departure
 16 отпра́вляться *1, imp.* to set off
 10 о́тпуск holiday, leave
 5 отсю́да from here
 5 оттю́да from there
 16 отхо́д departure
 17 о́тчество patronymic
 25 о́тъезд departure
 6 официа́нт waiter
 6 официа́нтка waitress
 29 охóта hunting, shooting
 17 очарова́тельный charming
 1 о́чень very
 28 о́чередь (*f.*) queue
 20 очки́ (*m. pl.*) spectacles
 19 оши́бка mistake

P

28 пальто́ (*indec.*) overcoat
 11 па́мятник monument, statue
 19 па́мять (*f.*) memory
 3 па́па (*m.*) Dad
 26 парикма́херская hairdresser
 5 парк park
 12 парк культу́ры и о́тдыха recreation park
 8 партёр stalls
 1 па́спорт (*pl.* паспо́рта́) passport
 1 па́спортный контро́ль passport control
 7 пассажи́р passenger
 1 пе́рвый first
 23 во-пе́рвых firstly
 6 на пе́рвое for first course
 25 пе́ред (+ *instr.*) before
 22 переда́ть *p.* (see да́ть) to pass on (a message)
 10 пере́ехать *1, p.* (пере́еду, пере́едешь) to move (house)
 27 переоде́ться *1, p.* (переоде́нусь, переоде́нешься) to change (one's clothes)
 17 перепу́тать *1, p.* to mix up, confuse
 7 переса́дка a change (of trains etc.)

18 пѣсня (*gen. pl. пѣсен*) song
 27 песок (*gen. песка*) sand
 7 пешком on foot
 6 пиво beer
 29 пикник picnic
 24 писать *1, imp.* (пишѹ, пишешь) to write
 23 письмо (*gen. pl. писем*) letter
 6 пить *1, imp.* (пью, пьѣшь) to drink
 27 плавать *1, imp.* to swim
 23 план plan
 19 пластинка record
 6 платить *2, imp.* (плачѹ, платишь) to pay
 7 платформа platform
 18 племянник nephew
 5 плохо badly
 4 плохой bad
 1 площадь (*f.; gen. pl. площадей*) square
 26 пляж beach
 14 по (+ *dat.*) on
 15 (+ *acc.*) at
 17 (+ *dat.*) according to
 28 (+ *dat.*) after, from
 29 (+ *dat.*) along, on
 23 по крайней мѣре at least
 27 по-английски in English
 23 поблагодарить *2, p.* to thank
 22 поблизости nearby
 9 побывать *1, p.* to visit
 13 повезти (+ *dat.*) *1, p.* (повезѣт; *past* повезло—*3rd pers. only*) to be lucky
 13 не повезло тебѣ bad luck!
 27 повернуться *1, p.* (повернѹсь, повернѣшься) to turn over
 26 поглядить *2, p.* (поглажу, погладишь) to press, iron
 22 поговорить *2, p.* to have a word
 11 погода weather
 1 пограничник immigration officer
 29 под (+ *instr.*) under, beneath (+ *acc.*) under (motion)
 19 подарить *2, p.* (подарю, подаришь) to give, present
 19 подарок (*gen. подарка*) present
 25 подниматься *1, imp.* to rise

11 подойти (*к*) *1, p.* (подойдѹ, подойдѣшь; *past* подошѣл, подошло, -лѹ; -лѣ) to go up (to), approach (on foot)
 24 подробно in detail
 9 подруга friend (*female*)
 3 подѹмать *1, p.* to think
 26 подѹмайте! just think! fancy that!
 11 подъѣхать (*к*) *1, p.* (подѣдѹ, подѣдѣшь) to go up (to), approach (by transport)
 7 поезд (*pl. поезды*) train
 1 поѣздка trip
 1 пожалуйста please; not at all, don't mention it
 9 поживать *1, imp.* to live, get along
 9 как ты поживѣешь? how are you?
 7 пожилой elderly
 18 позавидовать (+ *dat.*) *1, p.* (позавидѹю, позавидуешь) to envy
 26 позавтракать *1, p.* to have breakfast
 29 позади behind
 25 позвольте allow me
 13 позвонить (+ *dat.*) *2, p.* to ring up, call (by telephone)
 4 поздно late
 26 поздний late
 18 поздравительный congratulatory
 17 поздравлять (*с*) *1, imp.* to congratulate (on)
 25 позже later
 21 познакомить *2, p.* (познакомлю, познакомишь) to introduce
 8 познакомиться (*с*) *2, p.* (познакомлюсь, познакомишься) to get to know, make the acquaintance (of)
 26 поиграть *1, p.* to play
 5 пойти *1, p.* (пойдѹ, пойдѣшь; *past* пошѣл, пошло, -лѹ; лѣ) to go (on foot)
 6 пока for the moment; while
 10 показать *1, p.* (покажѹ, покажешь) to show
 6 по-киевски à la Kiev, Kiev-style
 15 покупатель (*m.*) customer
 5 покупать *1, imp.* to buy

15 полкило (*indec.*) half a kilo
 16 половина half
 15 полтора (*m. and n.; f. полторы*) one and a half
 18 получать *1, imp.* to receive
 25 получить *2, p.* (получѹ, получишь) to receive
 22 полчаса (*gen. получаса*) half an hour
 26 пользоваться (+ *instr.*) *1, imp.* (пользуюсь, пользуешься) to use, make use (of)
 8 помнить *2, imp.* to remember
 13 по-мбему in my opinion, I think
 20 помочь (+ *dat.*) *1, p.* (помогѹ, поможешь; *past* помог, помогло, -лѹ; -лѣ) to help
 10 понедельник Monday
 27 по-немецки in German
 14 понимать *1, imp.* to understand
 19 понравиться *2, p.* to please
 29 пообѣдать *1, p.* to have a meal, to dine
 13 пообещать *1, p.* to promise
 20 попасть *1, p.* (попадѹ, попадѣшь) to land up
 14 попросить *2, p.* (попрошѹ, попросишь) to ask for, request
 28 популярный popular
 6 порѹ it's time to, it's time for
 30 портфель (*m.*) briefcase
 6 порция portion
 5 по-рѹсски in Russian
 1 порядок (*gen. порядка*) order
 1 все в порядке everything's in order
 30 посетитель (*m.*) visitor
 29 посидѣть *2, p.* (посидѹ, посидишь) to sit for a little while
 23 послать *1, p.* (пошлѹ, пошлѣшь) to send
 22 после (+ *gen.*) after
 28 послѣдний last, latest
 29 послезавтра the day after tomorrow
 11 послушать *1, p.* to listen
 5 посмотреть (на + *acc.*) *2, p.* to look (at)
 19 посоветовать (+ *dat.*) *1, p.* (посоветѹю, посоветуешь) to advise

23 постараться *1, p.* to try
 13 постѣль (*f.*) bed
 26 постирать *1, p.* to wash, launder
 26 пострѣить *2, p.* to build
 20 поступить *2, p.* (поступлю, поступишь) to start, take up, enter
 24 посылать *1, imp.* to send
 29 потерять *1, p.* to lose
 1 потом then, next
 24 потому что because
 27 по-французски in French
 27 похож, -е, -а; -и resembles, looks like
 13 почему? why?
 15 почѣм? (at) how much?
 26 починить *2, p.* (починю, починишь) to mend
 25 почта post-office
 14 почти nearly
 25 почтовый ящик post-box
 6 пошли! let's go!, come on!
 29 поэтому because of this, that's why
 23 появляться *1, imp.* to appear
 28 появиться *2, p.* (появлюсь, появишься) to appear
 3 прав, -ѹ; -ы right
 29 правда truth
 17 правда? is that so?
 23 правило rule
 6 правильно that's right
 24 право a right
 7 правый right
 5 предлагать *1, imp.* to offer, suggest
 24 предложение suggestion
 9 предложить *2, p.* (предложѹ, предложишь) to offer, suggest
 22 предполагать *1, imp.* to intend, propose
 17 представить *2, p.* (представлю, представишь) to introduce
 1 предъявить *2, p.* (предъявлю, предъявишь) to show, present
 20 прежде earlier, before
 20 прежде всего first of all
 5 прекрасно lovely, fine
 11 прекрасный marvellous
 18 преподавать *1, imp.* (преподаю, преподаешь) to teach

- 12 Прибалтика the Baltic States
 16 прибытие arrival
 20 привезти *1, p.* (привезу́, привезёшь; *past* привёз, привезло́, -ла́; -ли́) to bring (by transport), convey
 20 привести *1, p.* (приведу́, приведёшь; *past* привёл, привело́, -ла́; -ли́) to bring (on foot), lead
 24 привёт greetings, regards
 20 привык, привыкло, -ла; -ли accustomed
 9 пригласить *2, p.* (приглашу́, пригласишь) to invite
 9 приглашать *1, imp.* to invite
 27 придумать *1, p.* to think up, devise
 17 приезд arrival (*by transport*)
 3 приезжать *1, imp.* to arrive
 26 приезжающий newcomer, new-arrival
 29 приезжая newcomer, visitor (*female*)
 11 приезжий newcomer, visitor
 3 приехать *1, p.* (приеду́, приедёшь) to arrive
 13 прийти *1, p.* (приду́, придёшь; *past* пришёл, пришло́, -ла́; -ли́) to come, arrive
 24 прилететь *2, p.* (прилечу́, прилетишь) to arrive by air
 1 пример example
 29 примерно approximately
 6 принести *1, p.* (принесу́, принесёшь; *past* принёс, принесло́, -ла́; -ли́) to bring, carry
 13 принимать *1, imp.* to take, receive
 6 приносить *2, imp.* (приношу́, принесишь) to bring, carry
 11 природа countryside
 29 присоединиться (*к*) *2, p.* to join
 17 причина reason
 24 пришлось (+ *dat.*) had to, was obliged to
 22 приятель (*m.*) friend
 1 приятный pleasant
 17 очень приятно pleased to meet you
 22 пробывать *1, p.* (пробуду́, пробудёшь) to be, stay

- 10 провести *1, p.* (проведу́, проведёшь; *past* провёл, провело́, -ла́; -ли́) to spend, pass (time); to lead, guide
 10 проводить *2, imp.* (провожу́, проводишь) to spend, pass (time)
 16 проводить *2, p.* to accompany
 16 проводник steward, conductor
 16 провожать *1, imp.* to see off, accompany
 16 провожающий person seeing off, accompanying
 12 прогулка outing
 26 продавать *1, imp.* (продаю́, продаёшь) to sell
 5 продавец (*gen.* продавца́) seller, sales assistant
 15 продавщица salesgirl
 28 продан sold out
 26 продолжать *1, imp.* to continue
 7 проехать *1, p.* (проеду́, проедёшь) to get to (by transport)
 28 произведение work, composition
 28 литературное произведение literary work
 21 произвести впечатление to make an impression
 18 произносить *2, imp.* (произношу́, произносишь) to pronounce
 18 произносить тост to propose a toast
 5 пройти *1, p.* (пройду́, пройдёшь; *past* прошёл, прошло́, -ла́; -ли́) to get to (on foot)
 20 пропасть *1, p.* (пропаду́, пропадёшь) to disappear
 6 просить *2, imp.* (прошу́, просишь) to ask for, request
 20 прошу́ прощения I beg your pardon
 1 проспект prospect, avenue
 1 простить *2, p.* (просту́, простишь) to excuse
 9 просто simply
 21 простота simplicity
 25 простой simple
 27 простудиться *2, p.* (простужусь, простудишься) to catch a cold
 24 просьба request
 29 против (+ *gen.*) against
 18 профессор (*pl.* -а) professor

- 28 прохладный cool, chilly
 1 проходить *2, imp.* (прохожу́, проходишь) to pass through, by
 22 прохожая passer-by (*female*)
 7 прохожий passer-by
 20 прочесть *1, p.* (прочту́, прочтёшь; *past* прочёл, прочло́, -ла́; -ли́) to read, finish reading
 9 прочитать *1, p.* to read, finish reading
 12 прошлый last
 30 прощание leave-taking, farewell
 30 прощаться (*c*) *1 imp.* to say goodbye (to), take one's leave (of)
 7 прямо straight ahead
 14 пустой empty
 30 пустяк (*pl.* пустяки́) trifle, nonsense
 12 путешествовать *1, imp.* (путешествую́, путешествуешь) to travel
 11 путь (*m.*) journey; way, road
 16 счастливого пути! bon voyage!, have a good trip!
 28 пьеса play
 7 пята́к (*gen.* пятака́) five-kopek piece
 15 пятнадцатый fifteenth
 15 пятнадцать fifteen
 10 пятница Friday
 5 пятый fifth
 5 пять five
 15 пятьдесят fifty

R

- 2 работа work
 2 работать *1, imp.* to work
 10 рабочий worker
 23 равный equal
 23 мне всё равно it's all the same to me
 1 рад, рада; рады pleased
 3 радио (*indec.*) radio; loud-speaker
 6 раз time, occasion
 6 раза два-три two or three times
 17 разве really, surely not
 8 разговоривать *1, imp.* to converse, chat
 4 разговор conversation, discussion

- 7 разменять *1, p.* to change (money, etc.)
 18 разный various
 29 разрешён, разрешено́, -а́; -ы́ permitted, allowed
 23 разрешение permission
 17 разрешить *2, p.* to permit, allow
 14 разъехаться *1, p.* (*pl. only*) to disperse, depart
 9 рано early
 11 раньше before, formerly
 16 расписание timetable
 26 расположен, -о, -а; -ы situated
 11 рассказ commentary, story
 2 рассказать *1, p.* (расскажу́, расскажешь) to tell
 12 рассказывать *1, imp.* to tell
 27 рассматривать *1, imp.* to examine, scrutinize
 14 расстройство желудка upset stomach
 28 рассуждать *1, imp.* to reason, discuss
 28 режиссёр producer, director
 6 ресторан restaurant
 20 результат result
 13 рецепт prescription
 12 речной катер river launch, pleasure-boat
 4 решать *1, imp.* to decide
 3 решить *2, p.* to decide
 23 решить задачу to solve a problem
 4 ровно precisely
 18 Родина Motherland, native land
 3 родители (*pl.*; *s.* родите́ль *m.*) parents
 2 родиться *2, p.* to be born
 18 родные (*pl.*) relations, one's own people
 18 родственник relation
 8 роль (*f.*) rôle, part
 28 роман novel
 26 рубашка shirt
 7 рубль (*m.*) ruble
 27 рука (*acc.* руку́, *gen.* руки́, *pl.* руки́, *рук, рука́м*) arm; hand
 11 русский Russian
 21 Русский музей the Russian Museum
 25 ручка pen

- 4 рыба fish
6 рыбный fish (*adj.*)
8 ряд (в ряду) row
4 рядом с (+ *instr.*) beside, next to

С

- 8 с (+ *instr.*) with
16 (+ *gen.*) from
27 с тех пор since then, ever since
6 садиться 2, *imp.* (сажусь, садишься) to sit down
6 салат salad
3 сам, -о, -а; сами myself, yourself, himself, etc.
30 самолёт aeroplane
11 самый the very, the . . . itself; the most
2 в самом деле really
10 свежий, -ее, -ая; -ие fresh
15 свинина pork
4 свободен, свободно, -на; -ны free
4 свободный free
8 свой, своё, своя; свой *see* L8, N8c
24 связь (*f.*) connection
24 в связи с этим in connection with this
7 сдача change
9 сделать 1, *p.* to do
28 сеанс performance
3 сегодня today
5 сегодняшний today's (*adj.*)
7 седьмой seventh
4 сейчас now, right away
17 семнадцатый seventeenth
17 семнадцать seventeen
7 семь seven
15 семьдесят seventy
10 семья (*instr.* семьей, *pl.* семьи, семей, семьям) family
23 сентябрь (*m.*; *gen.* сентября) September
13 сердце (*pl.* сердца, сердец, сердцам) heart
1 сертификат certificate
25 серый grey
3 серьёзный serious
11 сестра (*pl.* сёстры, *gen. pl.* сестёр) sister
20 сестя 1, *p.* (сяду, сядешь) to sit
6 сидеть 2, *imp.* (сиджу, сидишь) to sit, be sitting

- 21 сильный strong
23 симпатичный sympathetic, nice
25 синий dark blue
9 сказать 1, *p.* (скажу, скажешь) to say
15 сколько how much, how many
1 скоро soon
27 скорее quickly, hurry up and . . .
21 скромность (*f.*) modesty
14 скучно boring
14 мне скучно I'm bored
7 следующий, -ее, -ая; -ие next
25 слово (*pl.* слова) word
30 случай event
12 случайно by chance
12 случайный chance
29 случиться 2, *p.* to happen
3 слушать 1, *imp.* to listen
3 я слушаю hello? (on the telephone)
8 слышать 1, *imp.* to hear
13 смерить температуру to take a temperature
18 смеяться 1, *imp.* to laugh
3 смотреть (на + *acc.*) 2, *imp.* (смотрю,мотришь) to watch, look at
17 смотри, смотрите! watch out!
23 смочь 1, *p.* (смогу, сможешь; *past* смог, смогло, -ла; -ли) to be able
2 сначала at first
27 снимать 1, *imp.* to take off
28 собака dog
28 собачка little dog
3 собираться 1, *imp.* to intend
11 собор cathedral
20 совет advice
21 советовать 1, *imp.* to advise
18 Советский Союз the Soviet Union
8 современный modern, contemporary
7 совсем quite, absolutely
4 совсем не not at all
3 согласен, согласна, -на; -ны in agreement
26 согласиться 2, *p.* (соглашусь, согласишься) to agree
содержание contents
14 соки-воды soft drinks
28 солдат soldier

- 25 солнечный sunny
6 солянка solyanka soup
17 сомневаться 1, *imp.* to doubt
24 сомнение doubt
17 сообщить (+ *dat.*) 2, *p.* to inform, let know
15 сорок forty
1 спасибо thank you
4 спасибо большое thank you very much
20 спасти 1, *p.* (спасу, спасёшь; *past* спас, спасло, -ла; -ли) to save
16 спать 2, *imp.* (сплю, спишь) to sleep
8 спектакль (*m.*) show, performance
18 спеть 1, *p.* (спою, споёшь) to sing
14 спешить 2, *imp.* to hurry
27 спина (*pl.* спины) back
19 список (*gen.* списка) list
22 справочное enquiries
3 спрашивать 1, *imp.* to ask
2 спросить 2, *p.* (спрошу,спросишь) to ask
28 сравнение comparison
21 сразу straight away
10 среда Wednesday
12 Средняя Азия Central Asia
22 срочно urgently
25 срочный urgent
5 стадион stadium
23 становиться 2, *imp.* (становлюсь, становишься) to become
4 станция station; telephone exchange
24 стараться 1, *imp.* to try
11 старина the past
7 старик old man
25 старше older
7 старый old
20 стать 1, *p.* (стану, станешь) to become, start
29 стесняться 1, *imp.* to feel shy
15 сто a hundred
15 стоить 2, *imp.* to cost, be worth
4 стол table
6 столик little table
4 столовая dining-room
5 сторона side, direction
1 стойка такси taxi rank
5 стоять 2, *imp.* (стою, стоишь) to stand

- 11 страна country
14 странный strange
16 стрела arrow
18 строительство building, construction
12 стройка construction job
21 студент student
1 студентка student (*female*)
10 суббота Saturday
26 сувенир souvenir
22 суметь 1, *p.* to manage, be able
6 сухой dry
21 сходить 2, *imp.* (схожу, сходишь) to go down
30 счастливый happy
18 счастье happiness
6 счёт bill
8 считать 1, *imp.* to consider (to be)
28 сыграть 1, *p.* to play
18 сын (*pl.* сыновья, сыновей, сыновьям) son
4 сыр cheese
11 сюда to here
17 сюрприз surprise

Т

- 14 таблетка pill, tablet
1 так so, such
18 так? isn't that so?
24 так как as, since
14 такой such
1 такси (*n. indec.*) taxi
1 там there
1 таможенник customs officer
1 таможня customs
4 тарелка plate
1 твой, твоё, твоя; твой your, yours
11 те (*pl. of тот*) those
8 театр theatre
4 тебя (*gen. of ты*) you
3 телевизор television
17 телеграмма telegram
25 телеграфистка telegraphist (*female*)
4 телефон telephone
22 телефон-автомат telephone kiosk
22 телефонистка telephone operator (*female*)
13 температура temperature
26 теннис tennis
1 теперь now
23 тепло warm

- 23 тёплый warm
30 терять 1, *imp.* to lose
11 тётя aunt
24 течение course
24 в течение недели for a week
28 тихий quiet
8 товарищ colleague, acquaintance;
Comrade
4 тогда then, next
1 тоже also
3 только only
11 только что just now
22 тому назад ago
27 тонуть 1, *imp.* (тонуть, тонешь)
to be drowning
16 торопиться 2, *imp.* (тороплюсь,
торопишься) to hurry
17 торжественно festive
18 тост toast
6 тот, то, та; те that; those
24 тот же, то же, та же; те же that/
those very, the same
17 точно exactly
29 традиция tradition
24 требовать 1, *imp.* (требую,
требуешь) to demand
3 третий, -ье, -ья; -ьи third
23 в-третьих thirdly
6 на третье for third course
3 три three
19 тридцать thirty
13 тринадцатый thirteenth
13 тринадцать thirteen
15 триста three hundred
13 трудно difficult
23 трудность (*f.*) difficulty
23 трудный difficult
18 трудолюбие diligence, industry
5 туда there, to there
5 турист tourist
22 тут here
1 ты (*gen.* тебя) you
30 тяжело heavy, difficult
30 тяжёлый heavy, difficult

У

- 4 у (+ *gen.*) at, by
4 у меня I have
9 у неё at her place
29 уважаемый respected
24 уважать 1, *imp.* to respect

- 24 уважение respect
24 с глубоким уважением yours
sincerely (with deep respect)
23 увёрен, -а; -ы sure, convinced
12 увидеть 2, *p.* (увиджу, увидишь)
to see
4 угол (в углу) corner
26 удачный successful
9 удовольствие pleasure
12 уезжать 1, *imp.* to leave (by
transport)
12 уехать 1, *p.* (уеду, уедешь) to leave
(by transport)
24 ужасный terrible
2 уже already
21 узнать 1, *p.* to recognize; learn
13 уйти 1, *p.* (уйду, уйдёшь; *past*
ушёл, ушло, -ла; -ли) to leave
(on foot)
2 улица street
20 на улице outside
20 умереть 1, *p.* (умру, умрёшь; *past*
умер, умерла; -ли) to die
24 уметь 1, *imp.* to know how, be able
30 умница good girl, clever girl
30 будь умницей be a good girl!
2 университет university
1 упражнение exercise
1 урок lesson
18 успеть 1, *p.* to succeed
16 успеть на поезд to catch
a train
18 успех success
20 успешно successfully
12 устал, -а; -а; -и tired
29 устроить 2, *p.* to arrange, organize
7 уступить 2, *p.* (уступлю,
уступишь) to give up
27 утонуть 2, *p.* (утону, утонешь)
to drown
4 утро morning
4 доброе утро good morning
9 утром in the morning
6 уходить 2, *imp.* (ухожу,
уходишь) to leave, go away
(on foot)

- 23 учебный год academic year
18 ученик (*gen.* ученика, *pl.*
ученики) pupil
24 учить 2, *imp.* (учу, учишь)
to teach; to learn

- 2 учиться 2, *imp.* (учусь, учишься)
to study

Ф

- 2 фабрика factory
2 факультет faculty
17 фамилия surname
12 фантастически fantastically
23 февраль (*m.*; *gen.* февраль)
February
2 физический physics (*adj.*)
28 фильм film
8 фойе (*n. indec.*) foyer
19 фотография photograph
25 Франция France
27 француженка French woman, girl
26 француз Frenchman
21 французский French
14 фрукты (*m. pl.*) fruit
6 фруктовый fruit (*adj.*)

Х

- 24 характер character, nature
2 химический chemistry (*adj.*)
26 химистка dry-cleaner's
4 хлеб bread
7 ходить 2, *imp.* (хожу, ходишь)
to come, go (on foot)
7 ходьба walking, going on foot
три минуты ходьбы three or
four minutes' walk
28 хозяин host, master
26 холл public room
27 холод cold (*noun*)
25 холодно it's cold
25 холодный cold
4 хороший, -ее, -ая; -ие good
4 всего хорошего all the best
1 хорошо fine, all right, well
6 хотеть *imp.* (хочу, хочешь, хочет,
хотим, хотите, хотят)
to want
24 хотя although
20 худой thin
21 художник artist, painter
21 художник-импрессионист
Impressionist
25 хуже worse

Ц

- 21 царский tsar's (*adj.*)

- 23 цветóк (*gen.* цветка; *pl.* цветы)
flower
11 целый whole
12 центральный central
11 церковь (*f.*) church

Ч

- 4 чай tea
4 час hour
16 который час? what's the time?
4 часа в три at about three
(o'clock)
9 часто often
1 часть (*f.*) part
26 часы (*pl. only*) watch; clock
4 чашка (*gen. pl.* чашек) tea-cup
1 чей, чьё, чья; чьи whose
3 человек (*pl.* люди) person, man
18 человеческий human
25 чем than
30 чемодан suitcase
11 через (+ *acc.*) after
4 чёрный black
18 честность (*f.*) honesty
29 честный honest
10 четверг Thursday
4 четвертый fourth
16 четверть (*f.*) quarter
4 четыре four
15 четырёхста four hundred
14 четырнадцатый fourteenth
14 четырнадцать fourteen
23 число date
29 чистый clean
3 читать 1, *imp.* to read
1 что (*gen.* чего) what; that
13 что с тобой (с вами)? what's the
matter with you?
24 чтобы in order to
27 что-нибудь something, anything
27 что-то something (or other)
29 чувство feeling
3 чувствовать себя 1, *imp.*
(чувствую себя, чувствуешь
себя) to feel

Ш

- 26 шахматы chess
30 швейцар hall porter,
commissionaire
16 шестнадцатый sixteenth

- 16 **шестна́дцать** sixteen
6 **шесто́й** sixth
6 **шесть** six
15 **шестьдеся́т** sixty
15 **шестьсо́т** six hundred
21 **шко́ла** school
24 **шум** row
14 **шутить 2, imp. (шучу́, шу́тишь)**
to joke
14 **шу́тка** joke

Щ

- 6 **щи (pl. only; gen. щей) shchi**
(cabbage soup)

Э

- 20 **экза́мен** examination
20 **сда́ть экза́мен** to take an
examination

- 28 **экра́н** screen
28 **экраниза́ция** screen version
11 **экску́рсия** tour
11 **экскурсово́д** guide
19 **Эрми́таж** the Hermitage
7 **эска́латор** escalator
17 **эта́ж** storey, floor
7 **э́тот, э́то, э́та; э́ти** this; these

Я

- 1 **я (gen. меня́) I**
15 **ябло́ко (pl. яблоки)** apple
27 **язы́к** language; tongue
23 **январь (m.; gen. января́)** January
26 **япо́нец (gen. япо́нца)** Japanese
(man)
26 **япо́нский** Japanese
8 **ярус** tier, circle
25 **ящи́к** box
25 **почто́вый ящи́к** post-box

Using the English/Russian vocabulary

Abbreviations used

adj.	adjective
adv.	adverb
interj.	interjection
intr.	intransitive
prep.	preposition
tr.	transitive

- Any information over and above a simple translation can be found by looking up the Russian word in the Russian-English vocabulary, which gives lesson references and any irregularities.
- If you want to find out where the stress falls on a word, look it up in the Russian-English vocabulary. Changes in stress as the word declines or conjugates are also indicated.
- When the exact meaning of an English word is not apparent, a synonym or explanation is given in brackets, particularly when there are two or more meanings of the same word or phrase.
- Both aspects of a Russian verb are given, the imperfective being followed by the perfective, where they are both commonly used. If only one aspect of a verb exists, this is indicated thus: **боя́ться/-**.

English/Russian

A
to be able мочь/сметь
to be able (know how) уметь/-
 (manage) -/суметь
about о, об, обо
at about three o'clock часа в три
abroad за границей
absolutely обязательно
to accompany провожать/проводить
person accompanying провожающий
according to по
accustomed to привык
to ache болеть/-
ache боль
acquaintance знакомый
act действие
actor актёр
actual настоящий
in actual fact в самом деле
to admire любоваться/по-
adult взрослый
advice совет
to advise советовать/по-
aeroplane самолёт
to be afraid бояться/-
after после
 (in expressions of time) через
after all ведь
again опять
 (once more) ещё раз
against против
ago назад, тому назад
to agree соглашаться/согласиться
in agreement согласен
air воздух
by air авиа
by air-mail авиапочтой
airport аэропорт
album альбом
all весь
all the best всего хорошего
all the same всё-таки
all right хорошо
allow—see permit
allow me позвольте
alone один
along по
already уже
also тоже

although хотя
always всегда
American (man) американец
 (woman, girl) американка
American (adj.) американский
ancient древний
and и
to announce объявлять/объявить
announcement объявление
another другой
to answer отвечать/ответить
answer ответ
any всякий
apparently кажется
to appear появляться/появиться
appetite аппетит
apple яблоко
application заявление
approximately примерно
April апрель
architecture архитектура
arm рука
around вокруг
to arrange устраивать/устроить
arrival прибытие
 (by transport) приезд
to arrive (on foot) приходить/прийти;
 (by transport) приезжать/приехать
 (by air) прилетать/прилететь
arrow стрела
art искусство
 (pictures) живопись
artiste артист
 (painter) художник
as как
as if (как) будто
to ask спрашивать/спросить
to ask for просить/попросить
aspirin аспирин
at на; за; по
at last наконец
at least по крайней мере
at my place у меня
attention внимание
auditorium зал
August август
aunt тётя
autumn осень
in autumn осенью

B
back спина
back (adv.) назад
way back обратный путь
bad плохой
bad luck! не повезло тебе!
badly плохо
baker's булочная
ball мяч
ballerina балерина
ballet балет
the Baltic states Прибалтика
bath ванная
to bathe купаться/вы-
bathing suit купальный костюм
bathroom ванная
to be быть; бывать/по-
 (stay) пробывать
will be будет
beach пляж
beautiful красивый
because потому что
because of из-за
because of this поэтому
to become становиться/стать
bed постель
beef Stroganov бефстроганов
beer пиво
before перед
 (formerly) раньше
beforehand заранее
I beg your pardon прошу
 прощения
beginning начало
behind позади
to believe верить/по-
bell колокол
 (ringing) звонок
bell chimes колокольный звон
beside рядом (с)
better лучше
between между
beyond за
big большой
bill счёт
birthday день рождения
black чёрный
block of flats дом
blue (light) голубой
 (dark) синий
the Bolshoi Theatre Большой театр

'bon voyage!' счастливого пути!
book книга
book-shop книжный магазин
boring скучно
I'm bored мне скучно
to be born родиться
borshch борщ
both . . . and и . . . и
bottle бутылка
box ящик
 (at the theatre) ложа
box-office касса
boy мальчик
bread хлеб
breakfast завтрак
to have breakfast завтракать/по-
bridge мост
briefcase портфель
to bring (on foot) приводить/привести
 (by transport) привозить/привезти
 (carry) приносить/принести
brother брат
brown коричневый
to build строить/по-
building здание
to burn обгорать/обгореть
bus автобус
business дело
bus-stop автобусная остановка
but но
butter масло
to buy покупать/купить
by к, ко

C
to call звать/по-
 (name) называть/назвать
to be called называться/назваться
what are you called? как вас зовут?
to call (summon) вызывать/вызвать
can—see to be able
car машина
to take care of беречь/с-
carriage вагон
to carry нести/по-
cash desk касса
cashier кассирша
to catch the train успеть на поезд
cathedral собор

the Caucasus Кавказ
caviar икра
central центральный
Central Asia Средняя Азия
certificate сертификат
chance случайный
by chance случайно
to change изменять/изменить
 (exchange) обменять/обменить
 (clothes) переодеваться/переодеться
 (money) разменять/разменить
change (of trains) пересадка
 (money) сдача
 small change мелочь
chapter глава
character характер
charming очаровательный
cheese сыр
chemist (female) аптекарша
chemist's аптека
chemistry (adj.) химический
chess шахматы
chest грудь
chicken курица
childhood детство
chimes звон
to choose выбирать/выбрать
church церковь
cinema кино, кинотеатр
circle line кольцевая линия
circumstance обстоятельство
classical классический
clean чистый
to close закрывать/закрывать
closed закрыт
coast взморье
coffee кофе
cognac коньяк
coin монета
cold (noun) холод
 to catch a cold простужаться/
 простудиться
cold (adj.) холодной
colleague товарищ
to come (on foot) приходить/прийти;
 (by transport) приезжать/приехать
 come on! пошли!
commentary рассказ
common общий
company компания
comparison сравнение

compartment купе
Comrade товарищ
conductor проводник
to confuse перепутывать/перепутать
to congratulate поздравлять/
 поздравить
congratulatory поздравительный
in connection with this в связи с этим
to consider to be считать/счесть
construction строительство
construction job стройка
contents содержание
to continue продолжать/продолжить
conversation разговор
to converse разговаривать/-
cool прохладный
corner угол
cosmonaut космонавт
to cost стоить/-
country страна
countryside природа
course курс
 (meal) see first, second, third
cousin двоюродный брат
the Crimea Крым
culture культура
customer покупатель
customs таможня
customs declaration form декларация
customs officer таможенник
cutlet котлета

D

dacha дача
Dad папа
dairy department молочный отдел
dark-haired man брюнет
date число
little daughter дочка
day день
 in the daytime днём
 the other day на днях
 the day after tomorrow послезавтра
dean декан
dear дорогой, милый
 (formal greeting) глубокоуважаемый
dearer дороже
December декабрь
to decide решать/решить
deep глубокий
defence оборона

to defend защищать/защитить
delicious вкусный
to demand требовать/-
dentist зубной врач
to depart отправляться/отправиться
department отдел
departure отправление; отход; отъезд
to depend on зависеть от
in detail подробно
dezhurnaya дежурная
to dial a number набрать номер
to die умирать/умереть
difficult трудный
difficulty трудность
diligence трудолюбие
to dine обедать/по-
dining room столовая
dinner обед
to have dinner обедать/по-
direction сторона
to disappear пропадать/пропасть
to discuss (converse) разговаривать/-
 (reason) рассуждать/-
discussion разговор
displeased недоволен
to be disposed towards относиться к/
 отнестись к
dissertation диссертация
to disturb мешать/по-
to do делать/с-
doctor врач; доктор
dog собака
 little dog собачка
domestic chores домашнее хозяйство
door дверь
to doubt сомневаться/-
doubt сомнение
 no doubt наверное
to get dressed одеваться/одеться
dressed одет
dress circle бельэтаж
to drink пить/вы-
driver водитель
to drop опускать/опустить
to drown тонуть/у-
dry сухой
dry-cleaner's химчистка
Dutch голландский

E

early рано

east восток
eastern восточный
to eat есть/съесть
eight восемь
eighteen восемнадцать
eighteenth восемнадцатый
eighth восьмой
eighty восемьдесят
elderly пожилой
eleven одиннадцать
eleventh одиннадцатый
to embrace обнимать/обнять
emotion волнение
empty пустой
end конец
 in the end в конце концов
engineer инженер
English английский
 in English по-английски
Englishman англичанин
English woman, girl англичанка
enough достаточно
 to have had enough надоедать/
 надоесть
enquiries справочное
to enter входить/войти
envelope конверт
to envy завидовать/по-
even даже
evening вечер
 good evening добрый вечер
 in the evening вечером
event случай
ever когда-нибудь
every каждый
everyone все
everything всё
everywhere везде
 from everywhere отовсюду
exactly точно
examination экзамен
 to take an examination сдать
 экзамен
to examine рассматривать/
 рассмотреть
example пример
 for example например
to excuse прощать/простить
to excuse oneself извиняться/
 извиниться
 excuse me извините
 (forgive me) простите

exhibition выставка
exhibits материалы
exit выход
to expect ждать/-
to explain объяснить/объяснить
extremely весьма
eye глаз

F

fact дело
the fact is that дело в том, что
in fact в самом деле
factory (small) фабрика
(large) завод
faculty факультет
family семья
fancy that! подумайте!
fantastically фантастически
far (away) далеко
from far away издали
the Far East Дальний Восток
the Far North Крайний Север
farewell (noun) прощание
father отец
favourite любимый
February февраль
to feel чувствовать себя/по-
feeling чувство
festive торжественно
fiancée невеста
fifteen пятнадцать
fifteenth пятнадцатый
fifth пятый
fifty пятьдесят
to fill in заполнить
film фильм
film director кинорежиссёр
to find находить/найти
to find in (at home) застать дома
fine прекрасно
to finish кончать/кончить
заканчивать/закончить
first первый
at first сначала
first of all прежде всего
for first course на первое
for the first time впервые
firstly во-первых
fish рыба

fish (adj.) рыбный
five пять
five-kopek piece пятак
flat квартира
floor (storey) этаж
flower цветок
flu грипп
to fly летать, лететь/по-
folk song народная песня
on foot пешком
for для
(after) за
for breakfast на завтрак
for a week в течение недели
for example например
for the moment пока
forbidden запрещён
foreign иностранный
foreign currency валюта
foreigner иностранец, иностранка
to forget забывать/забыть
fork вилка
form (for telegram) бланк
(registration) листок
fortunately к счастью
forty сорок
four четыре
fourteen четырнадцать
fourteenth четырнадцатый
fourth четвёртый
foyer фойе
France Франция
free свободный
French французский
in French по-французски
Frenchman француз
French woman, girl француженка
fresh свежий
Friday пятница
friend друг, приятель
(female) подруга
(acquaintance) знакомый
friendship дружба
from с
(away from) от
(out of) из
in front впереди
fruit фрукты
fruit (adj.) фруктовый
fur мех
further дальше

G

generally вообще
Georgian (noun) грузин
German (noun) немец
in German по-немецки
to get to (on foot) проходить/пройти;
(by transport) проезжать/проехать
to get up вставать/встать
girl девушка
little girl девочка
to give давать/дать
(a present) дарить/по-
to give up уступать/уступить
glad рад
to go (on foot) ходить, идти/пойти
(by transport) ездить, ехать/по-
to go away уходить/уйти
(disperse) разъезжаться/разъехаться
to go down сходить/сойти
to go for (fetch) идти/пойти за
to go in входить/войти
to go out (on foot) выходить/выйти;
(by transport) выезжать/выехать
to go up to (on foot) подходить/
подойти;
(by transport) подъезжать/
подъехать
good хороший; добрый
good night! спокойной ночи!
be a good girl будь умницей!
goodbye до свидания
to say goodbye прощаться/
проститься
goodness доброта
graduate student аспирант
gram грамм
grandfather дедушка
grapes виноград
great большой
green зелёный
greengrocer's овощной магазин
greetings привет
grey серый
grocery store гастроном
group группа
to grow up вырастать/вырасти
grown-up взрослый
guest гость
guide экскурсовод

H

hairdresser парикмахерская
half половина
half an hour полчаса
half a kilo полкило
hall зал
hall porter швейцар
ham ветчина
to happen случаться/случиться
happiness счастье
happy счастливый
(gay) весёлый
have у меня, тебя, etc.
to have in mind иметь в виду
to have a word -/поговорить
have to, had to придётся, пришлось
he он
head голова
headache головная боль
health здоровье
healthy здоров
to hear слышать/у-
heart сердце
at heart в душе
heat жара
heavy тяжёлый
hello здравствуй, здравствуйте
(on the telephone) я слушаю
to help помогать/помочь
her, hers её
here здесь; тут
from here отсюда
to here сюда
here is вот
the Hermitage Эрмитаж
hero герой
high высокий
higher выше
his его
history история
holidays каникулы
(leave) отпуск
holiday home дом отдыха
holiday-maker отдыхающий
home дом
at home дома
homewards домой
make yourself at home чувствуйте
себя, как дома
honest честный
honesty честность

to hope надеяться/-
hors d'œuvre закуска
hospitable гостеприимный
hospital больница
to go into hospital лечь в больницу
hospitality гостеприимство
hostel общежитие
hot жаркий
hotel гостиница
hotel room номер
hour час
house дом
how как

how are things? как дела?
how are you? как ты поживаешь?,
как вы поживаете?

how many сколько
how much сколько
at how much? (price) почём?

however однако
human человеческий
hundred сто
I'm hungry я хочу есть
hunting охота
to hurry спешить/по-; торопиться/по-
hurry up and . . . скорее
to hurt болеть/-
husband муж

I
I я
ice-cream мороженое
ice-cream café кафе-мороженое
icon икона
idea мысль
if если
ill болен
to be ill болеть/-
to fall ill заболеть/заболеть
immigration officer пограничник
impatience нетерпение
important важный
impossible невозможно
impression впечатление
to make an impression произвести
впечатление
Impressionist художник-
импрессионист
in в, во
in order to чтобы

in spite of the fact that несмотря на то,
что
inside внутри
instead вместо
institute институт
to insult обижать/обидеть
to intend собираться/собраться
intention намерение
to be interested in интересоваться/-
interesting интересный
interval антракт
to introduce знакомить/по-
(present) представлять/представить
introduction введение
to invite приглашать/пригласить
is есть
it он, она, оно
Italian итальянский

J
January январь
Japanese (noun) японец
Japanese (adj.) японский
to join присоединяться/
присоединиться
to joke шутить/по-
joke шутка
journey дорога; путь
July июль
June июнь
just как раз
just now только что

K
kaltsex кальцекс
kasha каша
key ключ
kilo кило
kilogram килограмм
kiosk киоск
knife нож
to know знать/-
to get to know знакомиться/по-
to let know сообщать/сообщить
kopek копейка
kremlin кремль

L
laboratory лаборатория
lake озеро
to land up попадать/попасть

language язык
last прошлый
(latest) последний
to be late опаздывать/опоздать
late (adj.) поздний
late (adv.) поздно
lateness опоздание
later позже
to laugh смеяться/-
law закон
to lead проводить/провести
leaf лист
to learn учить/-
to leave (intr.) (on foot) уходить/уйти;
(by transport) уезжать/уехать
to leave (tr.) оставлять/оставить
to be left оставаться/остаться
left левый
to/on the left налево
leg нога
lemonade лимонад
less меньше
lesson урок
let's давай, давайте
letter письмо
library библиотека
to lie лежать/-
to lie down ложиться/лечь
life жизнь
lift лифт
light лёгкий
to like любить; нравиться
list список
to listen слушать/по-
literary литературный
little мало
a little немножко
to live жить/-
live (adj.) живой
long длинный
long (time) долгий
for a long time долго
a long time ago давно
long-distance (telephone)
междугородная
to look смотреть/по-
(seem) выглядеть/-
to look around осматривать/
осмотреть
to look for искать/-
looks like похож

to lose терять/по-
loud-speaker радио
to love любить/-
lovely прекрасно
low низкий
lower ниже
luggage багаж
lunch обед
to have lunch обедать/по-
lungs лёгкие

M
to be 'mad about' восхищаться/
восхититься
magazine журнал
main главный
man мужчина
many много
March март
marriage женитьба
to get married (take a wife) жениться
(take a husband) выйти замуж
married (man) женат
marvellous прекрасный
master мастер
(host) хозяин
matter дело
what's the matter? в чём дело?
may можно
May май
meaning значение
that means значит
meat мясо
meat (adj.) мясной
medicine лекарство
to meet встречать/встретить
to meet (one another) встречаться/
встретиться
meeting встреча
memory память
to mend чинить/по-
menu меню
milk молоко
mineral (adj.) минеральный
minute минута
wait a minute одну минуту
mistake ошибка
modern современный
modesty скромность
monastery монастырь
Monday понедельник

money деньги
 month месяц
 monument памятник
 mood настроение
 more больше
 morning утро
 good morning доброе утро
 in the morning утром
 Moscow Москва
 the most самый
 mother мать
 Motherland Родина
 mountain гора
 to move (house) переезжать/переехать
 much много

(+ comparative) гораздо

Mum мама
 Muscovite москвич, москвичка
 museum музей
 music музыка
 must (have to) должен
 (is necessary) надо
 must not нельзя
 my, mine мой

N

name (Christian name) имя
 (surname) фамилия
 near (adv.) близко
 near (prep.) около
 nearby поблизости
 nearer ближе
 nearly почти
 necessary нужен
 nephew племянник
 never никогда
 never mind ничего
 new новый
 new-comer (new arrival) приезжающий
 (visitor) приезжий, приезжая
 newspaper газета
 next будущий
 (following) следующий
 nice милый; симпатичный
 night ночь
 good night спокойной ночи
 nine девять
 nineteen девятнадцать
 nineteenth девятнадцатый
 ninety девяносто
 ninth девятый

no нет
 no-one никто
 north север
 not не
 certainly not да нет
 not a ни
 not at all совсем не
 (don't mention it) не за что
 nothing ничего
 novel роман
 November ноябрь
 now теперь; сейчас
 nowhere нигде
 number номер

O

to occupy занимать/занять
 to be occupied заниматься/заняться
 occupied занят
 October октябрь
 of course конечно
 to offer предлагать/предложить
 often часто
 old старый
 old man старик
 older старше
 on на
 on Saturday в субботу
 one один
 one and a half полтора
 one day однажды
 only (adj.) единственный
 only (adv.) только
 to open открывать/открыть
 operator телефонистка
 opinion мнение
 in my opinion по-моему
 opposite (adv.) напротив
 or или
 three or four minutes три-четыре
 минуты
 to order заказывать/заказать
 order заказ
 (arranged) порядок
 everything's in order всё в порядке
 other другой
 our, ours наш
 outing прогулка
 outside на улице
 over над
 overcoat пальто

over there вон там

P

pain боль
 painful болен
 palace дворец
 parents родители
 park парк
 part часть
 (rôle) роль
 to pass проходить/пройти
 to pass an examination успешно
 сдать экзамен
 to pass on (a message) передавать/
 передать
 passenger пассажир
 passer-by прохожий, прохожая
 passport паспорт
 passport control паспортный
 контроль
 past (noun) старина
 patronymic отчество
 to pay платить/за-
 peace мир
 pear груша
 pen ручка
 people люди
 (nation) народ
 performance (show) спектакль
 (sitting) сеанс
 children's performance детский
 сеанс
 perhaps может быть
 to permit разрешать/разрешить
 permitted разрешён
 permission разрешение
 person человек
 personal личный
 personally лично
 photograph фотография
 physics (adj.) физический
 picnic пикник
 picture картина
 picturesque живописный
 piece кусок
 pill таблетка
 what a pity жаль
 place место
 plan план
 plate тарелка
 platform платформа

to play играть/сыграть

to play a part исполнять роль

to play a little -/поиграть

play пьеса

pleasant приятный

please пожалуйста

to please нравиться/по-

pleased доволен

pleased to meet you очень приятно

pleasure удовольствие

with pleasure с удовольствием

policeman милиционер

popular популярный

pork свинина

porter носильщик

portion порция

possibility возможность

possible возможно

post box почтовый ящик

postcard открытка

post-graduate course аспирантура

post-graduate physicist аспирант-
 физик

post office почта

precisely ровно

prescription рецепт

present подарок

to press гладить/по-

probably вероятно

problem задача

producer режиссёр

professor профессор

to promise обещать/по-

to propose предполагать/предположить

to propose a toast произносить тост

prospect проспект

pupil ученик

to put on надевать/надеть

Q

quality качество

quarter четверть

question вопрос

queue очередь

quiet тихий

quite (fairly) довольно

(absolutely) совсем

R

radio радио

rain дождь

it is raining дождь идёт

to read читать/про-
to finish reading прочесть,
прочитать
ready готов
really действительно
really? в самом деле? правда?
reason причина
to receive получать/получить
recently недавно
receptionist администратор
to recognise узнавать/узнать
record пластинка
recreation park парк культуры и
отдыха
red красный
Red Square Красная площадь
to refuse отказывать/отказать
regards привет
region край
to regret жалеть/по-
relation родственник
friends and relations родные
remarkable замечательный
to remember помнить/-
(recall) вспоминать/вспомнить
request просьба
to respect уважать/-
respected уважаемый
to rest отдыхать/отдохнуть
rest отдых
restaurant ресторан
result результат
to return возвращаться/вернуться
rich богатый
to go for a ride кататься/-
right (noun) право
right (adj.) правый
to/on the right направо
that's right правильно
to put right исправлять/исправить
to ring звонить/по-
to rise подниматься/подняться
river launch речной катер
road дорога
room комната
hotel room номер
public room холл
row (line) ряд
row (argument, noise) шум
ruble рубль
rule правило

Russian русский
in Russian по-русски
the Russian Museum Русский музей

S
salad салат
sales assistant продавец
salesgirl продавщица
sand песок
Saturday суббота
sausage колбаса
to save спасать/спасти
to say говорить/сказать
school школа
screen экран
screen version экранизация
sea море
sea-side взморье
second второй
for second course на второе
secondly во-вторых
to see видеть/у-
to seem казаться/по-
it seems кажется
to sell продавать/продать
to send посылать/послать
September сентябрь
serious серьёзный
to set off отправляться/отправиться
seven семь
seventeen семнадцать
seventeenth семнадцатый
seventh седьмой
seventy семьдесят
several несколько
shchi щи
she она
shirt рубашка
shoe ботинок
shooting охота
shop магазин
shop-sign вывеска
shore берег
short короткий
shorter короче
to show казать/по-
(present) предъявлять/предъявить
to shut закрывать/закрыть
to feel shy стесняться/-
side сторона; бок

'sight' достопримечательность
to sign on записываться/записаться
silence молчание
to be silent молчать/-
simple простой
simplicity простота
simply просто
since (then) с тех пор
to sing петь/спеть
sister сестра
to sit сидеть/-
(for a little while) -/посидеть
to sit down садиться/сесть
to be situated находиться/-
situated расположен
six шесть
sixteen шестнадцать
sixteenth шестнадцатый
sixth шестой
sixty шестьдесят
sky небо
to sleep спать/-
slowly медленно
small маленький; небольшой
smaller меньше
so так
soft мягкий
soft drinks соки-воды
soldier солдат
to solve a problem решать/решить
задачу
solyanka солянка
some какой-то
something что-то
(anything) что-нибудь
sometimes иногда
somewhere где-то
son сын
song песня
soon скоро
soon after вскоре
soup (clear) бульон
souvenir сувенир
the Soviet Union Советский Союз
to speak говорить/сказать
spectacles очки
to spend (money) тратить/ис-
(time) проводить/провести
spring (source) источник
(season) весна
in spring весной

spring (adj.) весенний
square площадь
stadium стадион
stalls партер
stamp марка
to stand стоять/-
to start (tr.) начинать/начать; -/стать
(intr.) начинаться/начаться
to start a post-graduate course
поступить в аспирантуру
station станция
(main line) вокзал
statue памятник
to stay (remain) оставаться/
остаться
steward проводник
stewed fruit компот
still ещё
to stop останавливать/остановить
story рассказ
straight ahead прямо
straight away сразу
strange странный
stranger незнакомец
street улица
strong крепкий; сильный
student студент, студентка
studies занятия
to study учиться/-
to succeed успевать/успеть
success успех
successful удачный
successfully успешно
such такой
suddenly вдруг
suggestion предложение
suit костюм
suitcase чемодан
summer лето
in summer летом
to sunbathe загорать/загореть
Sunday воскресенье
sunny солнечный
sure уверен
surely наверное; разве не
surely not разве
surname фамилия
surprise сюрприз
'Swan Lake' «Лебединое озеро»
to swim плавать/-, плыть/по-
sympathetic симпатичный

T
table стол
little table столик
table tennis настольный теннис
to take брать/взять
(receive) принимать/принять
to take a temperature смерить температуру
to take off снимать/снять
to talk говорить/сказать
tall высокий
tall building высотное здание
tasty вкусный
taxi такси
tea чай
tea-cup чашка
to teach учить/-; преподавать/-
to tear off отрывать/оторвать
telegram телеграмма
telegraphist телеграфистка
telephone телефон
telephone exchange станция
telephone kiosk телефон-автомат
television телевизор
to tell рассказывать/рассказать
temperature температура
what's the temperature today?
 сколько сегодня градусов?
ten десят
tennis теннис
tenth десятый
terrible ужасный
than чем
to thank благодарить/по-
thank God! слава богу!
thank you спасибо
thank you very much спасибо
 большое
thanks to благодаря
that (conj.) что
that, those тот, те
that/those very тот/те же
theatre театр
their, theirs их
then потом
(in that case) тогда
there там
to there туда
from there оттуда
thermometer градусник
thesis диссертация

they они
thin худой
thing вещь
to think думать/по-
to think up придумывать/придумать
third третий
for third course на третье
thirdly в-третьих
thirteen тринадцать
thirteenth тринадцатый
thirty тридцать
this, these этот, эти
those те
three три
throat горло
Thursday четверг
ticket билет
tier ярус
time время
(occasion) раз
two or three times раза два-три
it's time to/for пора
at the same time одновременно
at one time когда-то
what's the time? который час?
no time некогда
timetable расписание
tired устал
to в; на
(up to) до
toast тост
to propose a toast предлагать,
 произносить тост
today сегодня
today's сегодняшний
together вместе
tomorrow завтра
tonsillitis ангина
tooth зуб
tour экскурсия
tourist турист
towards к, ко
town город
tradition традиция
train поезд
to travel путешествовать/-
tree дерево
trifle пустяк
trip поездка
true верный
truth правда

to try стараться/по-
tsar's царский
Tuesday вторник
to turn over поворачиваться/
 повернуться
to turn to обращаться/обратиться к
to turn out to be оказываться/
 оказаться
twelfth двенадцатый
twelve двенадцать
twentieth двадцатый
twenty двадцать
two два, две
typist машинистка

U
uncomfortable неудобно
under под
Underground метро
to understand понимать/понять
unexpected неожиданный
unfortunately к сожалению
university университет
Moscow State University (MGU)
 Московский государственный
 университет (МГУ)
unknown незнакомый; неизвестный
up to до
upset stomach расстройство желудка
urgent срочный
urgently срочно
to use пользоваться/-
usual обычный
usually обычно

V
to vanish исчезать/исчезнуть
various разный
vegetables овощи
very очень
the very . . . самый
view вид
village деревня
to visit навещать/навестить
(a place) -/побывать
to go to visit (a person) приходить в
 гости к
to be visiting (a person) быть в
 гостях у
visitor посетитель
vodka водка

voice голос
volley-ball волейбол

W
to wait (for) ждать/-
waiter официант
to walk ходить, идти/пойти (пешком)
to go for a walk гулять/по-
three minutes' walk три минуты
 ходьбы
to want хотеть/-
war война
war (adj.) военный
warm тёплый
to wash (laundry) стирать/по-
to watch смотреть/по-
watch out! смотри!
watch часы
water вода
water-melon арбуз
way путь
we мы
weather погода
Wednesday среда
week неделя
welcome! добро пожаловать!
well хорошо
(healthy) здоров
to eat well вкусно пообедать
well (interj.) ну
Western Europe Западная Европа
what что
what? как?
what's the matter (with you)? что с
 тобой/вами?
when когда
where где
where to куда
where from откуда
wherever где же
which какой
white белый
who кто
whole целый
whose чей
why почему
(what for) зачем
wife жена
wild дикий
window окно
shop-window витрина

wine вино
winter зима
in winter зимой
to wish желать/по-
with с
without без
woman женщина
wood лес
word слово
to work работать/-
work работа
(of art) произведение
worker рабочий
world мир
to worry беспокоиться/-
(be nervous) волноваться/-
worse хуже
to be worth стоить/-
to write писать/написать

Y
year год
academic year учебный год
yellow жёлтый
yes да
yesterday вчера
you ты, вы
your, yours твой, ваш
yours sincerely с глубоким
 уважением
young молодой
younger моложе
youth (young days) молодость
youth (young people) молодёжь

Z
zero нуль; ноль

